

Insightful strategies and 1000 practice questions  
from the most trusted name in NCLEX exam prep!

SAUNDERS

2014–2015



# STRATEGIES *for* TEST SUCCESS

Passing Nursing School *and the* NCLEX® Exam

Linda Anne Silvestri | Angela Silvestri

- ▲ Builds overall test-taking skills
- ▲ Includes alternate item format examples
- ▲ Content review that you can use throughout nursing school

TEST-TAKING  
STRATEGIES

ELSEVIER



EVOLVE STUDY RESOURCES FREE WITH NEW TEXTBOOK PURCHASE.  
[EVOLVE.ELSEVIER.COM](http://EVOLVE.ELSEVIER.COM)

# Quick Reference Guide to Strategies

**Alternate Item Formats, p. 30**

**Avoiding “Reading into the Question”, p. 42**

*Ingredients of the Question, p. 42*

*Strategic Words or Phrases, p. 46*

*The Subject of the Question, p. 47*

*Nursing Knowledge and the Process of Elimination, p. 48*

**Positive and Negative Event Queries, p. 52**

**Prioritization, p. 61**

*Strategic Words or Phrases, p. 64*

*The ABCs—Airway, Breathing, Circulation, p. 66*

*Maslow’s Hierarchy of Needs Theory, p. 67*

*The Steps of the Nursing Process (Clinical Problem-Solving Process), p. 70*

**Delegating and Assignment Making, p. 77**

**Time Management, p. 85**

**Communication, p. 87**

*Cultural Considerations, p. 90*

**Pharmacology, p. 100**

*Medications and Intravenous Calculations, p. 111*

**Closed-ended Words, p. 113**

**Medical vs. Nursing Interventions, p. 115**

**Comparable or Alike Options, p. 116**

**Parts of an Option, p. 117**

**Umbrella Option, p. 117**

**Laboratory Values, p. 118**

**Visualizing the Information, p. 121**

**Client Positioning, p. 122**

**Therapeutic Diets, p. 124**

**Disasters, p. 129**

SAUNDERS

2014–2015

STRATEGIES *for*  
TEST SUCCESS

PASSING NURSING SCHOOL *and the* NCLEX® EXAM

# Even More Questions on Evolve!

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Silvestri/strategies/>

*Evolve Access Code:*

## How to Use the Online Practice Questions

*Customize your study session for your time and your own unique needs*

### Study Mode

*Receive immediate feedback after each question*

Select questions by Strategy, Client Needs, Integrated Process, Alternate Item Format Type, or specific Content Area. The answer, rationale, test-taking strategy, question codes, and reference source(s) for further remediation appear immediately after you answer each question.

### Exam Mode

*Take a practice exam, and receive your results and feedback at the end*

Select questions by Strategy, Client Needs, Integrated Process, Alternate Item Format Type, or specific Content Area. Then select the number of questions you'd like to take in your exam—10, 25, 50, or 100. When you've finished the exam, the percentage of questions you answered correctly will be shown in a table, and you can go back to review the correct answers—as well as rationales, test-taking strategies, question codes, and reference(s)—for each question.

**SAUNDERS**

**2014–2015**



# STRATEGIES *for* TEST SUCCESS

**Passing Nursing School *and the* NCLEX® Exam**

## **Linda Anne Silvestri, PhD, RN**

Instructor of Nursing  
Salve Regina University  
Newport, Rhode Island

President  
Nursing Reviews, Inc.  
and

Professional Nursing Seminars, Inc.  
Charlestown, Rhode Island

Instructor  
NCLEX-RN® and NCLEX-PN® Review Courses

## **Angela Silvestri, RN, MSN**

Graduate Assistant, School of Nursing  
University of Nevada, Las Vegas  
Las Vegas, Nevada

**ELSEVIER**

Copyright © 2014, 2010, 2005 by Saunders, an imprint of Elsevier Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: [www.elsevier.com/permissions](http://www.elsevier.com/permissions).

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

### Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

NCLEX®, NCLEX-RN®, and NCLEX-PN® are registered trademarks of the National Council of State Boards of Nursing, Inc.

### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data or Control Number

Silvestri, Linda Anne.

Saunders 2014-2015 strategies for test success: passing nursing school and the NCLEX exam / Linda Anne Silvestri, Angela Silvestri. – 3rd ed.

p. ; cm.

2014-2015 strategies for test success

Saunders strategies for test success

Rev. ed. of: Saunders strategies for test success / Linda Anne Silvestri. 2nd ed. c2010.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-4557-3319-4 (pbk. : alk. paper)

I. Silvestri, Angela E. II. Title. III. Title: 2014-2015 strategies for test success. IV. Title: Saunders strategies for test success.

[DNLM: 1. Nursing Care—methods—Examination Questions. 2. Nursing Process—Examination Questions. 3. Test Taking Skills—methods—Examination Questions. WY 18.2]

610.73076—dc23

2012050954

*Executive Content Strategist:* Kristin Geen

*Associate Content Developmental Specialist:* Laura Goodrich

*Content Coordinator:* Hannah Corrier

*Publishing Services Manager:* Jeff Patterson

*Project Manager:* Bill Drone

*Design Direction:* Brian Salisbury

Printed in China

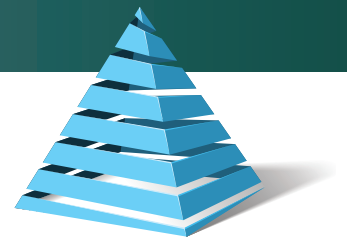
Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



*To all nursing students,  
Your commitment to becoming successful  
and your dedication to the profession of nursing  
will bring never-ending rewards!*

Intentionally left as blank





## About the Authors

### Linda Anne Silvestri, PhD, RN

As a child, I always dreamed of becoming either a nurse or a teacher. Initially I chose to become a nurse because I really wanted to help others, especially those who were ill. Then I realized that both of my dreams could come true: I could be both a nurse and a teacher. So I pursued my dreams.

I received my diploma in nursing at Cooley Dickinson Hospital School of Nursing in Northampton, Massachusetts. Afterward, I worked at Baystate Medical Center in Springfield, Massachusetts. While there, I cared for clients in acute medical-surgical units, the intensive care unit, the emergency department, pediatric units, and other acute care units. Later I received an Associate Degree from Holyoke Community College in Holyoke, Massachusetts, my BSN from American International College in Springfield, Massachusetts, and my MSN from Anna Maria College in Paxton, Massachusetts, with a dual major in Nursing Management and Patient Education. I received my PhD in Nursing from the University of Nevada, Las Vegas, and conducted research on self-efficacy and the predictors for NCLEX® success. I am also a member of the Honor Society of Nursing, Sigma Theta Tau International, Phi Kappa Phi, the American Nurses Association, the National League for Nursing, the Western Institute of Nursing, the Eastern Nursing Research Society, and the Golden Key International Honour Society. Additionally, I received the 2012 Alumna of the Year/Nurse of the Year Award from the University of Nevada Las Vegas, School of Nursing.

As a native of Springfield, Massachusetts, I began my teaching career as an instructor of medical-surgical nursing and leadership-management nursing at Baystate Medical Center School of Nursing in 1981. In 1989, I relocated to Rhode Island and began teaching medical-surgical nursing and psychiatric nursing to RN and LPN students at the Community College of Rhode Island. Later in 1994, I began teaching nursing at Salve Regina University in Newport, Rhode Island, and remain there as an adjunct faculty member.

My experiences as a student, nursing educator, and item writer for the NCLEX exams aided me as I developed a comprehensive review course to prepare nursing students and graduates for the NCLEX examination. In 1991, I established Professional Nursing Seminars, Inc., and in 2000, I started Nursing Reviews, Inc. Both companies are dedicated to conducting review courses for the NCLEX-RN and the NCLEX-PN examinations and assisting nursing graduates to achieve their goals of becoming Registered Nurses and/or Licensed Practical/Vocational Nurses.

Today, I conduct review courses for NCLEX examinations throughout New England and am the author of numerous successful review products. I am so pleased that you have decided to let me join you in your journey to success in testing for nursing examinations and for the NCLEX examination!



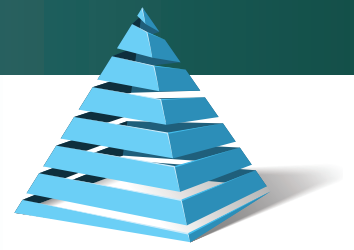


### **Angela Silvestri, RN, MSN**

When asked what I wanted to do with my life and as a career, I always answered that I wanted to work in the medical field. At first my ambition was to become a physician; however, learning that nurses interact with their patients more often than physicians do swayed me to pursue nursing. While in nursing school, I worked as a tutor for my peers. I realized how much I enjoyed doing this and how much of a difference my help made in these students' college careers and ultimately their lives.

I received my baccalaureate degree in Nursing and Sociology at Salve Regina University in Newport, Rhode Island. After earning my degree, I worked in long-term care, rehabilitation, and acute care settings. I then went on to earn my master's degree in Nursing Education at the University of Nevada, Las Vegas. For my master's thesis requirement, I conducted a research study on cultural competence in the baccalaureate degree nursing curriculum and am currently working on publishing the findings. I am a member of Sigma Theta Tau International Honour Society, Delta Upsilon at Large, and Golden Key International Honour Society. I received a scholarship from Sigma Theta Tau for academic excellence while attending Salve Regina University and an award from the University of Nevada, Las Vegas, for Outstanding MSN Student. I am currently pursuing my PhD in Nursing Education at the University of Nevada, Las Vegas, and am planning for a career in teaching and research. I am working as a graduate assistant and work directly with nursing students in simulation and clinical settings. I have also had the opportunity to teach clinical sessions as an adjunct faculty member at Touro University in Henderson, Nevada.

Working with students while being a student helps me understand and realize the individual needs of each student. This experience, in addition to my experience in item writing and other contributions to nursing textbooks, has helped me co-author this text. I am very excited to be a part of this opportunity to further assist nursing students in their ultimate goal: passing nursing school and the NCLEX exam!



# Contributors

## Special Contributor

### ***Donna Russo, RN, MSN, CCRN, CNE***

Nursing Instructor  
ARIA Health School of Nursing  
Trevose, Pennsylvania

## Item Writers

### ***Linda Ann Aubrey, MSN, RN, CMSRN, CNE***

Retention and Recruitment Nursing Instructor  
Delaware Technical Community College  
Georgetown, Delaware

### ***Martha Barry, RN, CNM, MS***

Certified Nurse Midwife  
Adjunct Clinical Instructor  
Advocate Medical Group and University of Illinois Chicago  
Chicago, Illinois

### ***Jacqueline Rosenjack Burchum, DNSc, FNP-BC, CNE***

Associate Professor  
University of Tennessee Health Science Center Colleges of Nursing  
Memphis, Tennessee

### ***Reitha Cabaniss, MSN***

Nursing Director  
Bevill State Community College  
Jasper, Alabama

### ***Mary C. Carrico, MS, RN***

Associate Professor of Nursing  
West Kentucky Community and Technical College  
Paducah, Kentucky

### ***Mary L. Dowell, PhD, RN, BC***

Assistant Professor, Nursing  
San Antonio College  
San Antonio, Texas

### ***Lena R. Greene, MSN, RN***

Nursing Faculty  
Caldwell Community College and Technical Institute  
Hudson, North Carolina

***Kimberly R. Foisy, RN, MSN, CMSRN***

Assistant Professor  
Massachusetts College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences School of Nursing  
Boston, Massachusetts

***Rebecca Russo Hill, DNP, FNP-C***

Assistant Professor  
Massachusetts College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences School of Nursing  
Boston, Massachusetts

***Tiffany Jakubowski, RN***

Instructor  
Longmont Clinic, PC  
Front Range Community College  
Longmont, Colorado

***Christina Keller, RN, MSN***

Instructor  
Radford University Clinical Simulation Center  
Radford, Virginia

***Lynn M. Korvick, PhD, RN, CNE***

Assistant Professor of Nursing, Chair, Graduate Education  
Oklahoma City University  
Oklahoma City, Oklahoma

***Terri Peterson, RN, BSN, MSNEd***

Instructor  
Bauder College  
Atlanta, Georgia

***Julie S. Snyder, MSN, RN-BC***

Adjunct Faculty  
School of Nursing  
Old Dominion University  
Norfolk, Virginia

***Bethany Hawes Sykes, EdD, RN, CEN, CCRN***

Coordinator of Registered Nurse Refresher Program  
University of Massachusetts Dartmouth  
North Dartmouth, Massachusetts

***Linda Turchin, MSN, RN, CNE***

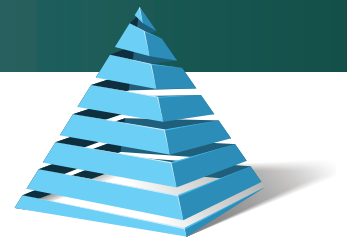
Associate Professor of Nursing  
Fairmont State University  
Fairmont, West Virginia

***Koni J. Utley, MSN, RN***

Nursing Faculty  
Columbia Gorge Community College  
The Dalles, Oregon

***Polly Gerber Zimmermann, RN, MS, MBA, CEN, FAEN***

Associate Professor  
Harry S. Truman College  
Chicago, Illinois



# Reviewers

## Faculty Reviewers

### ***Barbara Coles, RN-BC, MA***

USF Clinical Faculty  
VA Nursing Academy  
Tampa, Florida

### ***Jamie L. Jones, MSN, RN, CNE***

Assistant Professor  
University of Arkansas at Little Rock  
Little Rock, Arkansas

### ***Mary Ann Kolis, MSN, RN, ANP-BC***

Instructor  
Gateway Technical College  
Kenosha, Wisconsin

### ***Barbara Magenheim, RN, BSN***

Nursing Faculty  
Chandler-Gilbert Community College  
Chandler, Arizona

## Student Reviewers

### ***Christina Campbell***

Southwest Tennessee Community College  
Memphis, Tennessee

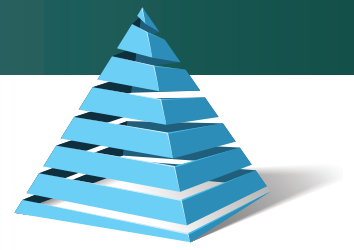
### ***Kasey House***

Harding University  
Searcy, Arkansas

### ***A. Jackson***

University of Memphis  
Memphis, Tennessee

Intentionally left as blank



# Preface

## Welcome to Saunders Pyramid to Success!

*Saunders 2014–2015 Strategies for Test Success: Passing Nursing School and the NCLEX Exam* is one in a series of products designed to assist you in achieving your goal of passing your nursing courses and becoming a licensed nurse. This product provides you with test-taking strategies that will help you pass your nursing examinations and the NCLEX examination.

## Organization

*Saunders 2014–2015 Strategies for Test Success: Passing Nursing School and the NCLEX Exam* contains three parts and 20 chapters. The chapters in Part I describe the test-taking strategies and include several sample questions that illustrate how to use each test-taking strategy. The sample questions represent all types of question formats including multiple choice and alternate item formats. In addition to the sample questions in the chapters, a total of 1000 practice questions accompany this book. In Part II of the book, there are 200 practice questions, and the accompanying Evolve site contains the 200 practice questions from the book along with an additional 800 practice questions. All of the practice questions reflect the framework and the content identified in the most current NCLEX test plans. The practice questions in this resource relate to each Client Needs category and each Integrated Process of the NCLEX exam. The Client Needs categories include Safe and Effective Care Environment, Health Promotion and Maintenance, Psychosocial Integrity, and Physiological Integrity. The Integrated Processes include Caring, Communication and Documentation, Nursing Process, and Teaching and Learning.

## Part I: Study and Test Preparation

### *Chapter 1: Preparing for Nursing Examinations*

The information in this chapter focuses on the exams that you will take during your nursing program and provides you with information on how to prepare for these exams. Topics include the purpose of nursing exams, what you can expect on nursing exams, how nursing exams are different from other exams, and the types of questions on nursing exams. Additional topics include preparing for a nursing exam using your syllabus, textbook, classroom notes, flash cards, study guides, and study groups.

### *Chapter 2: Developing Study Skills*

This chapter discusses several topics related to study skills and study habits. It provides you with information on how to develop or refine study skills and how to develop good study habits so that you will be well prepared for your nursing

exams. Included are the top 10 *Pyramid Points* and study habits. Also, study skills such as listening, note-taking, reading, remembering content, and critical thinking skills are discussed.

### **Chapter 3: Reducing Test Anxiety**

This chapter focuses on the important points related to test anxiety. In this chapter, you are provided with self-assessment points to determine if you experience test anxiety. Additionally, the causes of test anxiety, how to prevent test anxiety, and how to control test anxiety before an exam are discussed. Points about maintaining a positive attitude and what you can do when you experience test anxiety are presented in this chapter.

### **Chapter 4: NCLEX® Preparation**

This chapter focuses on preparing for the NCLEX exam—the exam that you must take and pass after you graduate from nursing school in order to become a licensed nurse. This chapter emphasizes the important point that NCLEX preparation begins the moment you enter your nursing program. Specific to the NCLEX, it provides you with the steps for preparing for the NCLEX, self-assessment points to determine your readiness, and a plan for preparation.

## **PART II: Strategies for Success**

### **Chapter 5: Alternate Item Formats**

Alternate item format questions are designed to test competency in nursing skills and abilities. This chapter describes the various types of alternate item format questions that you may encounter on the NCLEX examination and on nursing school examinations and provides you with test-taking strategies to answer them correctly. These alternate item format types include fill-in-the-blank, multiple response, prioritizing (ordered response), figure or illustration (hot spot), chart/exhibit, graphic item options, and audio and video.

### **Chapter 6: How to Avoid “Reading into the Question”**

One of the pitfalls that can cause a problem when answering a question is “reading into the question.” What “reading into the question” means is that you are considering issues beyond the information presented in the question. This chapter describes the strategies to use when answering a question to prevent this from happening and includes topics such as how to read a question, using strategic words, identifying the subject of the question, and using nursing knowledge and the process of elimination.

### **Chapter 7: Positive and Negative Event Queries**

This chapter describes the differences between a positive and a negative event query in a question. Reading the question carefully and noting the type of query used are important to assist in answering a question correctly. This chapter also identifies the strategic words or phrases that indicate whether the question contains a positive or negative event query.

### **Chapter 8: Questions Requiring Prioritization**

Some of the test questions on your nursing exams and on the NCLEX will require you to use the skill of prioritizing nursing actions. These types of questions can be difficult because when a question requires prioritization, all of the options may be correct and you will need to determine the correct order of action. This chapter describes the test-taking strategies that you can use to answer prioritizing questions correctly. Some of these strategies include the ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation, Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory, and the steps of the nursing process. Also included in this chapter are the strategies for determining the need to contact the health care provider.



### **Chapter 9: Leading and Managing, Delegating, and Assignment-Making Questions**

Some test questions that you will need to answer will relate to the nurse's responsibilities regarding delegating care and assignment making and the supervisory role of these responsibilities. This chapter reviews the guidelines and principles related to delegating and assignment making, two very important roles of the nurse as a leader and manager. It also provides you with information about the tasks and activities that can be delegated and assigned to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), licensed practical/vocational nurses, and registered nurses. Guidelines for time management are also reviewed, because managing time efficiently is a key factor for completing activities and tasks within a given time period.

### **Chapter 10: Communication Questions**

Communication is a process through which information is exchanged, either verbally or nonverbally, between two or more individuals and is an extremely important role of the nurse. This chapter reviews the guidelines to follow when answering communication questions and identifies various cultural aspects to consider when communicating and caring for clients. Additionally, therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques are presented.

### **Chapter 11: Pharmacology, Medication, and Intravenous Calculation Questions**

Pharmacology is one of the most difficult nursing content areas to master and feel comfortable with. One reason that it is so difficult is because of the enormous number of medications available. Another reason is that there is a vast amount of information to know about each medication. It is important for you to spend ample time studying and reviewing pharmacology in preparation for your nursing exams and for the NCLEX and to use this knowledge to answer pharmacology questions. However, you may be presented with pharmacology questions on your exams that present medications that you are unfamiliar with, in which case you will need to make an educated guess to answer the question. This chapter provides you with the strategies and general guidelines to use for making an educated guess to answer pharmacology questions correctly. This chapter also includes medication and intravenous calculations strategies and examples.

### **Chapter 12: Additional Pyramid Strategies**

This chapter reviews additional helpful strategies that will assist in answering a test question correctly. Also included in this chapter are strategies that are useful for answering questions related to laboratory values, client positioning, and therapeutic diets. Strategies that will be helpful when answering questions related to disasters are also presented in this chapter.

## **PART III: Practice Tests**

Part III is comprised of eight practice tests that provide you the opportunity to practice answering exam questions using various test-taking strategies. These tests include: Chapter 13, Fundamental Skills Questions; Chapter 14, Adult Health Questions; Chapter 15, Mental Health Questions; Chapter 16, Maternity Questions; Chapter 17, Child Health Questions; Chapter 18, Pharmacology Questions; Chapter 19, Delegating/Prioritizing Questions; and Chapter 20, Leadership/Management Questions. The correct answer, rationale for correct and incorrect options, a test-taking strategy, a tip for the beginning nursing student, question codes, and a reference text with a page number are provided for each question.

## Special Features of the Book

### Pyramid Points

Pyramid Points are the bullets that are placed at specific areas throughout the chapters. The Pyramid Points identify content that is important in preparation for the NCLEX examination.

### Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student

A tip for the beginning nursing student is provided for each sample question in the book. Additionally, a tip for the beginning nursing student accompanies each question in the practice tests located in Part III and on the accompanying Evolve site. This tip provides the beginning nursing student with a description of the content or disorder addressed in the question.

### NCLEX® Tip

NCLEX tips are located throughout Parts I and II of the text. These tips relate to NCLEX information and detail important points associated with the content addressed and with the NCLEX exam.

### Lifestyle Planning Tip

Lifestyle planning tips are located throughout Parts I and II of the text. These tips provide information about healthy lifestyle choices that will help you live a well-balanced life, leading to success in nursing school.

### Scope of Practice Tip

Scope of practice tips are located throughout Parts I and II of the text. These tips provide information about what you, as a nurse or nursing student, are able to do in your practice settings. These tips will also help you answer questions related to delegation and assignment-making.

### Student-to-Student Tip

Student-to-Student tips provide information from a student's perspective on various topics that you will encounter during nursing school, such as tips for answering certain types of questions encountered on your nursing exams.

### Preparing for Clinical Tip

Preparing for clinical tips are located throughout Parts I and II of the text. These tips provide information particularly related to working in the clinical setting and ways to be the most prepared when you start your clinical rotations.

### Practice Test Questions

The chapters in this book contain several sample practice questions that illustrate specific test-taking strategies. In addition to the sample practice questions integrated into the chapters, there are 200 practice test questions in the book. The accompanying Evolve site contains a total of 1000 questions (200 questions from the book and 800 additional questions). The 200 practice test questions in the book and all of the questions on the Evolve site provide the correct answer, a rationale for correct and incorrect options, a test-taking strategy, a tip for the beginning nursing student, question codes, and a reference text with a page number.

## Alternate Item Format Test Questions

In addition to multiple choice questions, alternate item format test questions are included throughout the book, the practice tests located in Part III, and on the accompanying Evolve site. These alternate item format types include fill-in-the-blank, multiple response, prioritizing (ordered response), figure or illustration (hot spot), chart/exhibit, graphic item options, and audio and video.

## Answer Section for Practice-Test Questions

The answer sections for each practice-test question in Part III and on the accompanying Evolve site include the correct answer, rationale, tip for the beginning nursing student, test-taking strategy, question categories, and reference source. The structure for the answer section is unique and provides the following information:

**The Rationale:** The rationale provides you with the significant information regarding both correct and incorrect options.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A tip for the beginning nursing student accompanies each question in the practice test located in Part III and on the accompanying Evolve site. This tip provides the beginning nursing student with a description of the content or disorder addressed in the question.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** The test-taking strategy provides you with the logical path in selecting the correct option and assists you in selecting an answer to a question on which you must guess. This feature reinforces what you learned in the book about the use of test-taking strategies. The specific strategy is colored in **blue**. Each test-taking strategy also provides a “suggestion for review.” Content to review is colored in **magenta**.

**Question Categories:** Each question is identified based on the categories used by the NCLEX test plan. Additional content categories are provided with each question to help you identify areas in need of review. The categories identified with each practice question include Level of Cognitive Ability, Client Needs, Integrated Process, and the specific nursing Content Area. All categories are identified by their full names so that you do not need to memorize codes or abbreviations.

**Reference:** A reference, including a page number, is provided so you can easily find the information that you need to review in your undergraduate nursing textbooks.

## Evolve Site

The accompanying Evolve site contains 1000 practice questions in the multiple choice format or in the alternate item format such as fill-in-the-blank, multiple response, prioritizing (ordered response), figure or illustration (hot spot), chart/exhibit, graphic item options, and audio and video. This Windows- and Macintosh-compatible program offers two testing modes for review:

**Study:** All questions in a selected Strategies, Client Needs, Integrated Process, or Content Area. The answer, rationale, priority nursing tip, test-taking strategy, question categories, and reference source appear after answering each question.

**Exam:** This is customizable for your time and study needs. You may take 25, 50, or 100 randomly chosen questions from selected Strategies, Client Needs, Integrated Process, or specific Content Area from the entire pool of questions. The answer, rationale, test-taking strategy, priority nursing tip, question categories, reference source, and results appear after you finish the exam.

### Content Areas on the Evolve Site

When you use the software, you will be able to select practice questions based on a Client Needs area or a Content Area. The Client Needs areas include Safe and Effective Care Environment, Health Promotion and Maintenance, Psychosocial

Integrity, and Physiological Integrity. The content areas include the following:

- Adult Health
- Child Health
- Delegating/Prioritizing
- Fundamental Skills
- Leadership/Management
- Maternity
- Mental Health
- Pharmacology



## How to Use This Book

*Saunders 2014–2015 Strategies for Test Success: Passing Nursing School and the NCLEX Exam* is especially designed to help you with your successful journey to the peak of the Saunders Pyramid to Success, becoming a licensed nurse. This book focuses on test-taking strategies that will help you pass both the nursing examinations that you need to take in nursing school and the NCLEX examination. You should begin your process through the Saunders Pyramid to Success by reading all of the chapters in this book to learn the strategies that you can use to answer test questions. Be sure to read all of the tips provided for you that are located throughout the chapters and the *tip* for the beginning nursing student located with each sample question. While in nursing school, answer the questions in the practice tests located in Part III and on the accompanying Evolve site that relate to the content area you are studying.

When using the Evolve site, it is best to begin by selecting the Study Mode because you will receive immediate feedback regarding the answer, rationale, tip for the beginning nursing student, test-taking strategies, content to review, question codes, and reference source. Therefore, you will be provided with immediate information about your strengths and weaknesses. Once you have answered the practice-test question, read the rationale, tip for the beginning nursing student, and the test-taking strategy. The rationale provides you with the significant information regarding both the correct and incorrect options. The tip provides you with a description of the content or disorder addressed in the question. The test-taking strategy offers you the logical path to selecting the correct option. The strategy also identifies the content area that you need to review if you had difficulty with the question. Use the reference source listed to easily find the information that you need to review.

It is very important to identify your strengths and weaknesses with regard to nursing content areas. Additionally, it is also important to strengthen any weak areas in order to be successful on your nursing exams and on the NCLEX examination. Several products in Saunders Pyramid to Success can be used to strengthen any weak areas. These additional products in Saunders Pyramid to Success can be obtained by calling 1-800-545-2522 or visiting [www.elsevierhealth.com](http://www.elsevierhealth.com). These products are described next.

## RN Products

### Saunders Comprehensive Review for the NCLEX-RN® Examination

This is an excellent resource to use both while you are in nursing school and in preparation for the NCLEX examination. This book contains 20 units with 77 chapters and a Comprehensive Test, and each chapter is designed to identify specific components of nursing content. The book and accompanying software contain more than 4500 practice questions and include alternate item format questions. The software also contains a 75-question assessment test that generates an individualized study calendar.

## **Saunders Q&A Review for the NCLEX-RN® Examination**

This book and accompanying Evolve site provide you with more than 5800 practice questions based on the NCLEX-RN test plan. Each practice question includes a priority nursing tip that provides you with a piece of important information to remember that will help to answer questions on nursing exams and on NCLEX. The chapters in this book are uniquely designed and are based on the NCLEX-RN examination test plan framework, including Client Needs and Integrated Processes. Alternate item format questions are included. With practice questions focused on the Client Needs and the Integrated Processes, you can assess your level of competence.

## **HESI/Saunders Online Review Course for the NCLEX-RN® Examination**

The online NCLEX-RN review course addresses all areas of the test plan identified by the National Council of State Boards of Nursing, Inc. This self-paced online review contains 10 interactive, multimedia-rich modules featuring animations and videos, practice questions, testlets, and much more! A diagnostic pretest generates a study calendar to guide your review. Thousands of NCLEX-style questions—including every type of alternate item format question—are provided, concluding with a comprehensive examination that will sharpen your test-taking skills. Unique videos that simulate a live review course focus on difficult subjects such as dysrhythmias, and make them easier to understand. By taking a systematic and individualized approach, this online review will prepare you for the NCLEX like nothing else can!

## **Saunders Q&A Review Cards for the NCLEX-RN® Examination**

The Saunders Q&A Review Cards for the NCLEX-RN® Exam provides you with 1200 NCLEX-RN review questions, including alternate item format questions, in a convenient flashcard format. This is the perfect portable study resource that you can use anytime and anywhere. Review questions are on the front of each card and are organized by Content Areas. Client Needs categories, consistent with the current NCLEX-RN test plan are also identified. Answers are included on the back of the card, along with rationales and test-taking strategies.

## **PN Products**

### **Saunders Comprehensive Review for the NCLEX-PN® Examination**

This is an excellent resource to use both while you are in nursing school and in preparation for the NCLEX examination. This book contains 20 units and 67 chapters, and each chapter is designed to identify specific components of nursing content. The book and accompanying Evolve site contain more than 4200 practice questions and include alternate item format questions. The software also contains a 75-question assessment test that generates an individualized study calendar.

### **Saunders Q&A Review for the NCLEX-PN® Examination**

This book and accompanying software provide you with more than 3200 practice questions based on the NCLEX-PN test plan. The chapters in this book are uniquely designed and are based on the NCLEX-PN examination test plan framework, including Client Needs and Integrated Processes. Alternate item format questions are included. With practice questions focused on the Client Needs and the Integrated Processes, you can assess your level of competence.

## **Saunders Review Cards for the NCLEX-PN® Examination**

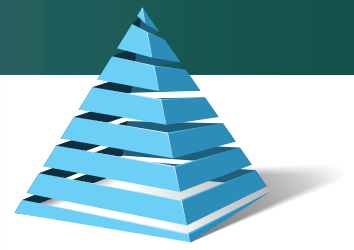
The Saunders Review Cards for the NCLEX-PN® Examination provides you with more than 900 practice test questions, including multiple choice questions and alternate item format questions, such as fill-in-the-blank, multiple response, prioritizing (ordered response), and figure/illustration (hot spot) questions. The practice question is located on one side of the review card. The reverse side of the review card contains the correct answer, rationale, and question categories for the practice question on the front of the card.

## **HESI/Saunders Online Review Course for the NCLEX-PN® Examination**

The online NCLEX-PN review course addresses all areas of the test plan identified by the National Council of State Boards of Nursing, Inc. This self-paced online review contains 10 interactive, multimedia-rich modules featuring animations and videos, practice questions, testlets, and much more! A diagnostic pretest generates a study calendar to guide your review. Thousands of NCLEX-style questions—including every type of alternate item format question—are provided, concluding with a comprehensive examination that will sharpen your test-taking skills. Unique videos that simulate a live review course focus on difficult subjects such as dysrhythmias, and make them easier to understand. By taking a systematic and individualized approach, this online review will prepare you for the NCLEX like nothing else can!

Good luck with your journey through the Saunders Pyramid to Success. We wish you continued success throughout your nursing program and in your new career as a nurse!

*Linda Anne Silvestri, PhD, RN and Angela Silvestri, RN, MSN*



# Acknowledgments

Sincere appreciation and warmest thanks are extended to the many individuals who in their own way have contributed to the publication of this book.

First, I want to thank all of my nursing students at the Community College of Rhode Island in Warwick, who approached me in 1991 and persuaded me to assist them in preparing to take the NCLEX examination. Their enthusiasm and inspiration led to the commencement of my professional endeavors in conducting NCLEX review courses for nursing students. I also thank the numerous nursing students who have attended my review courses for their willingness to share their needs and ideas. Their input has certainly added a special uniqueness to this publication.

I wish to acknowledge all of the nursing faculty who have taught in my NCLEX review courses. Their commitment, dedication, and expertise have certainly assisted nursing students in achieving success with the NCLEX examination. Additionally, I want to acknowledge Laurent W. Valliere for his commitment and dedication in helping my nursing students prepare for the NCLEX exam from a nonacademic point of view.

Both Angela and I sincerely acknowledge and thank two very important individuals from Elsevier who are dedicated to our work in creating NCLEX products for nursing students. We thank Kristin Geen, Executive Content Strategist, for her continuous assistance, enthusiasm, and support as we prepared this publication. And we thank Laura Goodrich, Associate Content Developmental Specialist, for her enormous amount of support and assistance, ideas for the product, and for maintaining organization for manuscript production. Thank you Kristin and Laura!

We also want to acknowledge and thank all of the staff at Elsevier for their tremendous assistance throughout the preparation and production of this publication, especially Jeff Patterson, Publishing Services Manager; Bill Drone, Project Manager; Jason Gonulsen and Maria Kuhn, Multimedia Producers; and Brian Salisbury, Designer. Also, I would like to thank Hannah Corrier, content coordinator, for all her help organizing the numerous contributors involved in this project. We offer a special thank you to all of you.

Angela and I also want to thank all of the reviewers and item writers for their expert assistance and contributions to this review product. We also thank Elodia Dianne Fiorentino for researching content and preparing references for each practice question; Nicholas Silvestri for editing, formatting, and organizing manuscript files; and James Guilbault for researching and updating medications.

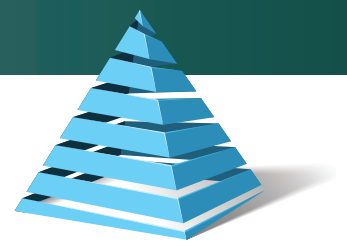
I wish to acknowledge and thank Dr. Brandy L. Lehman, Assistant Professor, College of Nursing, from the University of South Florida in Tampa, Florida. Dr. Lehman took the time to speak to me to share her thoughts and ideas about the reorganization of the content of the first edition and additions that could be made that would enhance the learning experience for the student. Although

I have not personally met Dr. Lehman, I enjoyed our telephone conversation and it was apparent that she is dedicated to educating nursing students. Thank you Dr. Lehman!

Lastly, we extend a very special thank you to all of our nursing students, past, present, and future. You light up our lives! Your curiosity, enthusiasm for learning, and desire to become successful are so inspiring.

*Linda Anne Silvestri, PhD, RN and Angela Silvestri, RN, MSN*





# Contents

## **PART I Study and Test Preparation 1**

- 1** Preparing for Nursing Examinations 2
- 2** Developing Study Skills 8
- 3** Reducing Test Anxiety 17
- 4** NCLEX® Preparation 22

## **PART II Strategies for Success 29**

- 5** Alternate Item Formats 30
- 6** How to Avoid “Reading into the Question” 42
- 7** Positive and Negative Event Queries 52
- 8** Questions Requiring Prioritization 61
- 9** Leading and Managing, Delegating, and Assignment-Making Questions 77
- 10** Communication Questions 87
- 11** Pharmacology, Medication, and Intravenous Calculation Questions 100
- 12** Additional Pyramid Strategies 113

## **PART III Practice Tests 131**

- 13** Fundamental Skills Questions 132
- 14** Adult Health Questions 147
- 15** Mental Health Questions 166
- 16** Maternity Questions 178
- 17** Child Health Questions 191
- 18** Pharmacology Questions 202
- 19** Delegating/Prioritizing Questions 216
- 20** Leadership/Management Questions 231
- References 246
- Index 247

Intentionally left as blank

SAUNDERS

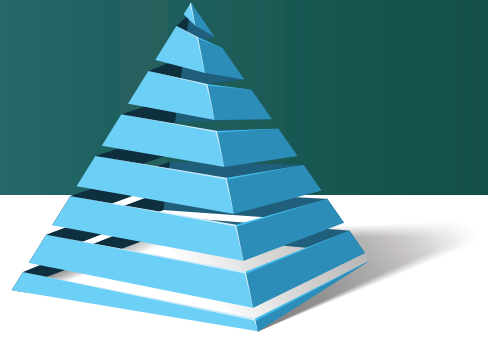
2014–2015

STRATEGIES *for*  
TEST SUCCESS

PASSING NURSING SCHOOL *and the* NCLEX® EXAM

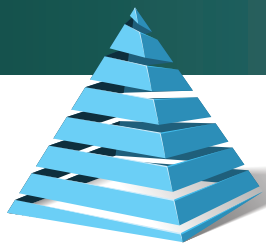
Intentionally left as blank

# PART I



## Study and Test Preparation

- 1 Preparing for Nursing Examinations, 2
- 2 Developing Study Skills, 8
- 3 Reducing Test Anxiety, 17
- 4 NCLEX® Preparation, 22



## CHAPTER 1

# Preparing for Nursing Examinations



### When and Why Are Nursing Exams Administered?

Nursing exams are administered at various points throughout each nursing course. Your nursing faculty administer these exams to you to test your knowledge of the content taught in a course and to test your ability to analyze, synthesize, and apply concepts learned to care for clients in various situations. The exams you take in your nursing courses are also designed to prepare you for the NCLEX® exam, the examination that you need to take and pass after you graduate in order to become a licensed nurse. Additional purposes for administering exams are listed in the box below.

#### Purposes for Administering Exams

1. To test knowledge of the content taught in a course
2. To test the ability to analyze and apply concepts learned to care for clients in various situations
3. To ensure the development of a professional nurse who can safely and competently care for clients served in the profession
4. To ensure the development of a critical thinker who can make sound judgments and decisions based on evidence-based practice
5. To make certain that the student is a successful NCLEX exam candidate who will pass the NCLEX exam on his or her first sitting



### The Beginning Nursing Student: What Should You Think About?

#### What Is a Beginning Nursing Student?

If you have just completed your support courses (e.g., anatomy and physiology, microbiology, chemistry) and are entering your first nursing course, then you are a beginning nursing student. Your first nursing course is most likely titled “Fundamentals in Nursing” or something similar, and in this course you will learn all the safe and basic concepts necessary for caring for a client.

#### The NCLEX Exam: Why Do You Need to Think About It Now?

You may think that the NCLEX exam is far off, and it is; however, it is critical that you think about it the moment you enter your first nursing class. You may ask, “Why is this important?” To be successful on the NCLEX exam, you need

to become as familiar as you can be with what this exam is all about as early as possible in the nursing program. You need to know that taking the NCLEX exam will be a reality once you graduate and that this exam must be passed in order to become a licensed nurse. Often, students are concerned with the “here and now” of what they want and need to accomplish and are not concerned about the future, the NCLEX exam. Students say, “I will worry about the NCLEX exam when the time comes.” At this point, it is much too late. So think about this exam early; visit the National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN) Web site at [www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org), and download the detailed test plan for the NCLEX exam. This test plan provides a wealth of information about the exam and lists the content areas that will be tested on it. Use these lists as your study guides for preparing for exams for each nursing course. By doing this, consider that you are not only preparing for your nursing exams but also preparing for the NCLEX exam at the same time. You will be ready when the NCLEX exam becomes a reality for you!

### **Planning: Why Is It So Important?**

Much of your success in nursing school has to do with how you plan and organize your time. You will have a very busy schedule and will need to plan ahead to best prepare for your exams, clinical experiences, and other assignments. Get an organizer with a calendar or another type of calendar that you feel will suit your needs, and use this as your planning guide for everything that you will need to do. Make notes about both your short-term goals and your long-term goals. For your short-term goals, note your classes and times, school meetings and appointments, study session times, assignment due dates, date and exam times, and any other obligations related to school. For your long-term goals, note what you plan to accomplish each year until your projected graduation date. Look at your calendar daily to meet any day-to-day obligations, and look ahead at your long-term goals to be sure that you are ready for graduation.

### **What Can You Expect on Nursing Exams?**

### **How Do Nursing Exams Differ From Other Exams?**

When you enter your first nursing course, you need to remember that your exam experience in college up to this point has related to testing in support courses, such as anatomy and physiology, microbiology, and chemistry. In these courses, test questions on exams have been primarily at the cognitive level of knowledge or understanding. These support courses have required not only a great deal of reading but also memorization in order to answer the exam questions correctly. So basically, your test-taking skills to this point may be quite good but are based on knowledge, some understanding, and memorization.

Nursing exams differ greatly from the exams that you have been used to taking. Memorization alone will not get you through a nursing exam. Some memorization, such as memorizing certain laboratory values or memorizing formulas for calculating a medication dosage or an intravenous flow rate is necessary in nursing. However, the exam questions on a nursing exam are at a higher cognitive level than memorization and will require you to analyze or synthesize information and apply it to a situation. You will not be able to rely only on recall skills to answer test questions on a nursing exam. Instead, you will need to understand pathophysiology related to certain nursing content and disease processes and use critical thinking skills to answer exam questions. Do not let that first nursing exam “blow you away” or “throw you for a loop,” as some may say. Be ready for it, and you will do great and pass!

### **STUDY TIP**

#### **Student-to-Student**

It may seem impossible to think about the NCLEX early on while you are in nursing school because of all of your course commitments. But remember that the NCLEX tests you on all the same concepts you are being tested on during your nursing courses. So, think NCLEX!



### **STUDY TIP**

#### **Lifestyle Planning**

When building a plan to address your long-term and short-term goals, remember to allow time for activities that are not related to school, such as exercise, rest, relaxation, and fun. You need to have balance in life in order to be successful in a challenging academic program.

**Beware of  
Nursing Exams!**

### **STUDY TIP**

#### **Student-to-Student**

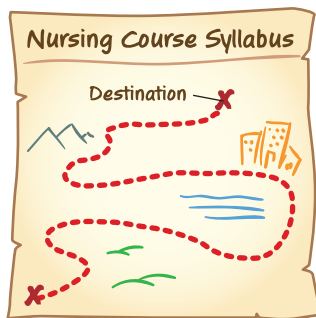
The best way to prepare for a nursing exam is to review the “need to know” content and then practice answering as many questions related to the content as possible. What better way to study for an exam that requires analysis, synthesis, and application than to answer practice questions designed at these higher levels of cognitive ability?

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Prepare for the NCLEX exam by answering as many practice questions in the alternate item format as possible.

**What Types of Questions Can You Expect on Nursing Exams?**

Most questions that you will encounter on nursing exams will be multiple choice, which consists of a question and four possible options. You are probably very familiar with these types of questions from your support courses, but again, what you need to remember is that nursing exam questions will require you to think critically. Other types of questions, known as alternate item formats, may be included on nursing exams because these alternate types of questions are used in the NCLEX exam. They include multiple response, fill-in-the-blank, prioritizing (ordered response), chart/exhibit, graphic item options (images as the options), questions that include a picture or illustration, audio questions, and possible video questions. See Chapter 5 for specific information about alternate item formats. The total number of questions on an exam varies, depending on various factors, such as instructor's preference, the amount of nursing content being tested, and the amount of time for testing. Your nursing instructor determines the number of questions that will be included in an exam.

**Are Test-Taking Strategies Important?**

Test-taking strategies are important skills that will help you determine what the question is asking, how to select the correct answer, or how to narrow your choices when you must make an educated guess at an answer. Use of test-taking strategies is critical when taking a nursing exam because in many of the exam questions, all options may be correct, but depending on the way the question is worded, you may need to prioritize to select the correct answer. In addition, many times you may be able to narrow your choices down to two options and then you may struggle with making a selection. In these situations the use of test-taking strategies is essential. Therefore, it is important to become skillful in the use of test-taking strategies. Chapters 5 through 12 of this book provide specific test-taking strategies for answering nursing exam questions. In addition, a guide to test-taking strategies for answering nursing exam questions can be found on the inside back cover.

**STUDY TIP****Preparing for Clinical**

For most nursing courses, a clinical is an additional requirement. Clinical objectives will need to be achieved in order to pass the course. Be sure to look at your theory and clinical objectives. Seek out learning experiences in clinical that will complement the material you are covering in your theory course. This will assist you in preparing for nursing exams because you will be able to relate to real-life encounters when answering exam questions.

**Your Course Syllabus: Why Is It Important?**

Your course syllabus is your map of the course. It provides your course objectives, course and program policies and procedures, required readings and other activities, class schedule including your exam schedule, and other information related to the course. Your course objectives are the goals that you need to meet in order to pass the course, so be sure to read and understand them. In addition, your exam questions directly reflect your course objectives. Your required reading and other activities and your class and exam schedule are important to note because you need to plan ahead and prepare ahead for these requirements. So be sure that you pay attention to what is stated in your course syllabus.

**How Can You Best Use Your Textbook to Get Ready for a Nursing Exam?****Required Reading**

In a nursing program, you can expect that you will need to do a tremendous amount of reading. Your course syllabus lists the required reading, and it is important to do the reading before the scheduled class. For example, if a class is scheduled and the content listed is "Standard and Other Precautions," you need to read the associated reading assignment before class. Reading the material before class is vital for a number of reasons. First, faculty expect you to read the





material before coming to class so that you are prepared for the lecture. Next, reading before class provides you with the opportunity to identify areas that you do not understand and can ask about during class. So jot down questions that come to your mind as you are reading, and bring this list of questions to class. Finally, many faculty will administer pop quizzes, which are unannounced quizzes administered at the beginning of class that include questions about the material that was to be read. So to be best prepared, read before class!

It is important to keep current with your reading assignments because if you fall behind it will be very difficult to catch up. During a reading session you may find that you are having difficulty focusing and concentrating. In other words, you read a page of a textbook, get to the bottom of the page, and cannot even remember what you read. This happens to everyone because of not focusing. This is the time when you need to stop reading and take on another activity. Get up out of your chair, move around, and take some deep breaths. Taking a walk or some other form of exercise will help clear your mind and get you back on track so that you can focus. You will learn what your individual concentration tolerance is and what activity helps get you back on track; use this as a guide for planning your reading sessions. If you find that after 45 minutes your concentration level diminishes, then plan on breaks and a different activity every 45 minutes.

As you read your chapters, try to identify what you think will be asked on your nursing exam. Note the chapter headings and bolded vocabulary, and read the information in boxes, charts, and graphs located throughout the chapters in your textbook. In addition to highlighting key points, make margin notes for yourself for study.

## Reading the Preface of the Textbook

Many times students skip the preface of the textbook because they are anxious and excited to learn nursing information. It is understandable that you are excited to get going on learning all about nursing, but remember that you have an enormous amount of reading in your textbook and that you need to make the best use of your time to accomplish everything that you need to. The preface of your textbook is going to provide valuable information about how to best use the book. It will also provide information about the special student resources available to you for preparing for exams. You may find that a Web site is available that provides practice exam questions that correlate with each chapter in your textbook. Take advantage of this valuable resource to prepare yourself for your exams. Practice as many study questions as you can in preparation for the exam.

## Practice Exam Questions

The questions on nursing exams are written in very identifiable and structured ways, which are outlined in later chapters of this book. Remember that “practice makes perfect!” So practice as many questions as you can in preparation for your exams. Simply knowing how the questions are structured and becoming familiar and comfortable with what you will encounter will assist you in passing an exam. Get your hands on as many study questions as possible because this will help you be successful not only on nursing examinations but also on the NCLEX exam!

Many nursing textbooks provide practice exam questions at the end of a content chapter and provide a CD or Web site that contains practice exam questions, so be sure to look for these in your textbook and practice answering these questions. Next, be sure to check the preface in your textbook to locate the Web site for access to additional practice questions. Finally, use your NCLEX review book, and review the content and practice questions that correlate with what you will be tested on. An additional key point to keep in mind after you answer practice questions is to be sure to read the accompanying rationale and test-taking strategy for each question to understand the content and the logical path for answering correctly.

**Do not fall behind with your reading assignments!**

### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

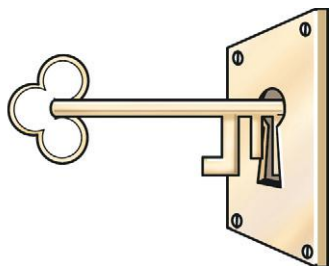
It is important to plan days that are dedicated entirely to personal relaxation and well-being. Plan days in which you are not required to read and study and can only focus on having fun. This will help you achieve your goals on days that you dedicate to focusing on school work.

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

Remember that while you are reading and preparing for nursing exams, you are also preparing to care for a client in the clinical setting. Be aware of the differences in policies and procedures with specific agencies versus national guidelines. Nursing exams and the NCLEX exam are based on national guidelines; therefore, be aware of agency-specific policies and procedures that may not be adopted on a national basis and avoid choosing these options as answers to exam questions.

**Practice makes perfect!**



## Highlighting Key Points in the Chapter

As you read, highlight key points. Key points include any information in the text that has to do with the nurse caring for the client. For example, key points would include signs and symptoms of a disorder and nursing interventions. Highlighting key points is especially helpful when it is time to review before an exam because you can reread only what you have highlighted rather than the entire chapter. Highlighting is also helpful to identify points that may require clarification from your instructor.

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

When preparing for nursing exams, recall that all answers you choose will be *nursing related*. Note that as the nurse, it is beyond the scope of practice to prescribe treatments or medications or to alter current prescriptions. Keeping this in mind while taking nursing exams will assist you in eliminating incorrect options.



## Flash Cards

Once you have highlighted key points, make some flash cards. Flash cards serve as a study guide, are portable and easy to carry in your backpack, and will help you with studying and reviewing for an exam. For example, you can list signs and symptoms of a disorder or various laboratory values on a flash card.

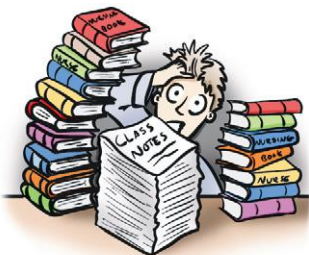
## Classroom Notes: How Can You Best Use Them?

### How to Take Notes in Class

Taking good notes is an important part of preparing for an exam. How you take notes in college may differ greatly from how you took them in high school. For example, you may be accustomed to copying notes from a blackboard because this was the way that notes were taken in high school. This will differ in college, where notes are not written on a blackboard for you to copy. Now you need to take note of the significant points made by your instructor during lectures. Some instructors may provide various types of handouts or other materials to be used as guides during lectures; even so, these do not replace the need for you to take notes during a lecture. However, regardless of whether handout materials are provided, one important point to remember is that you will not be able to write down every word that the instructor says, so work at developing your own personal method of shorthand and abbreviations that you will understand. Reading your textbook assignments before class will be extremely helpful with the note-taking process because you will be familiar with the significant points. During the lecture you can take notes on the significant points made by your instructor, and you will know what these points are if you read the assigned content before going to class.

### Using Nursing Class Notes to Prepare for an Exam

After your lecture, read and organize your class notes. Combine your lecture notes with the reading notes that you made when you read your chapters. You will better understand the information if you merge the key points. You can make flash cards for any content area that seems difficult for you; for example, make a flash card that lists the steps in a procedure or the signs and symptoms of a disease. The worst thing that you can do is to put your class notes aside until it is time for an exam. You need to read your class notes on a daily basis so that you are learning and understanding as the course progresses. Plan a time to have your own mini-study sessions each day to read your notes. One week before the exam, spend more time in your mini-study sessions so that you will be ready. You do not want to cram exam content into your head the night before an exam!



## Study Guides

Two possible types of study guides may be available in nursing courses. The first is an ancillary book that accompanies your textbook. This study guide correlates with the chapters of your textbook and provides all sorts of practice exercises and

questions designed to reinforce content from the textbook. You may be assigned to complete these chapters in the study guide, and it is important that you do even if your course instructor does not monitor completion of them and even if you do not receive any credit for completing them. Remember, completing the study guide will reinforce content from the textbook. In addition, often some questions and information in the study guide will be placed on your exams as test questions. So take the time to complete your study guides.

The second type of study guide that may be available is a study guide provided by your course instructor. This type of study guide is extremely helpful and lists content areas that you need to be sure you understand. In nursing studies, you will receive a vast amount of information from classroom handouts, classroom notes, and the chapter(s) of your textbook. You need to understand all this information. It can be overwhelming to weed through all the information and determine what is important. Therefore, study guides can be most helpful in preparing for an exam because they provide you with a focus or direction of study. So be sure to review the points listed on the study guide. If your instructor listed a certain point in the study guide, then it must be important!

If your course instructor does not provide a study guide, then make your own. As you read the assigned chapters in your textbook, list the important points that you are highlighting. Also, as you review your class notes add the important points to your self-created study guide. These will be the points that your instructor emphasized or may have said in class, “Be sure that you remember this!”

## Study Groups

Study groups are very helpful for some students but not for all students, so you need to think about whether they will be helpful to you. The type of learner that you are will guide you in deciding whether a study group will work for you. You may be the type of learner who requires quiet and alone time to absorb the material, or you may be the type of learner who learns best by reviewing content aloud with others. One strategy that you may want to consider is to do your quiet and alone studying, and once you feel that you have mastered the content, then join a study group to reinforce information. Just be sure that you meet your needs, and do not be persuaded to join a study group if it will not work for you. Whether you study alone or with a group, try to anticipate what the instructor may ask on the exam. Also, it is helpful to create your own exam questions for review.

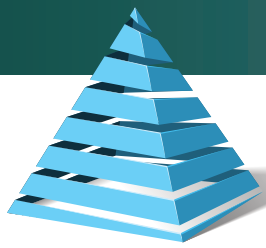
## Standardized Testing: Why Is It So Important?

You may be administered a standardized test at the end of each nursing course. This depends on the preference of your nursing program. These tests are administered primarily to assess your knowledge of the content that you learned in the nursing course. Another valuable purpose of a standardized test is that it provides a detailed report of your strengths and weaknesses and content areas that you need to improve on. These reports will help you plan both short-term and long-term goals and provide you with valuable information for planning for the NCLEX exam. So take these standardized exams seriously and prepare for them, even if they carry no weight with regard to course grading. These are your personalized and individualized study guides for future nursing courses and the NCLEX exam. So get a three-ring binder, label it “My NCLEX Study Guide,” and place all your detailed standardized reports in this binder. When it comes time to focus on future exams, primarily the NCLEX exam, you will have what you need to begin and direct your review and study.

### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

Use the NCLEX Test Plan as a study guide. Highlight the NCLEX test plan content that you have learned and mastered as you proceed through your nursing courses.





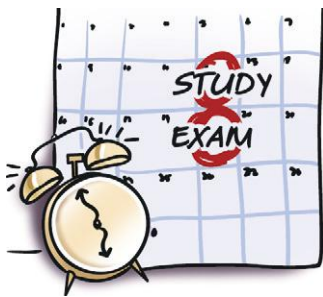
## CHAPTER 2

# Developing Study Skills

### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

Work hard at staying organized. Keep all of your class notes, binders, papers, and flashcards dated and neatly organized. Taking 5 to 10 minutes every other day to make sure this is done can really help your study habits in the long run.



### STUDY TIP

#### Preparing for Clinical

Be sure to account for time you will need to prepare for clinical assignments. Also allow time for travel to and from clinical sites and time to complete clinical assignments such as case studies or care plans. Preparation can be time-consuming and may take away from study time if it is not properly built into your schedule.

### What Are Good Study Skills?

Good study skills mean that you have developed skillful study habits and adhered to a study schedule in which you have incorporated methods for learning and understanding nursing content. Good study habits develop by organizing your time and disciplining yourself to keep to your study schedule. It is important to remember that success comes from working hard, so do not just think about studying; instead, actually incorporate study into your daily school pattern.

Time management is an important factor in developing good study habits and skills. In the nursing program, you will be very busy with classes, laboratory sessions, and clinical experiences. You will need to complete a great deal of reading and assignments and take and pass exams. There are only 24 hours in a day, and you will have a limited number of hours in each day to spend on studying, so you need to use this time as effectively and as efficiently as possible. To help you get started, this chapter discusses some important points for developing these habits and skills. Chapter 1 gives additional study habits and skills as they relate specifically to nursing exams.

### How Do You Identify and Plan Your Study Times?

An important part of identifying time for study is using a calendar. The calendar can come in the form of an electronic calendar or the more traditional paper type of calendar. Whatever you prefer, use what will work for you. Choose the type that best fits your needs, and let it be your academic life-guide.

At the beginning of each semester, enter your class schedule into your calendar. Once you receive your course syllabus for each course, read it carefully and pay close attention to due dates for assignments and exam dates. Enter these dates in the calendar. In addition, enter into your calendar any other important dates, such as extracurricular activities or other personal activities that you have scheduled. Carry your calendar with you when you go to class. The instructor may change an assignment due date or an exam date, so you want to be sure that you can immediately make that change in your calendar. Once all this information has been added to your calendar you can plan your study times.

Your calendar or academic life-guide is critical to your success in effectively managing your time and developing a study plan for the semester. Be sure to look at your calendar every day to plan for the following day. Look ahead to the next week, and note what is scheduled (e.g., an exam) or due to be handed in (e.g., an assignment). If you are diligent about entering your semester schedule and course requirements into your calendar and reviewing your calendar daily, you can easily manage your time in a busy semester.

 **What Study Habits Do You Need to Develop?**

A habit is a pattern of behavior that an individual establishes through repetition of the behavior. Habits can be good or bad, and you need to focus on developing good habits for studying. If you develop good habits and stick to them, you will be successful in the nursing program. There are many study habits that you can develop for yourself, and you may already have some study habits in place that you developed while in high school. If you do and they worked, then integrate these study habits into your college study plan. In addition, use the following top-10 pyramid points and study habits to help plan your study sessions.

 **Top-10 Pyramid Points and Study Habits*****Pyramid Point and Study Habit 1: Plan Daily Specific Times for Studying***

Look at your calendar to identify daily times that are free of any other commitments, such as class or clinical obligations, and make these your study times. Block these times off in your calendar as your study times. If you have breaks between classes, use them for study. For example, if you have a class from 8:00 AM to 10:00 AM and do not have another class until 1:00 PM, block out the time between these classes as study time. Set regular study time sessions for each day because this will help establish a routine that becomes part of your school life, and remember that it is acceptable to revise your study time sessions if necessary. In other words, if you find that a particular study time is not working, then select another time to take its place. During your study time be sure that your time is spent on something related to your nursing course work.

***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 2: Try Not to Do Too Much Studying at One Time***

It is better to plan more than one study time per day rather than to plan a lengthy block of study time. In other words, plan more than one study session daily. If you try to do too much studying at one time, you will easily tire and you will not be able to concentrate and retain the information. Your study time will be more effective if you space it over shorter periods of time. Always maintain a positive attitude that you will be successful; you are studying and adequately preparing.

***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 3: Set Goals for Your Study Time***

Think about what you want to accomplish during each study time. Set your goal in writing. This will help you keep focused and concentrate on your task at hand. Then work at meeting your goal. If for whatever reason you are unable to meet your set study time goal, do not become discouraged. Just look at where you left off, revise your goals for your next study session, and keep moving forward on your plan!

***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 4: Avoid Procrastination***

Stick to your study schedule, and start studying as you planned to do. It is very easy to get off track and procrastinate because “I just do not feel like studying” or “the content or assignment is difficult” or “I would rather be doing something else.” If you procrastinate, you will not meet your goals and will need to rush at a later time to complete your work. This places unnecessary stress on you and then you will end up having to cram, so start studying when you planned to do so. You will feel great after your study session knowing that you accomplished a goal.

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

Developing good habits goes beyond attending class, completing assignments, and studying for exams. You also need to have good lifestyle habits, including getting enough rest, exercising, and having fun. Make sure the fun you have is good, healthy fun and will not cause interruption in your weekly routine.

### ***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 5: Study the Most Difficult Material When You Are Most Alert***

Some students do best with studying in the early-morning hours, some do better during the daytime hours, and some do best during the evening hours. You need to determine which time is best for you and when you are most rested and alert and have the most mental energy. Once you have determined this, use this time to work on your most difficult material. If you have the mental energy and stamina, this difficult task will be easier to grasp.

### ***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 6: Find a Special Study Place That Is Free of External Distractions***

Your special study area should be quiet and comfortable. It can be your dormitory room, a study lounge, the library, a special room at home, or any other quiet area that works for you. Do not plan to study in a crowded or noisy room, such as a student social lounge, cafeteria, or cafe. Find your special area of tranquility, and post a “do not disturb” sign. Be sure that your cell phone is off and that any other phone or the television is off or far enough away from you so that you will not be distracted. Your study area should be adequate and roomy enough to support your necessary books, notes, and other essentials required to make the study session a success. The lighting in your special study area should be soft and provide the right amount of light to allow easy reading. Remember that temperature control is also critical to your comfort. If it is too hot, you may become sleepy. If it is too cold, you may begin to shiver and have difficulty concentrating. So find a room temperature that is comfortable for you. Remember that your special study area should be quiet and comfortable.

### ***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 7: Seek Help When You Do Not Understand the Material***

If you are having difficulty understanding the material, seek help. Remember that in many cases “two heads are better than one.” You can ask another student to help explain a difficult content area that you do not understand, but do not ever hesitate to ask your instructor to explain the information to you. During your study session, if you are “stuck” and are not able to understand the information using the resources that are immediately available to you, move on to the next topic. Do not waste your valuable study time. Make note of the information that you do not understand, and seek clarification later. Start the next topic to make the most of the study time you have planned. Make your own “flash cards” to help you remember that difficult-to-learn information.

### ***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 8: Plan Study Breaks***

Study breaks are important to keep your mind fresh and alert. All people differ in terms of the length of time that they can sit and study and maintain focus to concentrate, so don't compare your study needs to those of other students. How will you know when you need a study break? If you are having difficulty focusing and are moving through content but are not grasping the material, then you need a study break. If you read a page of content but at the end of the page you do not remember what you read, then you need a study break. If you are experiencing “mind chatter” or are thinking about things other than the task you are supposed to be focusing on, then you need a study break. If you are feeling sleepy or hungry, you need a study break.

### ***Pyramid Point and Study Habit 9: Eat a Healthy Diet, and Exercise Regularly***

Eating a healthy diet will build and maintain your energy level and your stamina to meet your set goals. Did you know that eating fatty foods will slow you down?

#### **STUDY TIP**

##### **Student-to-Student**

When studying, if you find something you are having difficulty understanding, highlight it and make a note of it so you can ask your instructor for clarification during the next scheduled class or clinical time. In addition, take advantage of scheduled office hours for meeting with your instructor if you need extra help.

Yes they will; so you need to avoid fatty foods. As you will learn in nursing school, nutrition is important for the functioning of every cell in your body. A nurse is also a teacher, and you will be teaching your clients about the importance of eating healthy. So practice what you will be preaching!

Breakfast is an extremely important meal because it starts your day with the fuel that you need to think and perform all the activities ahead of you; however, be sure to eat a *healthy* breakfast. Stay away from bacon, sausage, and high-sugar syrups. Instead, for example, eat a bagel with some peanut butter, cereal, or fruit, and drink some juice. Eat lighter meals and eat more frequently to keep your body fueled and energized. Include complex carbohydrates and protein in your diet for energy. In addition, carry snacks in your backpack for between meals or for your study breaks, but again, be sure that these snacks are healthy ones. Also, be careful not to include too much caffeine in your daily diet. Caffeine will make you jittery and nervous and cause you to have difficulty focusing and concentrating. Remember that a motor vehicle needs gas or it will not run; so think about your body as the motor vehicle needing healthy food to move along and progress efficiently through the day!

Exercising regularly is another extremely important habit to develop. Exercise will enhance or maintain your *physical fitness* and strength and your overall *health*. Regular physical exercise also boosts the immune system, helps prevent disease, and improves your mental health. So get into the habit of exercising regularly. As with healthy eating, you will be teaching your clients about the importance of regular exercise. Again, practice what you will be preaching! What type of exercise should you do? That depends on what you like to do. It can be anything from walking or running to working out at a gym. Even simply getting into the habit of walking to class rather than driving to class will help. Exercise is also a great outlet when you take a study break; take a walk during your break. This will get your circulation flowing, and you will find that your mind will clear and you are able to focus and concentrate.

### **Pyramid Point and Study Habit 10: Get an Adequate Amount of Sleep Every Night**

Sleep is like food, air, or water. You need it to think and function adequately, and you need it to survive. Lack of an adequate amount of sleep will cause mental, emotional, and physical fatigue and irritability. Think about it—do you want to go into a classroom to take an exam feeling irritable or mentally, emotionally, or physically fatigued? Of course not, because then you are placing yourself at risk for failure. If you develop a schedule for studying and stick to it then you will not have to worry about being up all night preparing for an exam the next day. One of the worst things that you can do is to cram the night before an exam and stay up all night studying. If you do this it will be very difficult to focus and concentrate while taking the exam. If you have developed a structured study plan and stuck to it, the night before the exam will require simply a review of the content. So get into the habit of going to bed at night at a specific time that will provide you with an adequate amount (6 to 8 hours) of quality sleep.

Do you have difficulty falling asleep? If you do, this is probably because you are lying in bed thinking about all sorts of things, such as everything that you need to get done over the next day, the next week, and the remainder of the semester; or you may have other sorts of things on your mind. Whatever it may be that is keeping you awake needs to be eliminated from your mind. How do you do this? This may be a trial and error sort of task that will require implementing various measures or strategies to help you fall asleep until you find the one that will work for you. Remember that a measure that works for someone else may not work for you; however, if you determine what will work for you and get into the habit of implementing this measure repetitively, you will find that you will easily be able to fall asleep at night. Some measures to help you fall asleep are listed in the box below.

#### **STUDY TIP**

##### **Student-to-Student**

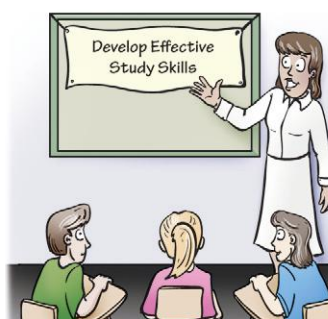
It is sometimes difficult to build exercise into your daily routine when you are a busy nursing student. Find a time during the day that works best for you to build in even 15 to 20 minutes of physical exercise of some form. If you want to exercise on a higher intensity level, plan to do so on fewer days. For example, if you are exercising intensely for longer periods of time, plan this form of exercise on 2 to 3 days out of the week. If you are exercising mildly or moderately, exercise every day but for shorter amounts of time. Adopting one of these habits will ensure that you are able to fit exercise into your busy schedule.

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

When you graduate from nursing school and are preparing to take the NCLEX exam, remember that you have been successful up to this point. Therefore, the study habits and study skills that you used during your nursing education were effective. Use these same study habits and study skills to prepare for the NCLEX exam!

**Measures to Promote Sleep**

Develop a time schedule for when you will go to bed at night.  
 Avoid taking naps during the day.  
 Avoid consuming caffeine-containing drinks and foods.  
 Eat healthy, and exercise regularly (avoid exercise within 3 or 4 hours of bedtime because activity increases metabolism and alertness for a few hours).  
 Avoid eating heavily close to bedtime.  
 Adjust the room temperature to meet your physical needs; a cool environment is best.  
 Keep the lights off in the room at bedtime.  
 Ensure a quiet environment; place a “sleeping” sign on your door, and use comfortable earplugs if necessary.  
 Turn your clock around or place it in a drawer so that you cannot see it.  
 Perform a relaxation technique, such as reading; slow, deep breathing; or meditating.  
 Use a natural sleep remedy, such as drinking a cup of warm caffeine-free tea.

**What Study Skills Are Important?**

Effective study skills develop once you have your study schedule in place and begin to implement your plan of study. Effective study skills also develop from good study habits. You may already have effective study skills in place that you developed when you were in high school; if you do and these worked for you, then continue with these study skills during your nursing education. Remember that everyone is different, and what may work for someone else may not work for you. So it is important to know what works for you! This chapter provides some of the many study skills that you can implement.


**Good Listening Skills**

It is vital to your success that you become a good listener. Listen, and get to know your instructor. Listen carefully for verbal indicators made by your instructor that will alert you to what is important to note. Some verbal indicators are statements that begin with the words: “Never forget ...,” “Please understand ...,” or “This is definitely on the NCLEX exam.” Listen to the inflection of your instructor’s voice, and if he or she suddenly accents some content area, take that note. If your instructor becomes more animated during part of the lecture, pay attention and take note of that content. Finally, whatever the instructor reviews in class is worth highlighting because it will likely be on the next exam as an exam question.

If you are going to succeed as a good listener, you must get your mind prepared before arriving to class. You must leave the daydreaming and “mind chatter” at home and come to class ready to pay close attention to every word the instructor speaks. You may not always find the content being discussed interesting, but keep in mind that you will be tested on the material, and it is your responsibility to listen and learn.

Always pay attention to what your instructor may write on the blackboard or provide in a handout. If the instructor takes the time to write or diagram something on the blackboard or in a handout, you can be fairly certain that this information will turn up on the exam as an exam question.


**Effective Note Taking**

You cannot go to class and take notes without pens, pencils, and a note pad in a binder. It does not matter whether you use pen or pencil; you decide which one works best for you. Make sure that the pen or pencil fits your hand comfortably and has a smooth writing tip. Also, remember that pencils contain lead that can break and pens can run out of ink, so pack more than one of each in your



backpack. Your note pad should have index inserts so that you will be able to label sections as necessary, and the binder needs to be secure enough to hold the note pad and any handout material that the instructor distributes to the class. Also, bring a highlighter and highlight any key points during the lecture. You may be allowed to bring your laptop computer to class for taking notes. If so, be sure that your computer battery is fully charged and you have easy access to an electrical outlet for recharging.

Good note taking is a talent that requires practice and good listening skills. First, remember that you are taking notes, not writing a novel. You cannot write down every word that the instructor says. Develop a personal shorthand that will help you transcribe the important points of your instructor's lecture. For example, the instructor may say, "The signs and symptoms include nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea." Your shorthand note could read, "S&S=N/V/D." With practice you can develop an abbreviated note-taking style that will work successfully for you. Also, most students find that rewriting their notes after class is a good study habit, because it clarifies and reinforces what they have read and learned in class. You may find this strategy valuable to add to your study regimen. Some additional points related to effective note taking are provided in Chapter 1.

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

As a nursing student, you will be documenting in the medical record on your assigned clients. Remember that when documenting in a medical record you can only use acceptable agency abbreviations. Always follow agency guidelines for using abbreviations when documenting.

### Reading Skills

In nursing, reading involves active involvement with your textbook. Plan to do detailed reading in order to extract information accurately. In other words, do not scan or skim the content in the textbook chapter. In addition, always have a medical/nursing dictionary with you when you study; when you come across a word that you never heard of (e.g., edema, which means swelling), look it up and make note of it in your notebook as a new vocabulary word. Chapter 1 provides strategies to implement when you are reading your textbook. Some additional strategies include the following:

1. Read one section at a time under each major heading. Highlight the key points. Develop some questions that come to mind, and write these questions in your notebook. Find the answers to the questions, and if necessary plan to bring the question to class for further clarification.
2. After you finish reading some of the sections under major headings, look again at the questions that you developed and think about the answers. If you were not able to recall the answers, review these sections in the text again. Then continue reading the chapter.
3. After you have read the entire chapter, review all the highlighted key points and any notes that you made, and review the questions that you have developed to see if you can answer them. If not, then review these areas in the chapter again. It may also be helpful to make a flash card for any information that is difficult.

### Remembering Content

Remembering what you have listened to in class and remembering what you read are essential for your success in passing exams, success in future nursing courses, and success on the NCLEX exam. If you are unable to remember what you learned, then you will be unable to apply the information in future nursing courses, in the clinical setting, or on the NCLEX exam. Some strategies for remembering content include rewriting class notes, reading your class notes every day, doing the required reading before coming to class, highlighting key points in your textbook as you read, completing study guides provided for you, and creating flash cards for the material that is difficult for you. Chapter 1 provides points related to these strategies.

An additional strategy that you can use to remember content is to develop an acronym; a mnemonic device; or easily remembered letters, words, or phrases for

difficult information. Many times your instructor will identify ways to remember difficult information, but you can develop these on your own or with your classmates. Three examples of these are regular and NPH insulin, decorticate versus decerebrate posturing, and MAOIs.

### Regular Insulin and NPH Insulin—RN

**RN**—When mixing regular and NPH insulin in the same syringe, draw up the **Regular** insulin first, followed by the **NPH** insulin. Remember the acronym **RN** when mixing both these types of insulin in the same syringe.

*Tip for the beginning nursing student:* Insulin is a medication that is prescribed for some clients with diabetes mellitus. Many times it is necessary to administer both regular and NPH insulin, and these insulins may need to be mixed in the same syringe. There is a procedure for mixing these insulins, and it is important to draw the regular insulin into the syringe first. You will learn about this procedure when you study medication administration. You will also learn about this procedure in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study endocrine disorders.

### Decorticate Posturing versus Decerebrate Posturing

In **decorticate** (flexor) posturing the upper extremities (arms, wrists, fingers) are flexed on the chest. In other words, the upper extremities are brought to the **core** of the body; whereas in **decerebrate** (extensor) posturing, the upper extremities are stiffly extended with internal rotation and pronation of the palms. Therefore, when trying to distinguish the characteristics of each type of posturing, remember that in **decorticate**, the upper extremities are brought to the **core** of the body.

*Tip for the beginning nursing student:* Posturing is an abnormal position assumed by a client with a neurological disorder and indicates deterioration in the client's condition. You will learn about posturing in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

As a student in the clinical environment, you will create your own acronyms to use in certain situations, such as an acronym for an electrocardiogram (ECG) pattern and its interpretation. These acronyms will assist you in nursing practice, but remember that these cannot be used for documentation unless they are acceptable for use by the clinical agency.

### Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors (MAOIs)

MAOIs are antidepressants and include the following medications:

Phenelzine sulfate (**Nardil**)

Tranylcypromine sulfate (**Parnate**)

Isocarboxazid (**Marplan**)

Selegiline (**Emsam**)

Remembering the acronym **NPME** as meaning **Not Pleasant Medications Ever** will assist in remembering the medications that belong in the MAOI classification.

*Tip for the beginning nursing student:* MAOIs are antidepressants that are used to treat depression. Adverse effects are associated with this classification of medications, and clients must follow specific dietary measures when taking these medications. Therefore, it is important to know which medications are in the classification of MAOIs. You will learn about MAOIs in your pharmacology and your psychiatric/mental health–nursing courses.

### Critical Thinking Skills

Critical thinking skills involve an intellectual process of actively analyzing information. It is essential that you develop good critical thinking skills because you will be making very important decisions in the clinical setting when you care for clients. In the clinical setting, you will gather information and then will need to analyze, synthesize, and apply this information; make decisions; and evaluate the outcome.

Critical thinking skills take time to develop, but if you are mindful of the fact that you need to develop these skills, then you can set some goals for yourself

regarding becoming a critical thinker. So what can you do to develop critical thinking skills? One strategy that you can begin with is to consistently ask yourself questions as you read nursing content. Write these questions in your notebook, and then present them in class for discussion. This discussion will generate critical thinking among your classmates. Another strategy to develop critical thinking skills is to learn content from an analytical perspective. In other words, be creative. Look at a collection of information that you are learning, and instead of simply learning the facts, think about the information in an investigative manner. For example, if you are learning about standard precautions (a basic level of infection control that should be used in the care of all clients all of the time to reduce the risk of transmission of microorganisms), do not simply remember that handwashing must be done before and after contact with a client or that gloves are worn when coming in contact with blood or body fluid excretions and secretions. Think about this content critically, and question *why* these procedures need to be followed. Critical thinking takes more time and energy than simply learning facts and content, but it is an essential part of the learning process in nursing. So work at it, and make it a habit to think about things critically.



### When Should You Start to Study for an Exam?

Studying for an exam begins the moment your course begins and you start reading your textbooks, attending class, and taking notes. Always pay close attention to the syllabus for upcoming test dates and use the syllabus as a planning guide. Plan and schedule daily study sessions for yourself, and read your class notes taken up to that point, with a particular focus on your new notes, the notes taken that day. This is an important part of preparing for an exam so that you will not be faced with cramming the night before. Procrastinating and waiting until the last minute to prepare for an exam are two of the worst things that you can do, because these place unnecessary pressure on you and set the stage for developing test anxiety. So start preparing right away. One week before a scheduled exam, increase the time that you spend in your study session. The amount of time that you need to plan for your study sessions depends on the type of learner that you are and how quickly you are able to grasp the new content and material. A guideline that you may want to use to begin scheduling your study sessions is to plan 1 hour of study for every 3 hours of class time. So, for example, if your nursing class is scheduled for 3 hours then plan for a 1-hour review of your notes after the class. Then 1 week before the exam, increase the time that you spend in each study session to 2 hours of study for every 3 hours of class time. This is only a guideline to help you think about planning and is not a rigid rule that needs to be strictly followed. Remember that everyone is different when it comes to learning needs, so think about what works best for you and plan accordingly. Chapter 1 provides additional information regarding using your class notes to prepare for an exam.

### Will a Study Group Work for You?

This question is one that only you can answer. If the idea of studying in a group environment has worked for you in the past and you feel comfortable with this type of study arena, by all means continue this way of studying. If you are the type of learner who needs to be alone to study in order to master the content, then a study group will not work. Some combination of alone study time and group study time may also be an option for you. In other words, you can plan to study on your own and once you are comfortable with the content and think that you have mastered it, then join a study group to help reinforce content.

Study groups can be very helpful when preparing for an exam, but the study team needs to be motivated and stay on track with regard to the goal of the group. A study group can easily get off track and waste time discussing “outside of study” issues. If this happens, then the goals of the group may not be met. Be sure to join

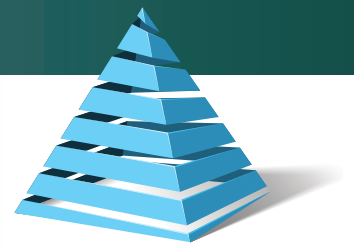
### STUDY TIP

#### Preparing for Clinical

An integral part of your success as a student in clinical is your ability to think critically. You will be assigned to care for a client (or clients) and will be required to interpret pertinent information regarding the client's status and determine the important nursing considerations with regard to client care. Gather all of your client's information before the clinical session and think critically by determining why certain medications and treatments are prescribed for the client and why the client may have a certain laboratory result or diagnostic finding.

a study group that has the same goals that you have, and be sure that your study partners have personalities that are compatible with yours so that you can easily work together. This will help with motivating and driving each other to meet group goals.

The size of the study group should be between three and five, and every group member needs to come to the study time prepared to participate. When the study group is initially created, group goals and expectations should be developed. Each study session should have established goals and work to achieve the study goals within the study time. Each group member should accept a task with regard to the contribution or role he or she will take as a member of the group. For example, if the content for a scheduled exam includes the medical-surgical areas of angina, myocardial infarction, and heart failure, then each group member should accept a topic area or a part of it for presentation at the study group session. At the end of each study session, the group members should decide when the next study group session will be, what the goals for the session will be, and each member's assignment. Remember that study groups are made of individuals and each individual is a part of the team. If each team member contributes to the study session as planned, then the team will succeed. Chapter 1 provides additional information about study groups.



# Reducing Test Anxiety

## What Is Test Anxiety?

Test anxiety is a psychological condition that can cause a significant amount of stress related to preparing for and taking an examination. Test anxiety is a type of performance anxiety because the individual is under pressure to do well in order to pass. A person with test anxiety experiences tension and stress before, during, and possibly after finishing an exam. Test anxiety can block the thinking processes and cause poor performance with testing, regardless of the amount of preparation for the exam. This chapter provides some tips and strategies to help you prevent test anxiety and to reduce the anxiety if it occurs. However, if you feel that your test anxiety is so overwhelming that you are unable to focus or concentrate, seek assistance. As a starting point, you may want to contact your advisor to discuss your test anxiety experiences.

## How Can You Know If You Have Test Anxiety?

You have attended all your classes, you have done all your reading assignments, you have participated in class discussions, and you followed your study plan. Then the day of the test arrives, and you feel so nervous that you freeze up and are unable to focus, think, or concentrate. It is normal to feel a little nervous and stressed before a test, and actually a little anxiety can keep you sharp and alert during testing. But if the anxiety is overwhelming and you cannot control it, your thinking processes will be blocked, you will have difficulty focusing and concentrating, and you will forget the material that you learned.

Anxiety related to taking an examination can cause various symptoms. Test anxiety can bring on a feeling of “butterflies in the stomach,” a stomachache, nausea, vomiting, or diarrhea. Test anxiety also can cause headaches, excessive sweating, a rapid heart rate (feeling like the heart is pounding), and rapid breathing. Some students may describe their physical feelings related to test anxiety as “I feel like throwing up” or “I feel like I might pass out.” Test anxiety can also cause overwhelming feelings of helplessness and a sense of feeling out of control of the situation.

## What Causes Test Anxiety?

Taking a test can be stressful because you know that you need to perform well to pass the exam. Physiologically, when you feel stressed your body releases a hormone called *adrenaline*, which prepares you for the stressful situation. This is called the *fight or flight response* and is the same physiological response that occurs when someone encounters a dangerous situation. When the adrenaline is released, the physical symptoms of sweating, the heart pounding, and rapid breathing occur.

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

When you arrive at the place where you will be taking a test, do not discuss your methods of preparation, what you studied, or the content that you think may be on the test with other students. Other students may bring up content that you feel as though you didn't prepare enough for, causing your anxiety to increase.

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

Planning your time and ensuring there is enough uninterrupted time allotted to preparing for exams will help avoid the experience of test anxiety. Look as far ahead as possible in the semester in planning life commitments and obligations and ensure that you plan accordingly around exam dates.

Someone who worries about everything or who thinks that he or she needs to achieve a perfect test score is likely to experience test anxiety. This person, who may be termed a *perfectionist*, may find it difficult to obtain anything less than a perfect score and may experience test anxiety because of the great pressure and stress being placed on oneself.

A person with negative thoughts about how he or she will perform promotes test anxiety. Previous experiences, such as poor performance on a previous test, can affect how one might feel about testing. Negative experiences can affect self-confidence and the belief that one can be successful. Focusing on the negative takes a lot of energy and drains the individual of energy needed to perform because it causes fatigue and makes the individual feel worse. This pessimistic view of how one might perform creates more intense feelings of anxiety and distracting thoughts, setting the stage for failure on the exam.

Another cause of test anxiety is a lack of preparation for the exam. If you are not prepared for an exam, then you will be worried about passing and this will produce anxiety. Anxiety from lack of preparation occurs as a result of failing to organize and manage your time, poor study habits, not studying enough, or feeling tired because of being up all night and cramming for the test.

**What Will Help Prevent Test Anxiety?**

One important way to prevent test anxiety is to be as prepared as possible for the exam. Time management and a structured study plan also prevent test anxiety because you are planning ahead and working on preparing for a test and other assignments well in advance of the scheduled date. You cannot procrastinate. Procrastinating places unnecessary pressure on you, creating test anxiety or making test anxiety worse. If you study daily rather than cramming at the last minute, you will know the content well enough so that you can recall it even if you are stressed. Preparation also builds your confidence because you will feel more comfortable about knowing the material. Refer to Chapters 1 and 2, which provide specific tips and strategies on study habits, study skills, and time management that will help you prepare for an exam. Incorporating these tips and strategies on test preparation into your academic life will help prevent test anxiety.

**What Can You Do When You Are Experiencing Test Anxiety?**

Relaxation techniques can help when you experience test anxiety because they relax you and help you gain control. Several types of relaxation techniques that you can use include resting your eyes, muscle relaxation/tightening exercises, meditation, or breathing exercises. Use whatever technique works for you. Breathing exercises are a commonly used technique that can be done at any time, including during your testing. These exercises will not only help relax you but also oxygenate your body. Think about it: you would ask a postoperative client whose pulse oximetry reading is low to take slow, deep breaths. When the client takes the breaths what happens? The pulse oximetry reading rises. This same effect will occur for you if you take slow, deep breaths, which will increase oxygenation throughout your body and tissues and help you relax and control your anxiety. In addition, the slow, deep breaths will give your body and brain an oxygen boost. And wouldn't you want your brain to be as oxygenated as possible when taking the exam?



Now how do you effectively take slow, deep breaths? If you become anxious before or during the exam or if you have difficulty sleeping the night before the exam, sit or lie in a comfortable position, close your eyes, relax, inhale deeply through your nose, hold your breath to a count of 4, exhale slowly through your mouth, and, again, relax. Repeat this breathing exercise

several times until you begin to feel relaxed and free from anxiety. During the exam, if you find that you are becoming anxious and distracted and are having difficulty focusing, sit back, close your eyes, and perform your breathing exercises to help relax and get oxygen moving through your body. Remember that the slow, deep-breathing exercises will help you relax and gain control of the moment.

### Breathing Exercises

Sit or lie in a comfortable position.  
Close your eyes.  
Relax.  
Inhale deeply through your nose.  
Hold your breath to a count of 4.  
Exhale slowly through your mouth and relax.  
Repeat until you begin to feel relaxed and free from anxiety.

## What Is Positive Pampering, and Why Is It Important?

Positive pampering means that you take care of yourself from a holistic perspective. It helps to maintain an academic and nonacademic balance as you prepare for any examination, which in turn will help alleviate some anxiety. You need to care for yourself by including physical activity, fun and relaxation, and a balanced and healthy diet in your preparation plan. You can implement several measures, identified below, to be sure that you are caring for you. Specific interventions for these measures are described in Chapter 2 under the heading “Top-10 Pyramid Points and Study Habits.” Be sure to read this section to help you incorporate positive pampering strategies into your daily academic life.

Just as you have developed a schedule for studying, you need a schedule that includes some fun and some form of physical activity. It is your choice—aerobics, running, weight lifting, bowling, a movie, a massage, going to the beach, or whatever makes you feel good about yourself. Time spent away from a hard study schedule and devoted to some form of fun and physical exercise pays its rewards 100-fold. You will feel more energetic and less anxious about your upcoming exam with a schedule that includes these activities.

Establish a balanced diet and healthy eating habits if you have not already done so. Eat lighter and well-balanced meals, and eat more frequently. Include complex carbohydrates and protein in your diet for energy. Avoid caffeine because it will make you jittery and anxious, and avoid eating fatty foods because they will slow you down and make you feel sleepy. If you are having difficulty planning a balanced and healthy diet, another resource is the MyPlate Food Guide, located at <http://www.choosemyplate.gov>.



## What Should You Do the Night Before the Exam?

Remember to avoid cramming the night before the exam because this will increase your test anxiety. Prepare ahead, and rest your body and your mind. Remember that the mind is like a muscle, and if it is overworked, it has no strength or stamina. Therefore, on the night before the exam, as long as you have prepared well and followed your study plan all along, put your textbook and notes away and get to bed early. At bedtime perform deep-breathing exercises and listen to soothing music to help you relax and fall asleep. Set your alarm clock, and plan to get up 15 to 30 minutes earlier than usual to have some time to wake up and eat a healthy breakfast. Walk to class on the day of the exam to get the circulation and oxygen moving throughout your body. Remember that you have prepared yourself well for the challenge of the day.

### STUDY TIP

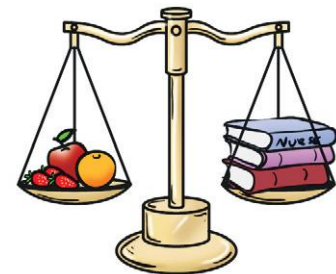
#### Scope of Practice

Whenever a client experiences anxiety related to his or her condition, an upcoming procedure, or other event, the nurse is the person who is there to help the client work through the anxiety. Think about what you tell your clients to make them feel more at ease and implement the same strategies on exam day. To relieve your own anxiety, use trial and error techniques to find what works best for you.



### Positive Pampering

Fun  
Relaxation  
Physical activity  
Balanced and healthy diet



*Remember, pamper yourself to maintain balance!*

### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

Finding someone with whom you can exercise on a regular basis will help ensure that you incorporate this important aspect into your daily schedule. You will find that exercise will help you better focus when you study and ultimately will contribute to your success as a nursing student.



## How Can You Control Your Test Anxiety Before the Exam?

Before the examination you may become anxious and think, “I am not ready!” As a nursing student, it is important to remember that it is very difficult to feel 100% prepared for an exam. This feeling is not necessarily caused by inadequate preparation and is usually caused by test anxiety. First, stay away from peers who are experiencing anxiety before the exam. These peers may be discussing content and what might be asked on the test, and this is going to cause confusion and fear about preparing well enough, contributing to anxiety. Next, stop whatever you are doing and reflect on all that you have accomplished in your preparation plan. Sit quietly somewhere where you can concentrate on relaxing and tell yourself that you indeed prepared adequately for the test and are ready. Smile, brush those negative feelings away, do your breathing exercises, and keep repeating to yourself, “I am going to do well. I am prepared.” Repeating this statement will build the extra confidence that you need by helping you maintain a positive attitude, relax, and focus before the exam.

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

When looking at an exam question, always remember that the correct answer or answers are there in front of you. Using the process of elimination and narrowing down your options using nursing knowledge and test-taking strategies will help you select the correct answer(s).



## How Can You Control Your Test Anxiety During the Exam?

During the exam if you begin to experience any anxious feelings, sit back in your chair, close your eyes, and perform a relaxation technique, such as breathing exercises. These will help relax you. The breathing exercises are also helpful if you begin to feel your mind wandering, if you feel distracted, or if you are unable to concentrate on the test question. Oxygenating your body will help you focus and concentrate on the exam question.

Develop a structured sequence for approaching and taking the exam to help control anxiety, and use this pattern with each exam that you take. What happens if you are presented with a difficult question and have no idea what the answer should be? You become anxious, you feel as if you did not prepare well enough, and your self-confidence diminishes. To avoid this, follow the structured sequence outlined next.

### Structured Sequence for Taking an Exam

- Place your name on the test and on any other required testing documents.\*
- Read the directions.
- Skim through the pages in the test so that you have an idea of how to pace yourself.\*
- If you are allowed to write on the test, jot down data that you needed to memorize and may need as a reference, such as a laboratory value.\*
- Read each question and all options slowly and carefully.
- Take your time when answering a question.
- Use nursing knowledge and test-taking strategies to help you answer the question.
- Skip any questions that are difficult.\*
- Answer all the questions that you know and that are easy for you to answer.\*
- Once you have answered all the easy questions, go back to the questions that were difficult.\*

\*Note: These tips relate specifically to pencil-and-paper tests.

### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

On a pencil-and-paper nursing exam taken in nursing school, one strategy is to skip questions that are difficult and to go back to them once you have answered as many as you can. On the NCLEX exam, you need to remember that you will not be able to skip a question and then go back to it. On the NCLEX exam, you must answer the question on the computer screen in front of you or the test will not advance. So be prepared for this type of testing when you take the NCLEX exam.



## That Positive Attitude: How Can You Maintain It?

Maintaining a positive attitude will lead to success. It is natural to be a bit apprehensive about the path before you, especially if you are a beginning nursing student; but it is critical to your continued success that you believe in yourself and your ability to confidently conquer the challenges in your nursing program. Surround yourself with positive thoughts and positive people, and remember that your self-confidence in your ability to succeed is critical to your continued success.

### STUDY TIP

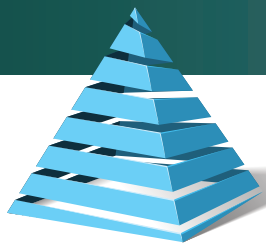
#### Preparing for Clinical

It is normal to become anxious before going to clinical. Actions you can take to decrease this anxiety include researching your client's condition, any related diagnostic tests, laboratory results, and prescribed medications and treatments. Preparation will best prepare you, thus making the experience less anxiety-producing. If you are not anxious or nervous, you will be able to perform at your best, so use these tips to reduce your anxiety when preparing to care for clients.

When you start to fall into the trap of negative thought, stop! Control the moment, and believe in who you are! Step out of the negative and into the positive, and do not allow anything to stand in your path to success. The one phrase that should become your mantra is "Yes, I can do this." When you open your eyes in the morning and need to face a difficult day, your first thought should be "Yes, I can do this." Use visual reinforcement to help maintain your positive attitude. On a piece of paper write the words "Yes, I can do this," and keep this with you always. When you face a difficult challenge or need to take an exam and have test anxiety, place these written words in front of you so that you can see them. You will constantly be reminded of your self-confidence and ability to be successful.



"Yes, I can do this."



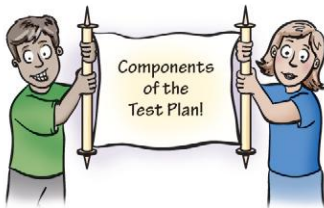
## CHAPTER 4

# NCLEX® Preparation

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

When preparing for the NCLEX exam, as you begin to practice questions, always remember that the answer will most likely be something nursing-related and within the scope of nursing practice. However, it is important to be familiar with the scopes of practice of other members of the health care team so that appropriate consultations can be made; you may encounter questions on the NCLEX regarding consulting and making referrals.



### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

When you download the NCLEX test plan, keep in mind that it is very lengthy. Download this test plan early so you can plan your time around addressing all of the topics identified in the plan. You can make out a study calendar that will work for you to be sure that you address all areas.



### Where Does Preparation Begin?

NCLEX preparation began the moment you entered your nursing program. Your nursing courses, clinical experiences, reading and other assignments and activities, and any standardized examinations that may have been required to be taken prepared you for the NCLEX exam. In addition, all the practice questions that you reviewed from your course textbooks and NCLEX review book have reinforced content, refined your knowledge base and critical thinking skills, and provided practice with test-taking strategies and how to answer a test question correctly. Now you are an experienced student nurse and are most likely in your final year of nursing school; therefore, NCLEX preparation has become your priority focus. Now you need to fine-tune your nursing knowledge base, critical thinking skills, and test-taking skills. You may feel overwhelmed and just not sure where to begin preparing for the NCLEX exam. You may even become more overwhelmed when you look at all the boxes of class notes that you have accumulated and all the textbooks that you have read during nursing school. Now you are saying to yourself, “Where do I start?” Let us look at some points about the NCLEX exam and your plan for preparation!

### The NCLEX Test Plan: Why Is It So Important?

An important strategy for success is to become as familiar as possible with the NCLEX test plan. You can experience a significant amount of anxiety as you face the challenge of this examination. Knowing what the examination is all about will assist in alleviating your fear and anxiety.

The test plan for the NCLEX exam is developed by the National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN). This test plan is developed based on state laws and regulations, including nursing practice acts, and research studies done with newly licensed nurses to determine the nursing activities that they perform as new nurses. Once this information is identified, the NCSBN formulates the test plan, and the test questions for the NCLEX exam are written. All the information that you will need about the test plan can be located at the NCSBN Web site at [www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org). In fact, when you access this Web site you are able to download a copy of the current test plan for your use. The test plan identifies the framework of the NCLEX exam and lists content areas and nursing activities that you will be tested on. This is an extremely valuable resource and can be used as one of your study guides for preparing for the NCLEX exam. Pearson Vue is the agency that delivers the examination provided by the NCSBN. Through this agency, you will schedule your test date and testing center. An additional fee must be paid to Pearson Vue before testing can occur. See the boxes below for the NCSBN contact information and Pearson Vue contact information.

### NCSBN Contact Information

National Council of State Boards of Nursing  
111 E. Wacker Drive, Suite 2900  
Chicago, IL 60601  
Web site: <http://www.ncsbn.org>

### Pearson Vue Contact Information

Pearson Vue  
Web site: <http://www.pearsonvue.com/nclex/>  
For address locations: <http://www.pearsonvue.com/contact/americas/>

In addition to the test plan, the NCSBN Web site provides information about the examination process, registering for the NCLEX exam, scheduling a test date, the testing center, and processing results. A tutorial is available to provide you with the experience of answering questions on the NCLEX exam. Multiple-choice questions and alternate item format questions are also available for practice. So take the time to visit the NCSBN Web site and find out everything you need to know about the test plan and the testing experience. Remember that you want to face this challenge with as much information as possible, and awareness of what the test is all about will help alleviate your anxiety!



## What Are the Steps for Preparing?

### Steps for Preparing for the NCLEX Exam

- Step 1: Your Self-Assessment
- Step 2: Your Preparation Plan and Goals
- Step 3: Scheduling a Testing Date
- Step 4: Implementing Your Preparation Plan
- Step 5: Determining Your Readiness for the NCLEX Exam

### Step 1: Your Self-Assessment

The first step in preparing for the NCLEX exam is a self-assessment. Your self-assessment is important because it will guide your development of a structured and individualized preparation plan. Open your “My NCLEX Study Guide” binder, and review any notes that you have taken about your strengths or weaknesses. Also review any detailed reports from standardized tests that you have taken because these reports provide extremely valuable information about your areas of strength and the areas that you need to particularly focus on. If you have not yet set up your binder labeled “My NCLEX Study Guide,” you want to do so to begin your preparation for the NCLEX exam. If you do not have copies of standardized test results or did not take standardized tests in your nursing program, then use your NCLEX review book to perform a self-assessment. Access the accompanying Web site in your NCLEX review book to take a pretest assessment exam or a 100-question comprehensive exam. Print out the results, place the printout in your “My NCLEX Study Guide” notebook, and identify your areas of strength and weakness to assist you in determining your preparation plan and goals.

### STUDY TIP

#### Preparing for Clinical

Accessing the NCSBN Web site and reading the NCLEX test plan as early as possible can be of great benefit to you. Look at the learning activities listed in the test plan, and prepare to seek out these activities during your clinical experiences. This will also help prepare you for the NCLEX exam.



### STUDY TIP

#### Preparing for Clinical

Maintaining client confidentiality, build a portfolio of the clients for whom you cared and their diagnoses, noting the important aspects of nursing care you provided. You can then use this as a resource when preparing for your exams and for the NCLEX.

## Step 2: Your Preparation Plan and Goals

Your self-assessment is an ongoing process. Your next step in your preparation plan and goals is to answer some specific self-assessment questions. The Top-10 Self-Assessment Questions are listed below with some pyramid points to consider as you develop a plan of preparation and goals.

### *The Top-10 Self-Assessment Questions and Pyramid Points*

**Question 1:** What do I feel are my strong and weak areas in nursing content, and what strong and weak areas were identified in standardized testing or other assessment tests that I took?

Prioritize your plan of study, listing your weakest to your strongest area(s). You want to plan to begin your NCLEX preparation by reviewing your weakest content areas first; once you have demonstrated improvement in your weak area(s), proceed to review your stronger area(s).

**Question 2:** How do I normally study for exams, alone or in groups?

Study groups are very helpful for some students but not for all students. So you need to think about whether they will help you. You may be the type of learner who requires quiet and alone time to absorb the material, or you may be the type of learner who learns best by reviewing content aloud with others. Continue to do what you have done during your nursing program. If you studied alone, then this is what you should do to prepare for the NCLEX exam. You need to meet your needs, so do not be persuaded to join a study group if it will not work for you. You have been successful thus far, so keep doing what you were doing!

**Question 3:** Where is my special study place?

Think about how you have normally studied for your nursing exams and where you have studied. If you normally study alone in the early morning, then plan to study at this time. If you have a special study place, then continue to use it. Do not change these study habits because they have worked for you in the past; otherwise, you would not be at the point that you are, preparing for the NCLEX exam. Do what you normally do, and stick to that special study place that you have been using throughout nursing school!

**Question 4:** Am I comfortable with using a computer?

If you have been using a computer while in nursing school, then you probably are quite comfortable with it. If this is not the case, then you need to use a computer so that when you take the NCLEX exam, any anxiety related to testing on a computer is eased. If you do not have a computer, then locate one that you can use such as at your nursing school, school library, or a public library. Use the Web site that accompanies your NCLEX review book to begin studying by practicing test questions. In addition, while using the computer, access the NCSBN Web site and do the tutorial and any other NCLEX-related practice sessions provided. This will get you used to testing on a computer.

**Question 5:** Do I complete exams within the allotted time?

You will have 6 hours to complete the NCLEX-RN exam, and 5 hours for the NCLEX-PN exam. The maximum number of questions that need to be answered on the NCLEX-RN is 265, and the maximum number on the NCLEX-PN exam is 205. Therefore, if each question on the NCLEX exam was individually timed, you would have approximately 1.35 minutes for each question on the NCLEX-RN exam and approximately 1.46 minutes for each question on the NCLEX-PN exam. If you did not have a problem completing exams within the allotted time in nursing school, then you will probably not have a problem completing the NCLEX exam within the allotted time. If you had a problem completing exams on time in nursing school, then you need to work on picking up your speed with

answering questions without jeopardizing the quality of how you are thinking through the question and answering it. You may ask, “How do I do this?” Practicing is the answer! Use an alarm clock, or set an alarm on your cell phone. Access the Web site that accompanies your NCLEX review book, and select a 100-question exam. Allow approximately 1.35 minutes or 1.46 minutes for each question, depending on which NCLEX exam you are preparing to take. For example, if you are preparing for the NCLEX-RN exam set the alarm to ring in 135 minutes (or 2.25 hours). When the alarm rings, note how many questions you have completed. If you did not complete the 100 questions in the allotted time, note how many were unanswered. Then you need to work on picking up speed. Keep practicing until you are able to complete a 100-question test in the allotted time without jeopardizing the quality of how you are answering the questions.

**Question 6: Do I have balance in life; do I exercise, have fun, relax, and eat a balanced and healthy diet?**

Balance in life is extremely important if you want to be successful. Remember that all work and no play is not healthy. You cannot spend every hour of every day preparing for the NCLEX exam. You need to develop a study plan and stick to it, but you also need time to relax, have some fun, and eat healthy, because a healthy diet will build and maintain your energy level and your stamina to meet your set goals. Chapter 2 provides specific strategies related to exercise and eating healthy.

**Question 7: Do I have test anxiety, and how do I control it?**

Controlling your test anxiety is a must. Some anxiety is useful because it keeps your senses sharp and alert and you definitely want to feel sharp and alert on the day of the NCLEX exam. However, overwhelming anxiety can block your thinking and become an obstacle. So think about what you did when you had to take exams during nursing school, and use these same strategies. Also, be sure to read Chapter 3 for strategies to reduce your test anxiety.

**Question 8: Am I able to focus and concentrate during an exam?**

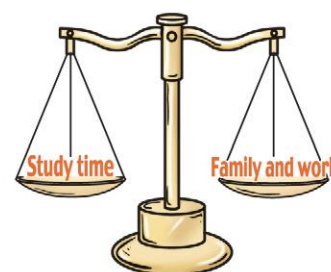
If it is difficult to focus and concentrate during an exam, sit back in your chair; close your eyes; and take some slow, deep breaths. Breathe in through your nose slowly, hold your breath to a count of 4, and then breathe out through your mouth. Repeat this breathing exercise 4 or 5 times, and then go back to the questions on the exam. These breathing exercises will fill your body and cells, including your brain cells, with oxygen. This will help you regain control, and you will be better equipped to focus and concentrate.

**Question 9: Am I able to practice self-discipline and stick to a study plan?**

Self-discipline is the ability to get yourself to do what you planned, such as adhering to a study plan, regardless of how you feel. It is very easy to get off track with your study plan because “I just do not feel like studying,” or because “I would rather be doing something else.” If you do not practice self-discipline, you will not meet your goals. Remember that every successful person works hard and has a great deal of self-discipline. If you want to be successful, practice self-discipline and stick to your study plan. You will feel great after your study session knowing that you accomplished your goal.

**Question 10: Do I have a positive attitude?**

A positive attitude will lead to success. You must stay positive about your ability to pass the NCLEX exam. Do not for one moment ever think that you will fail—no negative thoughts! On a large piece of paper write your name in large letters across the top. Now underneath your name, in large letters, write the letters RN or LPN, depending on what your credentials will be when you become licensed.



**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

When scheduling your study time, involve your family and friends in this planning. Make them aware of the fact that at this time, you need their support in preparing for your exam. If they are involved in planning your study schedule, they will be supportive, and you will likely be better able to meet your goals successfully.

**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

If you schedule an NCLEX test date and something arises that prevents you from testing on that day, you can reschedule the date as long as you notify the appropriate NCSBN contact at least 24 hours before your originally scheduled date.

**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

Getting an NCLEX review book early on in your nursing program is important. You can review your course textbook and class notes to prepare for nursing exams, and then polish up your test preparation by using your NCLEX review book to answer as many practice questions as you can related to the content area that you will be tested on. This practice will ultimately help you in preparing for NCLEX as well!

**Practicing answering test questions is a must!**

Now doesn't that piece of paper with your name and credentials on it look great? Keep this with you always, especially during your study sessions. This visual will change any negative thoughts that you may have into positive ones!

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

After you graduate from your nursing program, plan to spend at least 2 hours daily preparing for the NCLEX exam. Open your calendar, and mark off days that you have obligations or commitments and will not be able to spend any time on NCLEX preparation. For the remaining days, set a 2-hour time schedule for NCLEX preparation time that will work for you considering your family and personal responsibilities. This is your time and needs to be uninterrupted, so shut off your cell phone and close off the world. This will help you to concentrate and make the most of your preparation time. Remember, though, that you need to maintain balance in your life, so during your off-study hours, exercise, relax, and have fun.

**Your Preparation Plan**

- Do not change your study habits.
- Review your weakest areas first.
- Plan a 2-hour daily study session.
- Practice a *minimum* of 3500 questions before taking NCLEX.
- Review all rationales and test-taking strategies accompanying your practice questions.
- Learn ways to control your test anxiety.
- Eat healthy and make time to relax, exercise, and have fun.

**Step 3: Scheduling a Testing Date**

Many nursing graduates ask the question, “How long should I wait to schedule an exam date for the NCLEX exam?” There is no easy or cut-and-dried answer to this question. This is a very individualized decision based on how much preparation you need to do, your goals, your preparation plan, and your time frame for implementation of your plan. You definitely need to prepare for this exam—this is critical. However, it is also extremely important that you do not wait too long. So, depending on your individual preparation needs, how much preparing you need to do, and how much time you have to prepare, schedule a date within 1½ to 2 months following graduation. Then, after graduation, get working on implementing your preparation plan. So get yourself ready and take that exam!

**Step 4: Implementing Your Preparation Plan**

Do not for a moment think that the way you will prepare for this exam is to read all your class notes and textbooks cover to cover. This is not the way to prepare for the NCLEX exam, and just the thought of doing this can exacerbate your sense of being overwhelmed. Place your boxes of class notes in a closet out of your sight. The information in them is much too detailed to assist in your preparation. Use your textbooks as a reference to review content areas that you find difficult when you are answering your practice test questions.

Practicing answering test questions is a must, and the best way to prepare for the NCLEX exam is to practice question after question after question on a computer. Practicing answering test questions yields a twofold reward: (1) you will strengthen your knowledge base of nursing content, and (2) you will become skillful in the use of test-taking strategies. The more you practice, the more prepared you will be for this exam. You should practice answering a *minimum* of 3500 NCLEX-style practice questions before taking the exam. This is

very individualized, and to be proficient and skilled with answering exam questions correctly, many graduates need to practice answering even more than the minimum and need to practice between 4000 and 5000 NCLEX-style questions before taking the exam. You also need to score at least an 85% on your practice tests; if you do not obtain this score, then you need to review the relevant content and again answer practice questions in your area of difficulty until you can achieve at least an 85%. It is important to remember that you also need to read the rationales and test-taking strategies that accompany each practice question because this will help you refine your nursing knowledge and critical thinking skills. Remember that NCLEX questions will be presented at the cognitive levels of applying, analyzing, and synthesizing or even higher levels. Reading the rationales and test-taking strategies will improve your critical thinking skills for answering future questions.

You may have obtained a comprehensive NCLEX review book during your nursing program, and this book most likely contained both content review and practice questions. You can continue to use this book for NCLEX preparation, but you should also consider selecting a second resource that contains only practice questions. Be selective when deciding on a review book. Also, the preface of this book describes several different NCLEX review products available that will ensure your success on the NCLEX exam.



### Selecting a Review Book

- Make sure that your resource provides *at least* 3500 practice questions.
- Check to see if each question is accompanied by a rationale that provides an explanation for both the correct and incorrect options and a test-taking strategy.
- Find out what other information accompanies each question, such as test plan codes and a reference source for the question.
- Be sure that a Web site with additional practice questions accompanies the book.
- Check to see what options for content selection are available for the practice questions on the Web site.
- Note the modes for testing on the Web site, and look for a book that provides a study mode and exam mode.
- Be sure that you are given detailed printouts of your performance on your practice tests.

Now that you have your NCLEX resource, start practicing questions. Begin selecting content areas that are your weakest areas, and select the study mode. The study mode will generate all possible available questions on the Web site in the content area selected and also provide the correct answer, rationale, and test-taking strategy as soon as you submit your answer. This is an important mode to use when you start your preparation because you will learn as you go along. When you find that you have difficulty with answering a question, note the problem area in your binder, and after you have completed your study session, review this content in your textbooks or your NCLEX review book. Once you feel that you have strengthened your weak area by using the study mode, move to the exam mode and take an exam to note your improvement. This mode differs from the study mode in that it provides feedback after you answer all the questions rather than after each question. Continue with this pattern of review, moving from your weak areas to your strong areas.

### Step 5: Determining Your Readiness for the NCLEX Exam

Remember that you are ready to take the NCLEX exam and that you were ready when you completed your nursing program. However, preparation for the NCLEX exam after graduation is a critical piece in being successful on this exam. At this point you have implemented your preparation plan and now need to determine

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

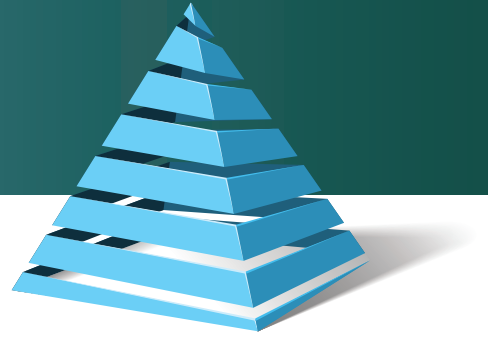
When answering nursing course exam questions and when practicing questions from your NCLEX review book, remember that the answer is something that is within the scope of nursing practice. Usually, the answer that indicates notifying the health care provider is not the correct choice unless the situation presented is a life-threatening emergency. Your exams and the NCLEX exam seek to determine your ability about what you, as the nurse, would do in the presented client situation.

your readiness and refine any remaining weak areas while waiting for your scheduled NCLEX date. How will you do this? Using the Web site, select the exam mode (100 practice questions) and select all content areas so that you generate an integrated content exam. Review your results, and brush up on any weak areas. Continue to take these 100-question exams and follow this pattern until it is time to take the NCLEX exam. Remember that it is important to maintain momentum and a pattern when getting ready for this exam, so continue to practice questions every day.

It is time to take the NCLEX exam. Are you ready? Of course you are! As long as you followed your preparation plan and worked at strengthening any weak areas, you are ready for the challenge!

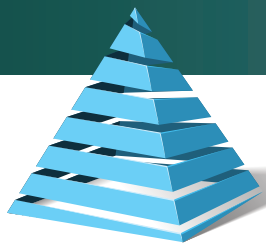


## PART II



# Strategies for Success

- 5 Alternate Item Formats, 30
- 6 How to Avoid “Reading into the Question”, 42
- 7 Positive and Negative Event Queries, 52
- 8 Questions Requiring Prioritization, 61
- 9 Leading and Managing, Delegating, and Assignment-Making Questions, 77
- 10 Communication Questions, 87
- 11 Pharmacology, Medication, and Intravenous Calculation Questions, 100
- 12 Additional Pyramid Strategies, 113



## CHAPTER 5

# Alternate Item Formats

### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

Practice answering questions on the computer as often as you can in order to become familiar with this testing method. When your test day arrives, your anxiety will be lessened if you are used to taking tests on the computer!

### Introduction

An important strategy for success during your nursing program and for the National Council Licensure Examination (NCLEX®) is to become as familiar as possible with the types of questions that may appear in these examinations. Facing the challenge of NCLEX may cause a significant amount of anxiety. Knowing what the examination is all about will help alleviate your fear and anxiety. This chapter describes the various types of alternate item format questions that you may encounter on the NCLEX examination and nursing school examinations and provides you with test-taking strategies to answer them correctly.



### What Is an Alternate Item Format?

Alternate item format questions are presented in a format other than a 4-option multiple choice. You will encounter these types of questions on your nursing school examinations and on the NCLEX exam. Therefore, it is critical to be familiar with these types of questions and the test-taking strategies for answering them correctly.



### Alternate Item Format Questions

- Fill-in-the-blank
- Multiple response
- Prioritizing (ordered response)
- Figure or illustration (Hot Spot)
- Chart/exhibit
- Graphic item options
- Audio and video

A **fill-in-the-blank** question requires that you use the computer keyboard to type in a numerical answer. In a **multiple response** question you will need to use the computer mouse to click in a small box in front of the option(s) to select the correct answer(s). In a **prioritizing (ordered response)**, you will be asked to use the computer mouse to “drag and drop” the options from the left side of the screen (unordered responses) to the right side of the screen in order of priority (ordered responses). In a **figure or illustration** question, you may be asked to “point and click” (using the mouse) on a specific area (represented by a circle and also known as the “hot spot”). In a **chart/exhibit** question, you will need to use the computer mouse to click on designated exhibit buttons and tab buttons to

read the information in order to answer the question. In a **graphic item option** question, images will be presented as options and you will need to select an image as an answer. The **audio** or **video** questions may require you to use a set of headphones. You will click on an icon to play the sound and/or video and then answer the question based on the content presented. You will be able to listen to the audio or watch the video as many times as you need to.

The National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN) provides specific directions for you to follow with alternate item format questions to guide you in your process of testing, and it is very important to read these directions as they appear on the computer screen. The NCSBN also provides a tutorial at the start of the examination to assist you in answering these types of questions. However, by using this resource you will already be familiar with these question types, which will save you time during testing, and of course, relieve some anxiety. We also encourage you to access the NCSBN Web site at [www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org) and Pearson Professional Centers Web site at [www.pearsonvue.com/nclex](http://www.pearsonvue.com/nclex) to obtain additional information about the NCLEX-RN examination and alternate item formats and to review the tutorial that the NCSBN provides for you.



### What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Fill-in-the-Blank Questions?

Fill-in-the-blank questions will ask you to perform a medication calculation, calculate a flow rate or infusion time for a specific intravenous solution, or calculate an intake or output record on a client. You will need to type in your answer and the answer will be in a numerical format.

#### Test-Taking Strategies: Fill-in-the-Blank

- Always follow the directions on the computer screen.
- Use the erasable noteboard to perform the calculation.
- Read the question and set up the formula you will use to solve the problem.
- Be alert to the need to perform conversions.
- Perform the calculation.
- Verify your answer using the on-screen calculator.
- Record the answer using one decimal place or a whole number if asked to do so.

In a medication calculation question, you need to record only the numerical component of the answer. In other words, if the answer to a question is 1.4 mL, type only 1.4. Additionally, a medication calculation question may ask you to record your answer using 1 decimal place. If it so indicates, you must record the answer using 1 decimal place in order to answer correctly. For example, if the answer to a medication calculation is 2.33 and you are asked to record the answer to 1 decimal place, then you must type in the answer as 2.3.

In an intravenous flow rate or intravenous infusion time question, the directions may indicate to round the answer to the nearest whole number. If this is indicated then you must type in the answer as a whole number. For example, if the answer is 21.4 drops per minute, type the answer as 21. Remember that it is not possible to infuse  $\frac{4}{10}$  of a drop.

In an intake and output calculation question, be sure to read the data carefully. These types of questions may require that you convert ounces (oz) to milliliters (mL). If you read the data carefully you will note specifically what the question requires and will answer correctly.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Student-to-Student

Before an exam, make sure you have plenty of pens, pencils, scrap paper, a calculator, or any other materials you may need. For computerized exams, an on-screen calculator should be available for your use. Being prepared will help decrease your test anxiety!



**STUDY TIP****Preparing for Clinical**

Read your assigned client's medication list before clinical and determine if a calculation will need to be performed before administering the medication. When in clinical, be careful when administering medications. Be certain that the correct dose is administered to your client.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Fill-in-the-Blank**

A client drank 6 oz of juice and 8 oz of tea for breakfast; 4 oz of water to swallow medications at 0900 and 1300; and 8 oz of milk and 8 oz of coffee for lunch. The nurse determines that the client consumed how many mL of fluid?

**Answer:** \_\_\_\_\_ mL

**ANSWER: 1140 mL**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **subject**, a fill-in-the-blank question that requires that you calculate the total intake. Read the data in the question carefully and note that the client drank 4 oz of water at both 0900 and 1300. Also note that the question uses data expressed in ounces, and you are required to convert ounces to milliliters. Use the erasable notepad to add the total ounces and verify the amount using the on-screen calculator. Next convert the total amount of ounces to milliliters, recalling that there are 30 mL in 1 oz. Therefore, 6 oz of juice, 8 oz of tea, 4 oz of water at 0900AM, 4 oz of water at 1300PM, 8 oz of milk, and 8 oz of coffee total 38 oz. Next, to convert ounces to milliliters multiply 38 by 30 to yield 1140 mL.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

As the nurse, you will be required to monitor intake and output on clients and you will need to demonstrate this skill before entering clinical. Intake and output measurements are used for a variety of reasons in the care of clients, including monitoring renal (kidney) function. The kidneys are primarily responsible for ridding the body of waste and play a major role in maintenance of fluid balance in the body. If a client's intake is proportionately different than his or her output, it can provide information about what is going on in the body and what disease processes may be occurring. You will learn more about medication calculations and intake and output measurements in your fundamentals nursing course.

**What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Multiple Response Questions?**

In a multiple response question, you will be asked to select or check all of the correct options that pertain to the question. These questions require you to use the computer mouse and click in a small box placed in front of the options that you select. Multiple response questions are used for various nursing content areas such as, but not limited to, nursing interventions, expected assessment findings, intended medication effects, medication side effects or adverse effects, or expected responses to treatment. You need to do exactly as the question asks, selecting *ALL* of the options that apply. No partial credit is given for some correct selections. Remember *ALL* correct options must be selected in order for the answer to be correct. If you do not select all of the correct options or you include an incorrect option in your selections, then the answer to the question is incorrect.

**Test-Taking Strategies: Multiple Response**

Always read the data carefully in the question.

Determine exactly what the question is asking (subject of the question).

Identify strategic words.

Note whether the question contains a positive or negative event query.

Use nursing knowledge and clinical learning experiences.

Think about the pathophysiology associated with the disorder, if a disorder is presented in the question.

Visualize and form a mental image of the situation in the question and think about what applies.

Read each option one at a time and determine if it applies to the situation.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Multiple Response

The nurse is caring for a client receiving intravenous (IV) therapy who is exhibiting manifestations of circulatory overload. What interventions should the nurse take? **Select all that apply.**

- 1. Remove the IV
- 2. Monitor vital signs
- 3. Prepare to administer oxygen
- 4. Prepare to administer a diuretic
- 5. Notify the health care provider
- 6. Place the client in an upright position

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

This multiple response question requires that you select *all* interventions in the care of a client with circulatory overload, which is the **subject** of the question. Think about the pathophysiology associated with circulatory overload and recall that it results from excess fluid in the circulatory system; this will assist in determining that a diuretic will be prescribed. Visualize and form a mental image of the situation to help you determine that removing the IV is an incorrect action because IV access is needed to administer emergency medications.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Circulatory overload means that there is an increased amount of fluid in the body, known as increased blood volume. This condition results in difficulty breathing and an elevation in the blood pressure. Circulatory overload is commonly caused by intravenous therapy and can result in complications, such as heart failure or pulmonary edema (swelling in the lungs). This is a critical situation requiring notification of the health care provider, and the goal of treatment is to rid the body of excess fluid. You will learn more about circulatory overload in your fundamentals and medical-surgical nursing courses when you focus on fluid and electrolyte imbalances.



### What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Prioritizing (Ordered Response) Questions?

In a prioritizing (ordered response) question, you may be asked to use the computer mouse and to “drag and drop” the answers presented in order of priority. These questions usually ask you to prioritize nursing interventions or steps in a procedure. Information is presented in a question, and based on the data, you need to determine what you would do first, second, third, and so forth. Three helpful test-taking strategies that are important for questions requiring prioritizing include the ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation; Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory; and the steps of the nursing process. Refer to Chapter 8 for additional information on strategies for answering prioritizing (ordered response) questions.

#### The ABCs

The ABCs indicate airway, breathing, and circulation and direct the order of priority of nursing actions. Airway is always the first priority in caring for any client. When you are presented with a prioritizing (ordered response) question, use the ABCs to assist in determining the correct order of action. The only exception to using the ABCs to direct the order of nursing actions is if the question asks to prioritize when administering cardiopulmonary resuscitation. In this situation, you would follow the CAB guidelines: C, circulation, A, airway, and B, breathing.

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

When caring for your client, think of Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory. Consider what lifestyle needs may take precedence over others and apply these principles to client care and when answering test questions!

## Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs Theory

Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory is a helpful guide to use to prioritize client needs. When you are answering prioritizing (ordered response) questions, physiological needs are the priority and require your immediate attention. Safety needs are the next priority, followed by psychosocial needs.

## The Steps of the Nursing Process

The steps of the nursing process are usually followed in sequence with assessment (data collection) being the first step and evaluation being the last. The steps of the nursing process can be used as a guide to help you answer prioritizing (ordered response) questions. The only exception to the rule of selecting an assessment (data collection) action as the first action is if the situation in the question presents a life-threatening emergency. If the situation in the question presents a life-threatening situation, read carefully; an intervention may be the first action.

### Test-Taking Strategies: Prioritizing (Ordered Response)

- Use the ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation.
- Use Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory.
- Use the steps of the nursing process.
- Look for strategic words.
- Determine if the question identifies a positive or negative event query.
- Visualize and form a mental image of the client or clinical event.
- Use teaching and learning principles.
- Hands are always washed before any client contact.
- Treatments and procedures are always explained to the client before implementation.
- The nurse checks for a signed informed consent before any invasive procedure.
- Documenting a client's condition and response to treatment is done following care and implementation of treatments.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Prioritizing (Ordered Response)

The nurse is teaching a client how to use a metered-dose inhaler and prepares to list the steps and instructions for use of the inhaler. **Arrange the steps in the order that they should be performed. All options must be used.**

#### *Unordered Responses*

- Insert the medication canister into the plastic holder.
- Determine what the client knows about this type of device.
- Shake the inhaler and remove the cap from the mouthpiece.
- Hold the breath for a few seconds, remove the mouthpiece, and exhale slowly.
- Keep the lips secure around the mouthpiece and inhale and push the top of the canister once.
- Breathe out through the mouth then place the mouthpiece into the mouth holding the inhaler upright.

#### *Ordered Responses*

- Determine what the client knows about this type of device.
- Insert the medication canister into the plastic holder.
- Shake the inhaler and remove the cap from the mouthpiece.
- Breathe out through the mouth then place the mouthpiece into the mouth holding the inhaler upright.
- Keep the lips secure around the mouthpiece and inhale and push the top of the canister once.
- Hold the breath for a few seconds, remove the mouthpiece, and exhale slowly.

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Focus on the **subject**, a prioritizing (ordered response) question that requires you to list in order of priority the steps and instructions in teaching a client how to use a metered-dose inhaler. Two strategies are important to consider when answering this question. First, use teaching and learning principles, recalling that it is important to first determine what the client knows about this medication administration system. Second, visualize the procedure and form a mental image as to how this medication system should be used; this will direct you to the correct order for its use.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

A metered-dose inhaler is used to treat certain respiratory diseases, such as asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). The device provides a specified amount of the prescribed medication and disperses it into the lungs on inhalation. You will learn more about metered-dose inhalers in your pharmacology nursing course.

**What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Figure/Illustration Questions?**

In a figure/illustration question, you are provided with a visual item, and you need to answer the question based on that item. Some examples of figures/illustrations that you may note on the examination include rhythm strips, orthopedic or other assistive client devices, anatomical areas of the body, or medication labels. Some figure/illustration questions are in a multiple choice format. In other words, you are presented with a visual item and a question, and based on this information, you need to answer by selecting 1 of the 4 presented options. Other figure/illustration questions may be in a fill-in-the-blank format and require that you type in an answer. For example, you may be provided with a medication label and a question that requires a medication calculation and typing in the answer. The important concept to remember is that a figure/illustration question could be presented in any format, including multiple choice, fill-in-the-blank, multiple response, prioritizing (ordered response), or chart/exhibit.

**Test-Taking Strategies: Figure/Illustration**

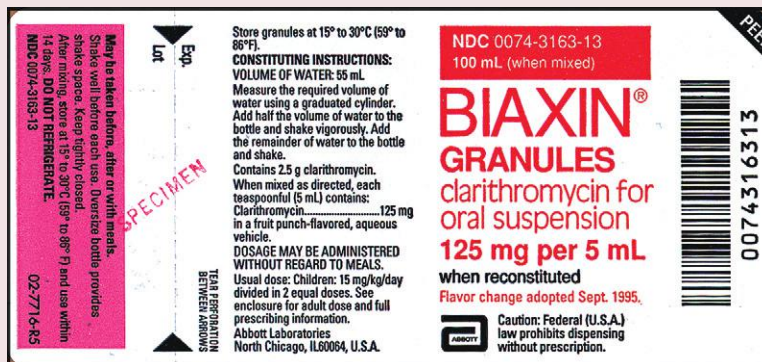
Read all of the data in the question carefully and focus on the figure/illustration.  
Think about what the figure/illustration is representing.  
Ask yourself, "What is the question asking?"  
Focus on the subject of the question.  
Look for strategic words.  
Determine if the question identifies a positive or negative event query.  
Use nursing knowledge and clinical learning experiences.  
Focus on the question format (fill-in-the-blank, multiple response, prioritizing [ordered response], chart/exhibit) and use the test-taking strategies for answering that type of question.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Figure/Illustration

Biaxin granules (Clarithromycin) oral suspension 250 mg twice daily has been prescribed for a client with pharyngitis. How many milliliters (mL) should the nurse prepare to administer 1 dose?

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_ mL



(From Kee J, Marshall S: *Clinical calculations: With applications to general and specialty areas*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2012, WB Saunders.)

Answer: **10 mL**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Focus on the **subject**, a figure/illustration question in a fill-in-the-blank format that requires performing a calculation. In other words, you are required to focus on the figure/illustration of the medication label, perform a calculation to determine the amount of milliliters to administer in 1 dose, and type in the answer. Use nursing knowledge of the formula for medication calculation doses. Perform the calculation on the erasable noteboard, and verify the amount using the on-screen calculator. The formula and calculation are presented below.

**Formula:**

$$\frac{\text{Desired}}{\text{Available}} \times \text{mL} = \text{mL per dose}$$

$$\frac{250 \text{ mg}}{125 \text{ mg}} \times 5 \text{ mL} = 10 \text{ mL}$$

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Medication calculations are performed to determine the volume or amount of medication to be administered based on the dosage prescribed and the amount or volume that the nurse has available in the medication bottle. You will most likely be required to pass a medication calculation test before entering your first clinical rotation, depending on the policy at your nursing school. You will learn more about medication calculations in your fundamentals or related math courses before you enter the clinical setting.



### What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Chart/Exhibit Questions?

A chart/exhibit question will most likely provide you with data from a client's medical record and ask you a question about that data. These types of questions also may provide you with an exhibit of some type, such as a health care provider's prescription form with written prescriptions or a laboratory result form listing results from various laboratory tests. These questions will most likely be in the multiple choice format, but they also may be presented in other types of alternate item question formats.



**SAMPLE QUESTION: Chart/Exhibit**

Prednisone is prescribed for a hospitalized client with severe rheumatoid arthritis. Which daily laboratory result should the nurse monitor **most** closely?

**Client's Chart**

History	Medications	Diagnostic tests
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Diabetes mellitus</li> <li>• Gout</li> <li>• Hypertension</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NPH insulin: 16 units subcutaneous daily</li> <li>• Allopurinol (Zyloprim): 100 mg PO daily</li> <li>• Atorvastatin (Lipitor): 10 mg PO daily</li> <li>• Metoprolol tartrate (Toprol XL): 50 mg PO daily</li> <li>• Ramipril (Altace): 5 mg PO daily</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Electrocardiogram: normal</li> <li>• Chest x-ray: normal</li> </ul>

1. Lipase level
2. Chloride level
3. Uric acid level
4. Blood glucose level

**Answer: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

This chart/exhibit question provides you with a multiple choice question and data from a client's medical chart. Read all of the data in the question and the client's chart. Note the **strategic word** "most" and focus on the **subject** of the question, the laboratory test to monitor for the client taking prednisone. Use nursing knowledge about the interactions and effects of prednisone to assist in answering. Recalling that this medication may increase the blood glucose level will direct you to the correct option. Also note the relationship of the client's history of diabetes mellitus and the correct option.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Rheumatoid arthritis is a debilitating disease that has an autoimmune (self-attacking) component that causes inflammation and sometimes deformities of the joints. It is a disease that is marked by remission and exacerbation, with symptoms appearing most frequently in women between the ages of 36 to 50 years. You will learn more about rheumatoid arthritis in your medical-surgical nursing course.

**Test-Taking Strategies: Chart/Exhibit**

Read all of the data in each tab in the chart or exhibit.  
 Avoid "skimming over" the information presented.  
 Focus on the subject of the question.  
 Look for strategic words.  
 Determine if the question identifies a positive or negative event query.  
 Reread the data provided and use nursing knowledge and clinical learning experiences to answer correctly.  
 Identify a relationship between the subject of the question and the data provided.  
 Note the question format being presented and use the specific test-taking strategies for that type of question.

**What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Graphic Item Option Questions?**

A graphic item option question will provide you with a written question and images as the options. This type of question will most likely be in the multiple choice format. An example question may contain normal versus abnormal physical assessment findings, requiring you to discern between them as the question may ask.

**Test-Taking Strategies: Graphic Item Options**

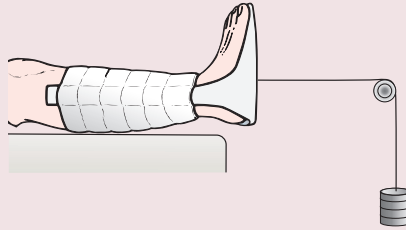
Look for strategic words.  
 Note the format of the question presented.  
 Use nursing knowledge and relate clinical experiences to the subject of the question.  
 Once you have determined the subject and identified what the question is asking, examine each graphic option to choose the best answer.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Graphic Item Option

The nurse is told that an assigned client is in Buck's traction. Upon entering the client's room, the nurse should expect to see which device?

1.



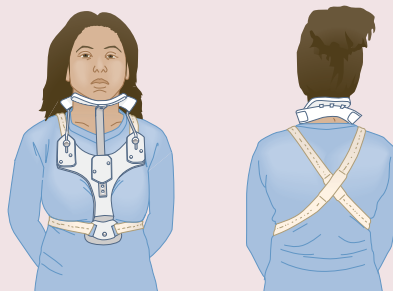
(Figure from Lewis S, Dirksen S, Heitkemper M, Bucher L, Camera I: *Medical-surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems*, ed 8, St Louis, 2011, Mosby.)

2.



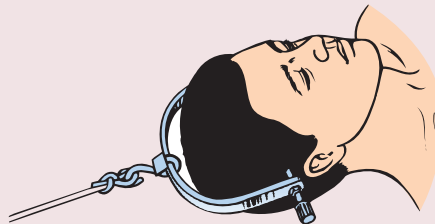
(Figure adapted from Urden LD: *Priorities in critical care nursing*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2007, Mosby.)

3.



(Figure from Lewis S, Dirksen S, Heitkemper M, Bucher L, Camera I: *Medical-surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems*, ed 8, St Louis, 2011, Mosby.)

4.



(Figure from Perry A, Potter P: *Clinical Nursing Skills and Techniques*, ed 7, St. Louis, 2006, Mosby).

**Answer: 1**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

This question provides you with a graphic for each option and asks you to identify the option that illustrates Buck's traction. Therefore, the **subject** of the question is Buck's traction. Use nursing knowledge and relate clinical experiences to the **subject** of the question. Recall that Buck's traction is a type of skin traction, then look at each graphic in the options to answer correctly.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Buck's traction is used to immobilize, position, or align a lower extremity. It is most commonly used when a person sustains a hip fracture and is awaiting surgery. It is also used to treat a contracture or disease of the hip or knee. It usually uses ropes, weights, and pulleys, and a frame at the foot of the bed to apply the necessary weight. You will learn more about Buck's traction in your medical-surgical nursing course.



## What Test-Taking Strategies Are Helpful for Answering Audio or Video Questions?

An audio or video question requires you to wear a set of headphones. You are instructed to click on the icon to play the sound or run the video and listen or watch the content. A question is presented based on the content. The format of the question will most likely be a multiple choice or multiple response type. An example of an audio question may be basic lung sounds, heart sounds, or bowel sounds, requiring you to identify the correct sound being heard in order to answer the question. A video question may present a question about a nursing procedure and you will need to watch the video in order to answer.

### Test-Taking Strategies: Audio or Video Questions

Click on the icon to play the sound or video; you may replay as many times as necessary. Focus on the subject once you determine what the question is asking. Note the format of the question you are answering. Use nursing knowledge and relate clinical experiences to the subject of the question.



## SAMPLE QUESTION: Audio

SAUNDERS 2014-2015 STRATEGIES for TEST SUCCESS Passing Nursing School and the NCLEX® Exam 3E080N Silvestri ELSEVIER

Home History Study Mode Calculator Help

Question 1 of 13 < 1 Go > Bookmark Stop

A nurse is auscultating breath sounds in a hospitalized client with emphysema and hears these sounds. (Click on Listen button.) The nurse documents this finding as which of the following?

Image Listen

1. Crackles
2. High-pitched wheezes
3. Bronchial breath sounds
4. Bronchovesicular breath sounds

Rationale Formula Strategy Reference Submit

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

This question type provides you with the question, an icon to listen to the sound the question is asking about, and your options. This question type will most likely be in multiple choice format. Click on the icon to replay the sound; you can play the audio recording as many times as necessary. Use nursing knowledge and clinical skills to relate to the **subject** of the question, the breath sound heard in a client with emphysema. These types of questions commonly ask about physical assessment findings.

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Breath sounds are auscultated, or listened to, using a stethoscope. These sounds are assessed in order to determine the presence of alterations or complications in the lungs. You will learn more about the types of normal and abnormal breath sounds in your health and physical assessment nursing course.



## SAMPLE QUESTION: Video

SAUNDERS 2014-2015 STRATEGIES for TEST SUCCESS Passing Nursing School and the NCLEX® Exam 3rd Edition Silvestri ELSEVIER

Home History Study Mode Calculator Help

Question 9 of 13 < 9 Go > Bookmark Stop

The nurse prepares the client for irrigation of an abdominal wound. (Click on the Question Video button to view a video showing preparation procedures.) After preparation, the nurse would appropriately don which of the following items to perform the procedure?

1. Gloves
2. Gloves and a gown
3. Gloves and goggles
4. Gloves, gown, and goggles

Image Listen



Question Video II Pause Rationale Video

Rationale Formula Strategy Reference Submit

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

This question type provides you with the question, an icon to view the video, and your options. This question type will most likely be in multiple choice format. Click on the icon to play the video; you may replay as many times as necessary. Use nursing knowledge and relate clinical experiences to the **subject** of the question, performing a wound irrigation, and what the question is asking.

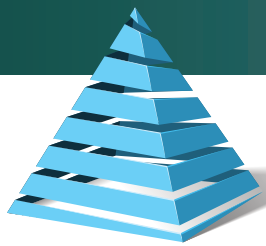
### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Wound irrigation is performed by rinsing a wound with a prescribed solution, such as a medicated solution, water, saline, or an antimicrobial liquid preparation. This procedure is done to prevent and/or treat wound infection. You will learn more about wound care in your fundamentals and medical-surgical nursing courses.

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

Audio and video type questions ask you about a subject or content area that is within the nursing scope of practice. Audio questions require you to listen to breath sounds, heart sounds, or bowel sounds representing a component of a nursing assessment. Video questions present nursing activities and procedures that you will encounter in the clinical setting.



## CHAPTER 6

# How to Avoid “Reading into the Question”

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

When approaching a test question, visualize the scenario that is presented. Do not imagine anything beyond what is actually being described in the question. This strategy will assist you in avoiding reading into the question.



One of the pitfalls that can cause a problem when trying to answer a question correctly is “reading into the question.” This means that you are considering issues beyond the information presented in the question. Some strategies that you can use to prevent this include the following: identifying the ingredients of a question, reading carefully and looking for strategic words or strategic phrases, identifying the subject of the question and what the question is asking, using the process of elimination, and avoiding the “What if?” syndrome.

### Ingredients of a Question

#### What Are the Ingredients of a Question?

Each multiple choice question contains a case event, a question query, and four options. It is important to identify the ingredients of a question as you read it because this will help you sort out the facts and determine what the question is asking.

#### *What Is the Case Event?*

The case event is the “heart” of the question. It provides the information that you need to think about to answer the question.

#### *What Is the Question Query?*

The question query is a statement that generally follows the case event and asks you something specific about the case event.

#### *What Are the Options?*

The options are all the answers presented with the question.

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

Many figure/illustration or “hot spot” questions are physical assessment questions. When answering these types of questions, remember that the questions and answers are within the nursing scope of practice. If you understand what you, as the nurse, are required to understand when performing a physical assessment, you will be better able to answer these questions.

Examples of some types of questions that may appear in your nursing exams or on the NCLEX exam and the specific ingredients of the questions are provided in this section. The answers to these example questions and the test-taking strategy also are provided. Additionally, Chapter 5 provides information about the various question types that will be in your nursing exams and the NCLEX exam.

**INGREDIENTS OF A QUESTION: Multiple Choice**

**Case Event:** The nurse is reviewing the laboratory results of a client who is receiving magnesium sulfate by IV infusion and notes that the magnesium level is 3.5 mg/dL.

**Question Query:** Based on this laboratory result, the nurse would **most likely** expect to note which finding in the client?

**Options:**

1. Tremors
2. Hyperactive reflexes
3. Respiratory depression
4. No specific findings because this value is a normal level

**ANSWER: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Use the process of elimination, and note the **strategic words** *most likely*. Knowing that the level identified in the question is elevated will assist in eliminating option 4. Next, eliminate options 1 and 2 because they are **comparable or alike**. Remember to use nursing knowledge, focus on the information in the case event, identify what the question is asking (the **subject**), note the **strategic words**, read carefully, and use the process of elimination.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT:**

You need to know that the normal magnesium level is 1.6 to 2.6 mg/dL; therefore, the magnesium level presented in the question is elevated. Next you need to know the signs and symptoms indicative of an elevated magnesium level. You will learn normal laboratory values in your fundamentals nursing course. Learn the normal magnesium level and the signs and symptoms of a magnesium imbalance.

**INGREDIENTS OF A QUESTION: Fill in the Blank**

**Case Event:** The health care provider prescribes an intravenous (IV) antibiotic to be administered in 50 mL 0.9% normal saline and to infuse in 30 minutes. The drop factor for the IV tubing is 15 gtt/mL.

**Question Query:** The nurse should set the flow rate of the infusion at how many drops per minute?

**ANSWER: 25**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Note the words *set the flow rate* in the query. Read the question carefully, focusing on the **subject**, drops per minute. Note that 50 mL fluid is to infuse in 30 minutes and the drop factor is 15. Use the formula for calculating an IV infusion to answer the question. Always double-check the calculation, and verify your answer using a calculator. Remember to use nursing knowledge, focus on the information in the case event, identify what the question is asking (the **subject**), and note the words in the query.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

In this question, you need to know the formula for calculating an IV flow rate. You will most likely learn about medication calculations and IV flow rates in your fundamentals nursing course. The formula and the calculation for this question are as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Total volume to be infused} \times \text{Drop factor}}{\text{Time in minutes}} = \text{Drops per minute}$$

$$\frac{50 \times 15}{30} = 25$$

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Use the formula for calculating an IV infusion. Perform the calculation on the notebboard provided to you, and use the computer on-screen calculator to verify your answer. Read carefully because in calculation questions you may be asked to round the answer to the nearest whole number or to one decimal place. If rounding is necessary, perform at the end of the calculation.



## INGREDIENTS OF A QUESTION: Multiple Response

**Case Event:** The nurse enters a hospitalized client's room and discovers that the client is having a tonic-clonic seizure.

**Question Query:** Which action(s) should the nurse implement? **Select all that apply.**

**Options:**

- 1. Call a code.
- 2. Check airway patency.
- 3. Establish an IV access.
- 4. Protect the client from injury.
- 5. Restrain the client's extremities loosely.
- 6. Document the characteristics of the seizure that the client exhibits.

**ANSWER: 2, 3, 4, 6**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:

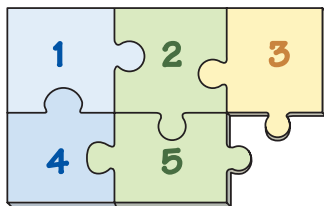
Read each option carefully and note the **subject**, the nursing actions in the event of a seizure. In this type of question, it is helpful to visualize the event to assist in determining the nurse's actions. Remember that a patent airway and client safety are your priority. Use nursing knowledge, focus on the information in the case event, identify what the question is asking (the **subject**), note the strategic words, read carefully, and use the process of elimination.

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You need to know that a seizure is an abnormal sudden excessive discharge of electrical activity within the brain. You also need to know what you would do if a client has a seizure. What you need to remember is that a patent airway and client safety are your priorities. You will learn about seizures when you study neurological disorders.



## INGREDIENTS OF A QUESTION: Prioritizing (Ordered Response)



**Case Event:** The nurse is preparing to change an abdominal dressing using sterile technique.

**Question Query:** What is the order of **priority** that the nurse should take to perform this procedure? **Arrange the actions in the order of priority that they should be performed. All options must be used.**

Unordered Responses	Ordered Responses
Wash hands.	Explain the procedure to the client.
Set up a sterile field.	Wash hands.
Explain the procedure to the client.	Set up a sterile field.
Document the characteristics of the wound.	Don clean gloves and remove the old dressing.
Don sterile gloves and apply a new dressing.	Don sterile gloves and apply a new dressing.
Don clean gloves and remove the old dressing.	Document the characteristics of the wound.

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Read each option carefully, and note the **strategic word** *priority*. In this type of question, it is helpful to visualize the event to assist in determining the nurse's order of actions. Remember to use nursing knowledge, read carefully, focus on the information in the case event, identify what the question is asking (the **subject**), and note the **strategic words**.

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You need to know the principles that are related to asepsis and the technique for changing a sterile dressing, which you will learn in your fundamentals of nursing class. Learn these principles and techniques because they are critical in preventing infection in the client.

### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

For a prioritizing (ordered-response) question on the NCLEX exam, you will need to use the computer mouse to drag and drop the options in order of priority.

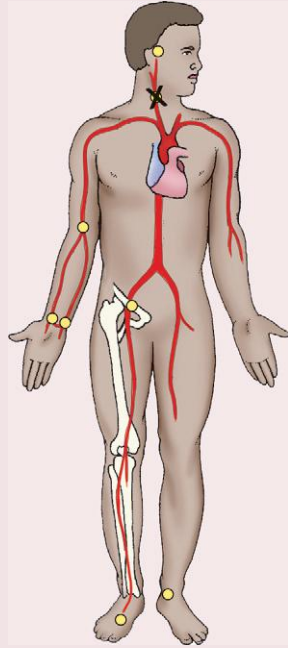




## INGREDIENTS OF A QUESTION: Figure or Illustration

**Case Event:** The nurse is checking the arterial pulses on an adult client.

**Question Query:** Select the area where the nurse would palpate the carotid pulse.  
Refer to figure.



(Figure from Ignatavicius D, Workman ML: *Medical surgical nursing: Patient-centered collaborative care*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, Saunders.)

**ANSWER:** The answer is indicated by the circle marked with the X.

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **subject**, the location of the carotid pulse. In this type of question, it is helpful to visualize the pulse points for assessment of arterial pulses to identify the correct answer. Remember to use nursing knowledge, read carefully, focus on the information in the case event, identify what the question is asking (the **subject**), and note specific words.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You need to know where the arterial pulse points are located. Use what you learned in anatomy class to assist in answering this question. You will also learn these pulse points in your fundamentals of nursing class and in your physical assessment class. Be sure to learn these pulse points for assessment of arterial pulses.

### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

On the NCLEX exam, you will be asked to use the computer mouse to point and click on the correct area in a figure or illustration. These types of questions are also known as “hot spot” questions.

## Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases

Always read every word in the question carefully. As you read, look for strategic words or strategic phrases in the case event and query of the question. Strategic words or strategic phrases focus your attention on specific or critical points that you need to consider when answering the question.

Some strategic words or strategic phrases may indicate that all the options are correct, in which case you will need to prioritize to select the correct option. Remember, as you read the question, look for the strategic words or strategic phrases; they will make a difference with regard to how you will answer the question.

### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

Lifestyle balance is extremely important in success on exams. Be sure that you eat healthy, get enough exercise and sleep, and have some fun. Good organizational skills are needed to maintain balance, so begin working on these skills now!

**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

You will find that your nursing exams are quite different from exams that you took in previous courses, such as anatomy and physiology or microbiology. Those exams required memorization of facts, which helped you answer questions correctly. Nursing exams are different because of the use of strategic words and phrases that may indicate that all options are correct. Therefore, it is critical that you learn what these strategic words and phrases are and that you work at using nursing knowledge, critical thinking skills, and test-taking strategies to answer questions correctly.

**STUDY TIP****Preparing for Clinical**

When working in the clinical arena, you need to be able to prioritize client care; this is why prioritization is such a big focus on nursing exams. Dedicate a lot of time to sharpening your prioritization skills, which will help you be successful both in clinical and on your exams!

## What Are the Commonly Used Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases to Look for?

### *Common Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases That Indicate There Is Only One Correct Option*

Some strategic words or strategic phrases used in a question will indicate that *there is only one correct option*. Some of these words and phrases include:

- Early sign
- Late sign
- Understands
- Goal has been achieved
- Goals have not yet been fully met
- Has not met the outcome criteria
- Adequately tolerating
- Inadequate
- Unable to tolerate
- Ineffective
- Avoid
- Needs additional instructions
- Lack of understanding

### *Common Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases That Indicate the Need to Prioritize*

There are also strategic words or strategic phrases that may indicate that all options are correct and that *it will be necessary to prioritize to select the correct option*. Some of these words and phrases include:

- Best
- First
- Initial
- Immediately
- Most likely or least likely
- Most appropriate or least appropriate
- Highest or lowest priority
- Order of priority
- At highest risk
- At lowest risk
- Best understanding

### *Common Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases That Indicate a Positive or Negative Event Question/Query*

Finally, some strategic words or strategic phrases indicate that the question is a positive or negative event question/query. Strategic words or strategic phrases used in these types of questions may indicate that there is only one correct option or may indicate the need to prioritize to select the correct option. (Additional information about positive or negative event queries can be found in Chapter 7.)

**Common words or phrases that indicate a positive event question/query include:**

- Early sign
- Late sign
- Best
- First

Initial  
 Immediately  
 Most likely  
 Most appropriate  
 Highest priority  
 Order of priority  
 All nursing interventions that apply  
 Goal has been achieved  
 Adequately tolerating

**Common words or phrases that indicate a negative event question/query include:**

Least likely  
 Least appropriate  
 Least priority  
 Least helpful  
 At lowest risk  
 Avoid  
 Needs additional instructions  
 Needs additional teaching  
 Lack of understanding  
 Goals have not yet been fully met  
 Has not met the outcome criteria  
 Ineffective  
 Inadequate  
 Unable to tolerate

## Use of Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases in a Question

You may be asking yourself: “How are these strategic words or strategic phrases used in a question?” Following are some examples of question queries that contain strategic words:

Which statement by a client *indicates an understanding of the instructions*?  
 What is the *initial* nursing action?  
 Which is an *early* sign of hypoxia?  
*List in order of priority* the actions that the nurse should take.  
 Which individuals are *least likely* to develop hypertension?  
 Which client problem is of *least priority*?  
 The nurse would *avoid* which action?  
 The nurse determines that the client *needs additional teaching* if the client made which statement?  
 The nurse determines that the treatment is *ineffective* if which is noted?

## The Subject of the Question

### What Is the Subject of the Question?

The subject of the question is the specific content that the question is asking about. It is important to read every word in the question. As you read and note the strategic words or strategic phrases, determine what the question is asking. Identifying the subject of the question will help you eliminate the incorrect options and direct you to the correct option.

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

When answering exam questions, be sure to note if you are being presented with a positive or negative event query. This entirely changes the way the question will be answered.



**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

The questions on nursing exams cover subjects that you have learned in your nursing course. Focus on these subject areas when preparing for a nursing exam. If your instructor gives you a study guide for the exam, review all subject areas on the study guide.

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

There are hundreds of subjects that you could be asked about when you take the NCLEX exam. This is understandable, especially when you think about all the information that you needed to learn in nursing school. A test question may ask about any Client Needs area of the NCLEX Test Plan, any content area of nursing, or anything that has to do with the role and responsibilities of the nurse. Therefore, the list of subjects that could be tested is never-ending. It is extremely helpful to obtain a copy of the detailed NCLEX Test Plan, which is published by the National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN). This Test Plan, which identifies some of the content that will be tested on the NCLEX exam, can be obtained at no fee at the NCSBN Web site ([www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org)). Be sure to download the detailed Test Plan.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: The Subject of the Question**

**Case Event:** A client with metastatic cancer is receiving a continuous intravenous (IV) infusion of morphine sulfate to alleviate pain.

**Question Query:** The nurse should monitor the client for which adverse or toxic effect of the medication?

**Subject:** In this question, note that the client is receiving morphine sulfate and that the question asks about an adverse or toxic effect of the medication. Therefore, the subject of this question is an adverse or toxic effect of morphine sulfate.

**Options:**

1. Nausea
2. Sedation
3. Dizziness
4. Skeletal muscle flaccidity

**ANSWER: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Read every word in the question, and specifically determine what the question is asking. The **subject** of the question is the adverse or toxic effect of morphine sulfate. Nausea, sedation, and dizziness are side effects of morphine sulfate that the client may experience, but they are not adverse or toxic effects. Remember to focus on the **subject** and on the information in the question and what the question is asking!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

You need to know that morphine sulfate is an opioid analgesic and that it causes depression of the central nervous system. Next, noting that the question is asking about an adverse or toxic effect will assist in answering correctly. You will learn about morphine sulfate in your nursing courses, and it is important that you are very familiar with the side effects and adverse and toxic effects of the medication. In addition to skeletal muscle flaccidity, a major concern is that the medication causes respiratory depression. Learn the side effects and adverse effects of this medication.

## Using Nursing Knowledge and the Process of Elimination

### Why Is Nursing Knowledge So Important?

Nursing knowledge is needed to assist in answering test questions because the knowledge provides information that you need to process and think about critically to answer the question. If you can use your nursing knowledge to answer the question, then by all means do so!

### What Does It Mean to Use the Process of Elimination?

The process of elimination involves reading each option for a question and removing the options that are incorrect and do not address the subject of the question. Using the process of elimination is extremely important when you are reading the options to a question and trying to determine the correct answer. Do not hastily select an option because it sounds good. Always read every option carefully before selecting an answer.

Some students read a question, and before looking at the options, they determine a correct answer. This is a helpful strategy for answering a test question, because you are using nursing knowledge to help answer the question

correctly. The problem with this strategy is that you may have an answer to the question in mind, but when you look at the options your answer is not there. This can be very frustrating and anxiety provoking. Let's look at an example.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: The Process of Elimination

**Case Event:** A client who has type 1 diabetes mellitus describes shakiness and hunger 2 hours after receiving a dose of regular insulin.

**Question Query:** The nurse determines that the client is having a hypoglycemic reaction and prepares to give the client which **best** item from the dietary kitchen to treat the reaction?

After you read this question, you may immediately think, “Orange juice! Yes, orange juice is the best item! I know the answer to this question.” Then you look at the options and find the following:

**Options:**

1. Milk
2. Diet soda
3. Sugar-free gelatin
4. Sugar-free cookies

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Your answer, orange juice, is not there! So now what do you do? You need to use your nursing knowledge and think about what thought processes led you to identify orange juice as the answer to the question. Note the **strategic word**, best. Remember that a food item that contains 10 to 15 g carbohydrate is used to treat a hypoglycemic reaction. Now look at your options and use the process of elimination. In this question you can eliminate options 2, 3, and 4 because these items do not contain carbohydrates.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You need to know that diabetes mellitus is a chronic disorder of impaired carbohydrate, protein, and lipid metabolism that is caused by a deficiency of effective insulin. You also need to know that hypoglycemia is a complication of diabetes mellitus, and you need to know the signs of hypoglycemia. You will learn a great deal about diabetes mellitus during your nursing courses because it is a major health disorder. In this question you can use medical terminology skills to determine that *hypoglycemic* means a low blood glucose level. When the blood glucose is low, glucose needs to be provided to the client. The only item in the options that will provide a form of glucose is milk. Learn about diabetes mellitus, the signs of hypoglycemia, and its treatment.

#### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

On the NCLEX exam, do not be surprised if you are given questions that contain content with which you are totally unfamiliar or are only vaguely familiar. This happens to many who take this examination. When it does happen, read the question carefully and focus on the subject. Sometimes you do not even need to know much about the content to answer the question. In addition, with some of these unfamiliar questions, you may be able to use nursing knowledge from a different content area to answer the question. Do not become alarmed and anxious if you receive a question with unfamiliar content. Sit back, take a deep breath, read carefully, focus on the subject, and use nursing knowledge from a different content area and test-taking strategies to answer the question.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Lifestyle Planning

When planning study times for exams, look at the content that you will be tested on and plan to spend at least 2 to 3 hours per content area, in addition to your daily preparation of reviewing class notes and highlighted text.

## What Do You Do if You Eliminate Two Options and Are Unsure of the Final Two?

As you use the process of elimination to rule out the incorrect options, it is likely that you will be able to easily eliminate two of the four options in a multiple choice question. Now what do you do with the last two options, and how do you proceed to select the correct one? Follow these helpful steps when you are trying to decide which of the last two options is correct.

1. Read the question again.
2. Identify the case event from the query of the question.
3. Look for the strategic words or strategic phrases.
4. Identify the subject of the question.
5. Ask yourself, “What is the question asking?”

6. Read the options again.
7. Make your final choice by focusing on what the question is asking, using nursing knowledge, and implementing test-taking strategies.



## What Is the “What if?” Syndrome?

The “What if?” syndrome occurs when you read a test question, and instead of simply focusing on the information in the question, you start asking yourself, “Well, what if?” You need to avoid asking yourself this question because this leads you right into the dreaded pitfall of “reading into the question.” Read the question carefully, identify strategic words or strategic phrases, and focus on the subject of the question. You may need to think critically to answer the question, but stay on track! Asking yourself “What if?” moves you off track with regard to what the question is asking. Let’s look at two questions and then examine the ways to avoid reading into them.



### SAMPLE QUESTION 1

**Case Event:** The nurse is changing the tapes on a tracheostomy tube. The client coughs, and the tube is dislodged.

**Question Query:** What is the **initial** nursing action?

1. Call the health care provider to reinsert the tube.
2. Grasp the retention sutures to spread the opening.
3. Call the respiratory therapy department to reinsert the tube.
4. Cover the tracheostomy site with a sterile dressing to prevent infection.

Now you may immediately think, “The tube is dislodged, and I need the health care provider!” Read the question carefully. Note the strategic word *initial*, and focus on the subject—the client’s tube is dislodged. The question is asking you for a nursing action, so that is what you need to look for. This will direct you to option 2. Use nursing knowledge and test-taking strategies to assist in answering the question.

**ANSWER: 2**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Use the process of elimination, and focus on the **subject**. Note the **strategic word**, *initial*. Eliminate options 1 and 3 first because they are **comparable or alike** and will delay the immediate intervention needed. Eliminate option 4 because this action will block the airway. If the tube is accidentally dislodged, the initial nursing action is to grasp the retention sutures and spread the opening. In addition, use of the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—will direct you to the correct option.

#### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A tracheostomy is an opening into the trachea that is created surgically for the purpose of establishing an airway. You will learn about the care of a client with a tracheostomy tube when you learn about nursing care for a client with a respiratory condition; but the important thing to remember for any client, is that maintaining a patent airway is the nurse’s priority. In this question the only nursing action that will open the airway is the action identified in option 2. Learn about tracheostomy care and the nurse’s responsibilities in the care of the client.



## SAMPLE QUESTION 2

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a hospitalized client with a diagnosis of heart failure who suddenly reports shortness of breath and dyspnea.

**Question Query:** The nurse should take which **immediate** action?

1. Calls the health care provider.
2. Administers oxygen to the client.
3. Elevates the head of the client's bed.
4. Prepares to administer furosemide (Lasix).

Now you may immediately think that the client has developed pulmonary edema, a complication of heart failure, and needs a diuretic. Although pulmonary edema is a complication of heart failure, there is no information in the question indicating the presence of pulmonary edema. The question simply states that the client suddenly reports shortness of breath and dyspnea. Read the question carefully. Note the strategic word *immediate*, and focus on the subject—the client's symptoms. The question is asking you for a nursing action, so that is what you need to look for. This will direct you to option 3. Use nursing knowledge and test-taking strategies to assist in answering the question.

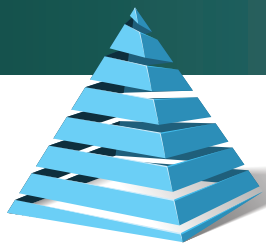
**ANSWER: 3**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Use the process of elimination, and focus on the information in the question and on the **subject**. Note the **strategic word** *immediate*. Think about the client's symptoms, and look for the *immediate* nursing action. Although the health care provider may need to be notified, this is not the immediate action. A health care provider's prescription is needed to administer oxygen. Furosemide is a diuretic and may or may not be prescribed for the client. Because no data in the question indicate the presence of pulmonary edema, option 3 is correct.

### ▶▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Heart failure is an inability of the heart to maintain adequate circulation to meet the metabolic needs of the body because of an impaired pumping ability. Pulmonary edema is a serious complication of heart failure in which fluid accumulates in the pulmonary system as a result of the impaired pumping ability of the heart. You will learn about heart failure and pulmonary edema when you learn about cardiac disorders. One thing to remember is that with all clients, airway is the priority, and that as the nurse, you need to take an immediate action that will assist the client to breathe easily. In many questions that ask for an immediate action, the action that identifies a client position is usually the immediate action, as long as the position is a correct one. For clients with respiratory or cardiac problems, elevation of the client's head will assist with breathing. Learn about heart failure and pulmonary edema, the signs and symptoms, and immediate nursing actions to take.



## CHAPTER 7

# Positive and Negative Event Queries



The questions presented on the National Council Licensure Examination (NCLEX®) are written to include either a positive or a negative event query. Primarily, the questions are written as positive event queries; however, you need to be prepared for either type.

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

One of the first things you should do when reading a test question is identify whether the query is positive or negative. If you do this, then you will look at the scenario in the appropriate context, and this will increase the likelihood of answering the question correctly.

## Positive Event Queries

### What Is a Positive Event Query?

A positive event query asks you to make a decision and select the option that is accurate or correct with regard to the data presented in the question. How will you know that the question includes a positive event query? Read the question carefully, and focus on the query of the question. The query contains words or phrases that indicate the question includes a positive event query.

### *What Words and Phrases Are Commonly Used in Positive Event Queries?*

Remember to read the question carefully and focus on the query of the question because the query contains words or phrases that indicate the question includes a positive event query. Several examples of queries and sample questions that indicate the question includes a positive event query are listed below.

#### Positive Event Queries: Words and Phrases

Early	Initial	Select all that apply
Late	First	Understands
Most likely	Immediately	Has been achieved
Highest	Most appropriate	Adequately tolerating
Best	Order of priority	

**Positive event query: Select an option that is positive or correct!**



### Positive Event Queries: Examples of Queries

- What is the **earliest** sign of a change in level of consciousness?
- Which is a **late** sign of shock?
- The nurse **most likely** expects to note which finding?
- Which individual is at the **greatest** risk for committing suicide?
- The nurse plans to administer how many milliliters of medication?
- What **best** action should the nurse implement?
- Which action should the nurse do **first**?
- What is the **initial** nursing action?
- Based on these findings, the nurse should **immediately** take which action?
- Which nursing action is **most appropriate**?
- List in order of **priority** the actions that the nurse should take.
- The nurse should make which **most appropriate** response to the client?
- Which intervention is of **highest priority** in the preoperative teaching plan?
- Select all that apply.
- Which statement made by the client indicates the **best** understanding of how to prevent transmission of the disease?
- Which outcome would indicate that the **most important** goal has been achieved for this client?
- The nurse determines that the client is adequately tolerating the procedure if which observation is made?

### Positive Event Queries: Sample Questions



#### SAMPLE QUESTION 1

**Case Event:** A client with suspected active lung tuberculosis is being scheduled for diagnostic tests.

**Positive Event Query:** The nurse anticipates that which diagnostic test will **most likely** be prescribed to confirm the diagnosis?

1. Chest x-ray
2. Skin testing
3. Sputum culture
4. White blood cell count

**ANSWER: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:

This question identifies an example of a positive event query. Note the **strategic words** *most likely*. Additional noteworthy words are *active* and *confirm*. Focus on the diagnosis presented in the question and the associated pathophysiology to assist in directing you to option 3. Remember that tuberculosis is an infectious disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, and the demonstration of tubercle bacilli using bacteriology is essential for establishing a diagnosis. It is not possible to make a diagnosis solely on the basis of a chest x-ray, and a positive reaction to a skin test indicates the presence of tuberculosis infection but does not show whether the infection is active or dormant. A white blood cell count may be increased, but it is not specifically related to the presence of tuberculosis. Remember to focus on the **strategic words!**

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Tuberculosis is an infectious disease of the lung caused by the acid-fast bacillus *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. It is generally transmitted by the inhalation or ingestion of infected droplets and usually affects the lungs, although infection of multiple organ systems can occur. It is a major public health concern because of its infectious nature. Because of the presence of the acid-fast bacillus in the lung, the way that the infection is confirmed is by its presence in the sputum. You may have already learned about this disease during your microbiology course, but will learn more about it when you study the respiratory system and infectious diseases. Be sure to learn about this infectious disease.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Scope of Practice

As the nurse, you will not be prescribing diagnostic tests, but you must understand preprocedure preparation and postprocedure care and the associated client teaching points. Nurses play an active role in the treatment process of assigned clients and are integral in the management and delivery of quality care.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Preparing for Clinical

As a nursing student, you will be expected to deliver safe care to your assigned clients. Be sure to know if your clients are on any type of transmission-based precautions, and institute these precautions in the care of your clients. This is important because it relates to infection control. Your clinical instructor will be observing to ensure that you follow these precautions!

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

In order to be successful in nursing school, you must be organized. Whether you are preparing for an exam, clinical, or other related assignment in nursing school, make sure you know what your instructor is expecting of you and plan ahead so you can meet these expectations!

**SAMPLE QUESTION 2**

**Case Event:** The nurse is preparing to administer digoxin (Lanoxin) 0.25 mg orally. The label on the medication bottle reads “digoxin (Lanoxin) 0.125 mg per tablet.”

**Positive Event Query:** How many tablets will the nurse plan to administer to the client?

**ANSWER: 2 tablets**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **subject**, calculating a medication dose. Note the words *plan to administer*. Focus on the information in the question and that a dose of 0.25 mg is prescribed. Use the formula for calculating a medication dose to answer the question. Always double-check the calculation, and verify your answer. Remember to use nursing knowledge, focus on the information in the case event, and identify what the question is asking (the **subject**).

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

In this question you need to know the formula for calculating a medication dose. You will learn about medication calculations in your fundamentals nursing course. The formula and the calculation for this question are as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Desired}}{\text{Available}} \times \text{Quantity} = \text{Number of tablet(s)}$$

$$\frac{0.25\text{mg}}{0.125\text{mg}} \times 1 \text{ tablet} = 2 \text{ tablets}$$

**SAMPLE QUESTION 3**

**Case Event:** Which nursing interventions apply in the care of an infant after a cleft lip repair (cheiloplasty)?

**Positive Event Query:** Select all that apply.

- 1. Position the child on the abdomen.
- 2. Observe for bleeding at the operative site.
- 3. Keep elbow restraints on the infant at all times.
- 4. Cleanse the suture line gently after feeding the infant.
- 5. Institute measures that will prevent vigorous and sustained crying.
- 6. Assist the mother with breastfeeding if this is the feeding method of choice.

**ANSWER: 2, 4, 5, 6**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **subject**, nursing interventions following a cleft lip repair. Eliminate option 3 first because of the **closed ended word**, *all*. Next, visualize each intervention, and think about its effect on the surgical repair to assist in selecting the correct interventions. Remember to focus on the **subject** and the surgical procedure!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

A cleft lip is a craniofacial malformation that results from the incomplete fusion of the embryonic structures surrounding the primitive oral cavity. It may be unilateral or bilateral. Closure of the lip defect is usually done between 6 and 12 weeks of age as long as the infant is free of any oral, respiratory, or systemic infection. Interventions in the postoperative period are directed toward protecting the operative site, preventing infection, and maintaining nutrition. Keeping these goals of care in mind will assist in answering the question correctly. You will learn about disorders of the newborn and infant in your newborn care and pediatric nursing courses. Learn about cleft lip repair and the important nursing interventions.

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Think about the goals of care for a client following a surgical procedure. Remember that interventions in the postoperative period are directed toward maintaining a patent airway, protecting the operative site, preventing infection, and maintaining nutrition. Keeping these goals of care in mind will assist in answering questions regarding care to the postoperative client.



### SAMPLE QUESTION 4

**Case Event:** The nurse is performing cardiopulmonary resuscitation on a 6-month-old infant.

**Positive Event Query:** Select the anatomical area that the nurse would palpate to assess circulation.



(Figure from Lowdermilk D, Perry A: *Maternity & women's health care*, ed 8, St Louis, 2004, Mosby.)

**ANSWER:** The answer is indicated by the circle marked with the X.

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:

Focus on the **subject**, assessing circulation in a 6-month-old infant. Visualize the body structure of a 6-month-old infant, and recall that the very short and fat neck of the infant makes the carotid pulse difficult to palpate. In an infant younger than 12 months, the brachial pulse is used to assess circulation. Remember to focus on the **subject!**

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You need to know where the arterial pulse points are located, but you also need to note that this question focuses on the 6-month-old infant. Use what you learned in anatomy class, fundamentals of nursing class, and physical assessment class. You will also learn more about the infant in your newborn care and pediatric nursing courses. Think about the anatomical structure of the 6-month-old infant, and remember that in an infant younger than 12 months, the brachial pulse is used to assess circulation.



### SAMPLE QUESTION 5

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a client who suddenly develops pulmonary edema.

**Positive Event Query:** Arrange the nursing interventions in the order that they should be performed. All options must be used.

#### Unordered Responses

Check lung sounds.  
Place oxygen on the client.  
Place the client in high-Fowler's position.  
Place the client on a cardiac monitor and pulse oximetry.  
Prepare to insert a Foley catheter and to administer furosemide (Lasix).  
Prepare the client for endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation.

#### Ordered Responses

Place the client in high-Fowler's position.  
Place oxygen on the client.  
Place the client on a cardiac monitor and pulse oximetry.  
Check lung sounds.  
Prepare to insert a Foley catheter and to administer furosemide (Lasix).  
Prepare the client for endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation.

**STUDY TIP****Preparing for Clinical**

When in clinical, make sure you understand and implement prioritizing guidelines. When caring for a client who is in the acute stage of a disease process, your instructor will expect you to be able to care for the client safely in terms of nursing actions to take in the event of an emergency.

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Positive event queries are primarily used in questions on the NCLEX exam.

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

Nursing school is very difficult. Surround yourself with people who are supportive and who will help you achieve your goals!

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Negative event queries are used less frequently on the NCLEX exam than positive event queries, but you need to be alert in noting these types of questions. It is unlikely that negative event queries will be presented in alternate item formats. You will most likely note negative event queries presented in a multiple-choice format.

**Negative event query: Select an option that is incorrect or inaccurate with regard to the data in the question!**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **subject**, care for the client with pulmonary edema. Think about the pathophysiology associated with acute pulmonary edema. This will assist in determining that positioning the client in high-Fowler's position would be the first action so that breathing will be easier for the client. Next, use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to guide your selections. This will assist in determining that administering oxygen to the client would be the next action, followed by placing the client on a cardiac monitor and pulse oximetry. Next check the lung sounds because this is an assessment or data collection procedure, and you would want to evaluate the status of lung sounds so that you will be able to determine the response to furosemide when it is administered. The Foley catheter is also inserted so the urine output can be assessed as a response to the furosemide. If there is no response to the treatment, then finally the client may need intubation and mechanical ventilation. Remember to focus on the **subject!**

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Pulmonary edema is a life-threatening event that can result from severe heart failure. In pulmonary edema, the left ventricle of the heart fails to eject sufficient blood, and pressure increases in the lungs because of the accumulated fluid. The client has severe dyspnea and struggles for air. Therefore, interventions are aimed at alleviating this severe dyspnea and removing the excess fluid from the body. You will learn about pulmonary edema in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders. Be sure to learn the signs and symptoms of heart failure and pulmonary edema and the associated interventions.

**Negative Event Queries****What Is a Negative Event Query?**

A negative event query asks you to make a decision and select the option that is inaccurate or incorrect with regard to the data presented in the question. How will you know that the question includes a negative event query? Read the question carefully, and focus on the query of the question. The query contains words or phrases that indicate the question includes a negative event query.

Generally, negative event queries are used in evaluation-type questions and evaluate the effectiveness of a treatment, procedure, medication, or teaching.

**What Words and Phrases Are Commonly Used in Negative Event Queries?**

Remember to read the question carefully and focus on the query of the question because the query contains words or phrases that indicate the question includes a negative event query. Examples of words and phrases are listed in the following box. In addition, examples of negative event queries and sample questions that indicate the question includes a negative event query are listed below.

**Negative Event Queries: Words and Phrases**

Least likely	Needs additional discharge instructions
Least priority	Have not yet been fully met
Least helpful	Needs additional medication administration instructions
Ineffective	Has not met the outcome criteria

### Negative Event Queries: Examples of Queries

Which individual is **least likely** to develop coronary artery disease?

Which client problem is of **least priority**?

Which approach by the nurse would be **least helpful** in assisting this client?

The nurse determines that the family **needs additional discharge instructions** if the nurse observed which action being done by the family?

Which outcome indicates to the nurse that the goals have **not yet** been fully met?

The nurse determines that the medication is **ineffective** if the client continues to experience which symptom?

The nurse determines that the client **needs additional medication administration instructions** if the client makes which statement?

The nurse determines that the client has **not met** the outcome criteria by discharge if which observation is made?

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

Negative event query type questions may ask about what you, as the nurse, need to follow up on in the care of your assigned clients. In other words, the question asks about what nursing actions need to be further implemented in order to ensure delivery of quality client care.

### Negative Event Queries: Sample Questions



#### SAMPLE QUESTION 1

**Case Event:** The nurse is reviewing the nursing care plan of a client hospitalized with sickle cell crisis.

**Negative Event Query:** Which client problem is the **least priority**?

1. Generalized pain
2. Signs of dehydration
3. Inability to deal with the disease
4. Lack of perfusion to peripheral tissues

**ANSWER: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:

Focus on the **strategic words** *least priority*. According to **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**, physiological needs are the priority, followed by safety needs, and then psychosocial needs. Using **Maslow's theory** will direct you to option 3 because this is the only option that addresses a psychosocial need. Remember to focus on the **strategic words** *least priority*!

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Sickle cell disease is a genetic disorder that results in chronic anemia, pain, organ damage, and disability. The client also has an increased risk of infection. In sickle cell disease, the hemoglobin contains an abnormal beta chain known as hemoglobin S. The hemoglobin S is sensitive to oxygen changes occurring on the red blood cells; when decreased oxygen states occur, the abnormal cells pile together distorting its shape, and these cells form a sickle shape, become rigid, and block blood flow. The client with sickle cell disease can have episodes of crises that occur in response to conditions that cause hypoxemia. This causes acute pain. The primary treatment for crisis consists of hydration, comfort measures with analgesics, and oxygen administration. You will learn about sickle cell disease when you study hematological problems. Be sure to learn about the causes of crisis and its treatment measures.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 2**

**Case Event:** The nurse has collected assessment data from four clients examined in the health care clinic.

**Negative Event Query:** Which client is **least likely** to develop coronary artery disease?

1. A client with a blood cholesterol level of 289 mg/dL
2. A client who is obese, is inactive, and has a stressful lifestyle
3. A client who has been smoking two packs of cigarettes daily for the past 20 years
4. A client with hypertension whose blood pressure has been maintained at 118/78 mm Hg

**ANSWER: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **strategic words** *least likely*. Recalling the risk factors associated with coronary artery disease will direct you to option 4. Option 4 is the only option that identifies a risk factor that has been modified and controlled. Remember to focus on the **strategic words** *least likely*!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Coronary artery disease affects the arteries that supply blood to the myocardium. When blood flow to the myocardium is partially or completely blocked, ischemia or infarction of the myocardium can occur and the client suffers a heart attack. Coronary artery disease is a major concern because it is a life-threatening disease; this is why great emphasis is placed on reducing or eliminating the modifiable risk factors such as obesity, high blood pressure, stress, smoking, and high cholesterol. You will learn about coronary artery disease when you study the cardiovascular system in medical-surgical nursing. Be sure to learn the associated risk factors and measures to reduce or eliminate them.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 3**

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a client with aphasia.

**Negative Event Query:** Which nursing action will be **ineffective** when communicating with the client?

1. Increasing environmental stimuli
2. Speaking with a normal volume or tone
3. Presenting one thought or idea at a time
4. Asking questions that can be answered “yes” or “no”

**ANSWER: 1**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **strategic word** *ineffective*. Recalling that the client with aphasia may need extra time to comprehend and respond to communication will direct you to option 1. Increased environmental stimuli may be distracting and disrupting to communication efforts. Remember to focus on the **strategic word** *ineffective*!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Aphasia is an abnormal neurological condition in which language function is disordered or absent because of injury to certain areas of the cerebral cortex. This condition is most often seen in a client with a stroke (brain attack). The aphasic client needs repetitive directions to understand and complete a task, and each task needs to be broken down into parts, with directions given one step at a time. The client needs time to process the information. This is why increased environmental stimuli can be disruptive to the communication process. You will learn about aphasia when you study the neurological system in your medical-surgical nursing course. Be sure to learn about the nursing interventions for a client with aphasia.

**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

Negative event queries are one of the hardest types of questions to answer correctly. Be on the lookout for the words or phrases that indicate the question contains a negative event query, and be sure to reread the question before submitting your answer!

**SAMPLE QUESTION 4**

**Case Event:** The nurse is collecting assessment data from a client who has been taking omeprazole (Prilosec) as prescribed.

**Negative Event Query:** The nurse determines that the medication is **ineffective** if the client continues to experience which symptom?

1. Dizziness
2. Heartburn
3. Headaches
4. Muscle pains

**ANSWER: 2**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **strategic word** *ineffective*. Recalling that omeprazole is a gastric acid pump inhibitor (most medication names that end with the letters *-zole* are gastric acid pump inhibitors) will direct you to option 2. Remember to focus on the **strategic word** *ineffective*!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Omeprazole (Prilosec) is a gastric acid pump inhibitor that is most often used to treat gastrointestinal disorders, such as esophagitis, gastroesophageal reflux disease, and certain stomach ulcers. Therefore, this medication will assist in relieving heartburn. You will learn about this medication when you study pharmacology and when you study gastrointestinal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course. Be sure to learn the action, intended effect, and client teaching points for this medication.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 5**

**Case Event:** A client treated for an episode of hyperthermia is being discharged to home from the emergency department.

**Negative Event Query:** The nurse determines that the client **needs additional discharge instructions** if the client states intentions to implement which measure?

1. Resume full activity level immediately
2. Increase fluid intake for the next 24 hours
3. Stay in a cool environment when possible
4. Monitor voiding for adequacy of urine output

**ANSWER: 1**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **strategic words** *needs additional discharge instructions*. Select the client statement that indicates that the nurse needs to provide further instructions. Resumption of full activity immediately is not helpful; rather, rest periods are indicated. Remember to focus on the **strategic words** *needs additional discharge instructions*!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Hyperthermia is a condition in which the client's body temperature is elevated above his or her normal range. It can be caused by various factors, such as a hot environment, vigorous activity, medications or anesthesia, increased metabolic rate, illness or trauma, dehydration, or the inability to perspire. Treatment involves lowering the body temperature and treating and eliminating its cause. You will learn about hyperthermia during your nursing program in many of your courses. Be sure to focus on the causes of the hyperthermia and its treatment.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 6**

**Case Event:** Malnutrition has been diagnosed for an unconscious client.

**Negative Event Query:** Which outcome indicates to the nurse that the goals for this client have **not** yet been met?

1. Stable weight
2. Total protein 4.5 g/dL
3. Intake equaling output
4. Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) 12 mg/dL

**ANSWER: 2**

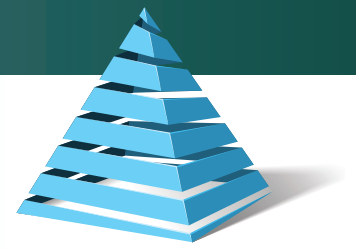
**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY:**

Focus on the **subject** *goals have not yet been met*. Because stable weight and equal intake and output are satisfactory indicators and the BUN is a normal value, option 2 is the answer to the question. Remember to focus on the **subject** *goals have not yet been met*!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Malnutrition indicates that the client's intake of nutrients is insufficient to meet the client's metabolic needs. This can be due to various causes such as, but not limited to, disease, injury, malabsorption, social factors, or cultural factors. Nursing interventions focus on addressing the nutritional deficits. You will learn about malnutrition in your nutrition or fundamentals of nursing course.





# Questions Requiring Prioritization

Be prepared! Many test questions in the National Council Licensure Examination (NCLEX®) require you to use the skill of prioritizing nursing actions. Most prioritizing questions are presented in the multiple choice format; however, you may be presented with a question in the prioritizing (ordered-response) format. Prioritizing questions address content in any nursing area. These types of questions can be difficult because when a question requires prioritization, all options may be correct, but you need to determine the correct order of action. Some test-taking strategies that you can use to assist in answering these questions correctly include noting the strategic words or strategic phrases that indicate the need to prioritize; the ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation; Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory; and the steps of the nursing process. Let's review the definition of prioritizing and these test-taking strategies.

**BE PREPARED!**

## Guides for Prioritizing

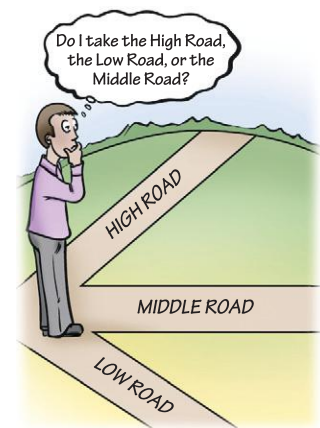
Strategic words or phrases  
 The ABCs  
 Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory  
 The steps of the nursing process  
 (clinical problem-solving process)

## Prioritizing

### What Does Prioritizing Mean?

*Prioritizing* means that you need to rank the client's problems in order of importance. It is important to read a question carefully and focus on the information in the question because the order of importance may vary depending on the subject of the question, the clinical setting, the client's condition, and the client's needs. It also is important to consider what the client deems a priority, which may be quite different from what the nurse thinks is most important. Remember to always consider what the client believes is the priority when planning care.

When you prioritize, you are deciding which client needs or problems require immediate action and which ones could be delayed until a later time because they are not urgent. As you read a question and are trying to determine which option identifies the nurse's priority, use the priority classification system to rank nursing actions as a high, intermediate (middle), or low priority. The description of these three types of classifications is listed below.



## Priority Classification System

*High Priority:* a client need that is life threatening or if untreated could result in harm to the client

*Intermediate (Middle) Priority:* a nonemergency and non-life-threatening client need that does not require immediate attention

*Low Priority:* a client need that is not directly related to the client's illness or prognosis, is not urgent, and does not require immediate attention

## STUDY TIP

### Lifestyle Planning

The guidelines for prioritizing should be applied to your lifestyle and your academic life. Determine what priorities you have at given times and attend to these first. The ability to prioritize will really help you succeed in nursing school!



## When Is It a Priority to Select the Option “Call the Health Care Provider”?

An important point to remember is that the NCLEX exam tests your competence and ability to care for a client and to implement necessary measures in a particular situation. It is critically important to read the question carefully, note the information in the question, and read all available options. If the question describes a client situation that is not life threatening and there is an option that directly relates to a nursing action relevant to the situation, then it is best to select that option and not the option that indicates to “call the health care provider.” Remember that there is usually an action that the nurse would take in a non-life-threatening situation before calling the health care provider. *NOTE:* For those nursing students who are studying to become licensed practical/vocational nurses rather than registered nurses, it is very important to report immediately any changes in a client's condition to the registered nurse.

If the question presents a client situation that is life threatening, then the correct option *may* be to call the health care provider. Unfortunately, this is not always clear-cut and can present a dilemma in your efforts to answer a question correctly. That is why it is so important to carefully read the question and all the options. Let us review some sample questions that illustrate when to and when not to select the option “call the health care provider.”



### SAMPLE QUESTION: When TO Select the Option “Call the Health Care Provider” as the Priority Action

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a client who just returned from the recovery room after a tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy. The client is restless, and the pulse rate is increased. The nurse continues to assess the client, but the client begins to vomit large amounts of bright red blood.

**Question Query:** What is the **immediate** nursing action?

1. Call the surgeon
2. Continue to assess the client
3. Obtain a flashlight and gauze
4. Check the client's blood pressure

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Read the question carefully, noting the **strategic word** *immediate*. Several other noteworthy words in this question include *restless*, *pulse rate is increased*, *large amounts*, and *bright red blood*. The **subject** of the question is that the client is actively bleeding and is exhibiting signs of shock (restlessness and increased pulse rate), indicating a life-threatening situation. Remember to always read each option carefully. In this situation and from the options provided, the nurse would contact the health care provider, and in this question, it is the surgeon. Options 2, 3, and 4 would delay necessary interventions needed in this life-threatening situation.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Whenever you note that a client is bleeding and the amount is large and bright red, you would become concerned because this indicates active bleeding. Active bleeding is a concern after any type of surgery, including a tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy, and indicates a potential life-threatening situation. You will learn about postoperative complications in your fundamentals of nursing course, and you will learn specifically about tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy in your pediatrics nursing course. Be sure to learn the postoperative complications and the immediate nursing interventions.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Preparing for Clinical

When caring for a pediatric client, family-centered care is always a focus. While the child is your primary client, the child's family is an additional client whose needs you must be sensitive to and address while caring for the child.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: When NOT TO Select the Option “Call the Health Care Provider” as the Priority Action**

**Case Event:** The nurse enters a client's room and finds the client slumped over in bed. The nurse quickly assesses the client and discovers that the client is not breathing and there is no pulse.

**Question Query:** The nurse should take which **immediate** action?

1. Sit the client upright in bed
2. Call the health care provider
3. Begin cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)
4. Place oxygen via a nasal cannula on the client

**ANSWER: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Read the question carefully, note the **strategic word** *immediate*, and focus on the **subject**—the client is not breathing and there is no pulse. Although the information in the question indicates a life-threatening situation, you need to read all options carefully. In this situation and based on the options provided, the nurse needs to intervene *immediately*. Although the health care provider needs to be called, the *immediate* nursing action would be to begin CPR. Options 1 and 4 are incorrect, because neither of these options will assist this client.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

It is important to read all the information in the question and focus on every word. Note that the client is not breathing and there is no pulse. Therefore you need to begin CPR. You were most likely required to obtain health care certification in basic life support and CPR before entering nursing school. Be sure to review these procedures, especially because you will be caring for clients during your clinical experiences in your nursing program.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: When NOT TO Select the Option “Call the Health Care Provider” as the Priority Action**

**Case Event:** A nurse is caring for a postoperative client who suddenly becomes restless.

**Question Query:** The nurse should take which **most appropriate** action?

1. Medicate the client for pain
2. Check the client's vital signs
3. Notify the health care provider
4. Talk to the client in a calm voice

**ANSWER: 2**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Read the question carefully, note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*, and focus on the **subject**—a postoperative client who becomes restless. No data in the question indicate that the client has pain; therefore, eliminate option 1. Because option 4 is a psychosocial action rather than a physiological one (physiological needs are the priority), eliminate that option using **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**. Recall that restlessness can be an early sign of shock. However, no data in the question indicate a life-threatening condition. Therefore, the nurse would gather more data about the client's condition and should *most appropriately* check the client's vital signs.

**STUDY TIP****Scope of Practice**

As a nurse, it is your responsibility to determine when a nursing action needs to be taken before calling the health care provider. Remember that most often, a nursing action is usually taken before notifying the health care provider.

*Strategic Words!***NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Remember that many if not most questions on the NCLEX exam will require you to prioritize. This means that you can expect that the options presented for the question will all be correct options and that you will need to use prioritizing skills to answer correctly. Remember to look for the strategic words in the event query to assist in answering correctly!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

One complication following surgery is the development of shock, which is usually due to bleeding or an excessive loss of blood during the surgical procedure. The nurse always monitors the postoperative client for signs of shock. One of the earliest signs of shock is restlessness. If restlessness is noted, the nurse would check the client's vital signs next. In shock, the nurse would note that the blood pressure decreases and the pulse rate increases. You will learn about shock as a postoperative complication in your fundamentals of nursing course. Be sure to focus on the signs of shock and the immediate nursing interventions.

**Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases****What Strategic Words or Strategic Phrases Indicate the Need to Prioritize Nursing Actions?**

Remember that when a question requires prioritization, all options may be correct; therefore, you need to determine the correct order of nursing action. Read the question carefully, and look for the strategic words or strategic phrases in the question that indicate the need to prioritize. Some common strategic words or strategic phrases that indicate the need to prioritize are listed below and are followed by sample questions to illustrate how some of these words or phrases are used in a question.

**Common Strategic Words That Indicate the Need to Prioritize**

Best	Initial	Next
Essential	Most appropriate	Order of priority
First	Most effective	Priority
Highest priority	Most important	Primary
Immediately	Most likely	Vital

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Prioritizing and Strategic Words**

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a hospitalized client with angina pectoris who begins to experience chest pain. The nurse administers a sublingual nitroglycerin (Nitrostat) tablet as prescribed, but the pain is unrelieved. The nurse checks the client's blood pressure and notes that it is stable.

**Question Query:** Which action should the nurse take *next*?

1. Reposition the client
2. Call the client's family
3. Contact the health care provider
4. Administer another nitroglycerin tablet

**ANSWER: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *next*, and focus on the **subject**—the client is experiencing chest pain. Recalling that for a hospitalized client the nurse would administer 3 nitroglycerin tablets 5 minutes apart from each other to relieve chest pain will assist in directing you to option 4. Repositioning the client will not alleviate pain associated with angina pectoris. The nurse would call the health care provider if 3 nitroglycerin tablets administered

5 minutes apart from each other did not alleviate the pain. There is no useful reason to call the client's family at this time.

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Angina pectoris refers to chest pain that is most often caused by a lack of oxygen to myocardial tissue and occurs as a result of atherosclerosis (clogged blood vessels) or spasm of the coronary arteries. The pain may be relieved by rest and vasodilation of the coronary arteries by medication, such as nitroglycerin. The usual protocol for administering nitroglycerin to a hospitalized client is to administer a total of 3 tablets, 5 minutes apart each, to relieve the chest pain. In other words, a nitroglycerin tablet is administered, and if the pain is not relieved in 5 minutes, another is administered. This is repeated in 5 minutes, 1 more time, if the pain is not relieved by the second nitroglycerin tablet. After administering 3 nitroglycerin tablets, if the pain is still unrelieved, the health care provider is called. It is also important for the nurse to monitor the client's blood pressure because nitroglycerin causes a drop in the blood pressure. You will learn about angina pectoris and nitroglycerin during your medical-surgical nursing course. Because this is a major, life-threatening disorder, it is critical that you learn about its signs and symptoms and immediate treatment.

### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

Allowing time for yourself and fun time with family and friends is a priority in your success in nursing school. Don't forget to include this important aspect of your life in your schedule on a regular basis! Planning ahead and setting realistic daily goals for yourself will ensure you are able to build this into your busy schedule.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Prioritizing and Strategic Words

**Case Event:** An infant with tetralogy of Fallot experiences a hypercyanotic spell during a blood draw.

**Question Query:** The nurse should take which action **first**?

1. Place the infant in a knee-chest position
2. Administer intravenous (IV) fluids as prescribed
3. Administer 100% oxygen by face mask as prescribed
4. Administer morphine sulfate subcutaneously as prescribed

**ANSWER: 1**

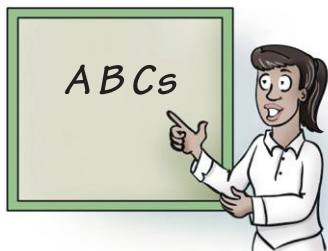
### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *first*, and focus on the **subject** of the question—a hypercyanotic spell. In questions that require you to determine the first nursing action, if 1 of the options indicates client positioning, that option may be the correct one. Positioning a client can relieve a symptom and is an intervention that takes only seconds to implement. Placing the infant in the knee-chest position reduces the venous return from the legs (which is desaturated) and increases systemic vascular resistance, which diverts more blood flow into the pulmonary artery. Note that the remaining options all require a health care provider's prescription. Your next action would be to administer oxygen to the infant. Remembering that morphine sulfate reduces spasm that occurs with these spells and that IV fluids are not always needed to treat these spells will assist in determining the order of priority for the remaining 2 interventions.

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Tetralogy of Fallot is a congenital cardiac anomaly that consists of 4 defects in the heart: pulmonary stenosis, ventricular septal defect, malposition of the aorta so that it arises from the septal defect or the right ventricle, and right ventricular hypertrophy. The treatment consists primarily of supportive measures and palliative surgical procedures until the child is old enough to tolerate total corrective surgery. It would be helpful to review the anatomy and physiology of the heart. In addition, you will learn about tetralogy of Fallot when you take your pediatrics nursing course.

Use the ABCs to prioritize!



## The ABCs

### What Are the ABCs, and How Will They Help Answer a Prioritizing Question?

The ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation—direct the order of priority of nursing actions. Airway is always the first priority in caring for any client. When a question requires prioritization, use the ABCs to help determine the correct option. If an option addresses maintenance of a patent airway, that will be the correct option. If none of the options address airway, move to B (breathing), followed by C (circulation). One exception is if the question asks about cardiopulmonary resuscitation. In these questions, remember to follow CAB—circulation, airway, and breathing—to prioritize. Some sample questions of how the ABC—airway, breathing, and circulation—strategy works are provided below.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: The ABCs

**Case Event:** A client with a diagnosis of cancer is receiving morphine sulfate 10 mg subcutaneously every 3 to 4 hours for pain.

**Question Query:** When preparing the plan of care for the client, the nurse should include which **priority** action?

1. Monitor stools
2. Monitor urine output
3. Encourage fluid intake
4. Encourage the client to cough and deep breathe

**ANSWER: 4**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *priority*, and focus on the **subject**—morphine sulfate. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—as a guide to direct you to the correct option. Recall that morphine sulfate suppresses the cough reflex and the respiratory reflex. Although options 1, 2, and 3 are components of the plan of care, the correct option addresses airway. Remember to use the **ABCs** to prioritize.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Morphine sulfate is an opioid analgesic that is used to alleviate pain. One of the primary concerns when a client receives morphine sulfate is that the medication depresses the respiratory and cough reflex. Therefore, the nurse focuses primarily on the client's respiratory status when administering morphine sulfate. You will learn about morphine sulfate in your medical-surgical nursing courses and in your pharmacology course.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: The ABCs

**Case Event:** The nurse is assessing the client's condition after cardioversion.

**Question Query:** Which observation would be of **highest priority**?

1. Blood pressure
2. Status of airway
3. Oxygen flow rate
4. Level of consciousness

**ANSWER: 2**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic words** *highest priority*, and focus on the **subject**—assessment after cardioversion. Nursing responsibilities after cardioversion include maintenance of a patent airway, oxygen administration, assessment of vital signs and level of consciousness, and dysrhythmia detection. Airway, however, is always the highest priority. Use the **ABCs** to direct you to option 2.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Cardioversion is a procedure in which an electrical shock is delivered to the heart with the use of a defibrillator. Cardioversion is used to slow the heart or to restore the heart to a normal sinus rhythm when medication therapy is ineffective. You will learn about cardioversion when you study cardiac disorders and dysrhythmias in your medical-surgical nursing course.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: The ABCs**

**Case Event:** The nurse is providing preoperative teaching to a client scheduled for a cholecystectomy.

**Question Query:** Which intervention would be of **highest priority** in the preoperative teaching plan?

1. Teaching leg exercises
2. Instructions regarding fluid intake
3. Teaching coughing and deep-breathing exercises
4. Assessing the client's understanding of the surgical procedure

**ANSWER: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic words** *highest priority*, and note the **subject**—preoperative plan of care. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to answer the question. Option 3 relates to airway. After cholecystectomy, breathing tends to be shallow because deep breathing is painful as a result of the location of the surgical procedure. Although all options are a component of the preoperative teaching plan, teaching the importance of performing coughing and deep-breathing exercises is the priority in the preoperative plan of care.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

A cholecystectomy is the removal of the gallbladder. You can use medical terminology skills to determine what cholecystectomy refers to: *cholecyst-* means gallbladder, and *-ectomy* means removal of. Next, using your knowledge of anatomy, think about the anatomical location of the gallbladder. Because of its close anatomical location to the diaphragm, it makes sense that the client would have difficulty coughing and deep breathing after surgery.

**Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs Theory****What Is Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs Theory, and How Will It Help Answer Prioritizing Questions?**

Abraham Maslow theorized that human needs are satisfied in a particular order, and he arranged human needs in a pyramid or hierarchy. According to Maslow, basic physiological needs, such as airway, breathing, circulation, water, food, and elimination needs, are the priority. These basic physiological needs are followed by safety and then the psychosocial needs, including security needs, love and belonging needs, self-esteem needs, and self-actualization needs, in that order.

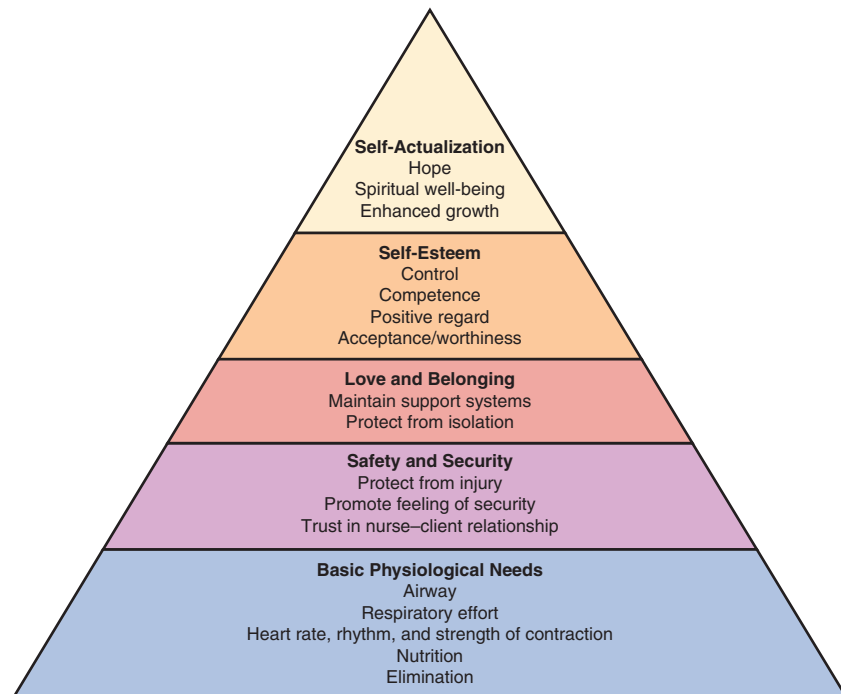
**STUDY TIP****Preparing for Clinical**

Apply Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory while you are in clinical, especially if you are assigned to more than one client. This will impress your clinical instructor and ensure delivery of quality client care!

Use Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory to prioritize!

Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory is a helpful guide when prioritizing client needs. When you are answering a question that requires you to prioritize, select an option that relates to a physiological need, remembering that physiological needs are the first priority.

If a physiological need is not addressed in the question or noted in one of the options, then continue to use Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory as a guide and look for the option that addresses safety. If neither physiological nor safety needs are addressed, then look for the option that addresses the client's psychosocial need. See the illustration of Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory for a full list of needs. The sample questions that follow point out how Maslow's theory can be used as a guide when answering questions that require prioritizing.



Nursing priorities from Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs. (From Harkreader H, Hogan MA, Thobaben M: *Fundamentals of nursing: Caring and clinical judgment*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2007, Saunders.)

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs**

**Case Event:** The nurse is admitting a client with a diagnosis of posttraumatic stress disorder to the mental health unit. The client is confused and disoriented.

**Question Query:** During the assessment, what is the nurse's **primary** goal for this client?

1. Explain the unit rules
2. Orient the client to the unit
3. Stabilize the client's psychiatric needs
4. Accept the client and make the client feel safe

**ANSWER: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *primary*, and focus on the **subject**—a client being admitted to the mental health unit. Using **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**, remember that when a physiological need does not exist, then safety needs take precedence. It is important to accept a client and make a confused and disoriented client feel safe. Orientation and explaining the unit rules are part of any admission process and are not specific to this client. Stabilizing psychiatric needs is a long-term goal.



**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Posttraumatic stress disorder is a mental health disorder characterized by an acute emotional response to a traumatic event that involved severe environmental stress. This event could include situations such as a natural disaster, a terrorist attack, military combat, physical torture, rape, experiencing or witnessing an automobile accident or other type of accident, or witnessing a shooting or murder. You will learn about posttraumatic stress disorder in your psychiatric/mental health nursing course.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs**

**Case Event:** The nurse has developed a plan of care for a client diagnosed with anorexia nervosa.

**Question Query:** Which client problem should the nurse select as the **priority** in the plan of care?

1. Malnutrition
2. Inability to cope
3. Concern about body appearance
4. Lack of knowledge about nutrition

**ANSWER: 1**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *priority*, and focus on the **subject**—the priority problem for a client with anorexia nervosa. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to recall that physiological needs are the priority. This will assist in directing you to option 1. Options 2, 3, and 4 are psychosocial needs and are of a lesser priority.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Anorexia nervosa is a disorder characterized by a prolonged refusal to eat. The client believes that he or she is obese, although the body weight is well below the individual's normal expected weight. It results in emaciation, amenorrhea, an emotional disturbance concerning body image, and the fear of becoming obese. The condition is primarily seen in adolescent girls and is usually associated with emotional stress or conflict such as anger, fear, or anxiety. Treatment includes measures to improve nutritional status and therapy to overcome the emotional conflicts associated with the disorder. You will learn about anorexia nervosa in your psychiatric/mental health nursing course.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs**

**Case Event:** The nurse is preparing to teach a client how to use crutches. Before initiating the lesson, the nurse performs an assessment on the client.

**Question Query:** The **priority** nursing assessment should include which focus?

1. The client's feelings about the restricted mobility
2. The client's fear related to the use of the crutches
3. The client's muscle strength and previous activity level
4. The client's understanding of the need for increased mobility

**ANSWER: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *priority*, and focus on the **subject**—teaching a client how to use crutches. Using **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**, remember that physiological needs take precedence over psychosocial needs. This should direct you to option 3.

Assessing muscle strength will help determine whether the client has enough strength for crutch walking and if muscle-strengthening exercises are necessary. Previous activity level will provide information related to the tolerance of activity. Options 1, 2, and 4 are also components of the assessment but relate to psychosocial needs.

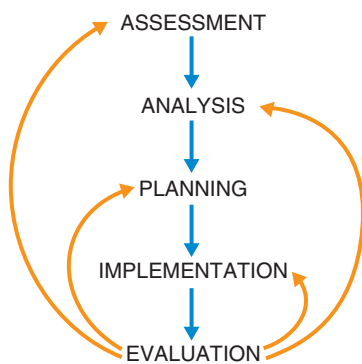
### **TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Crutches are devices that are usually made of wood or metal and that aid a person in walking. Crutches require the use of some upper and lower body muscle strength; otherwise, injury, such as a fall, can occur. It is also important for the nurse to determine the client's previous activity level in order to determine if crutches would be an appropriate assistive device. If the client's previous activity level was minimal and muscle strength is poor, crutches would not be an appropriate ambulatory device, and the client would be at risk for injury with their use. It is also important for the crutches to be fitted properly and for the individual to be taught how to safely walk using them to achieve a stable gait. You will learn about the use of crutches and other assistive devices for ambulation in your fundamentals of nursing course.

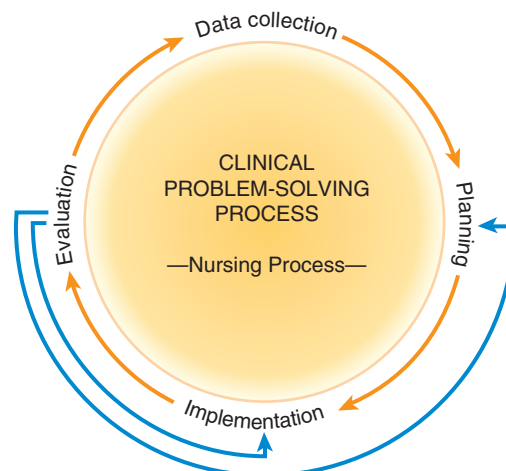
## **Nursing Process (Clinical Problem-Solving Process)**

### **How Will the Nursing Process (Clinical Problem-Solving Process) Help Answer Prioritizing Questions?**

The Test Plan for the NCLEX exam identifies the nursing process (clinical problem-solving process) as an Integrated Process. The nursing process provides a systematic method for providing care to a client. For the student studying to become a registered nurse, these steps include assessment, analysis, planning, implementation, and evaluation. For the student studying to become a licensed practical/vocational nurse, these steps include data collection, planning, implementation, and evaluation. These steps are usually followed in sequence, with assessment/data collection being the first step and evaluation being the last step. However, once the nursing process begins, it becomes a cyclical process. The steps of the nursing process can be used as a guide to help you when answering questions that require prioritization. Remember that it is always important to read the question carefully to determine what the question is asking. When a question asks for the first or initial nursing action, use these steps and look for an assessment/data collection action in one of the options. If an assessment/data collection action is not addressed in one of the options, then continue to use the nursing process in



Steps of the nursing process—RN nursing student.  
(From Ignatavicius D, Workman ML: *Medical surgical nursing: Patient-centered collaborative care*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2006, Saunders.)



Steps of the nursing process—PN nursing student.

a systematic order. See the accompanying illustration of the steps of the nursing process for the student studying to become a registered nurse, and the illustration of the steps of the nursing process (clinical problem-solving process) for the student studying to become a licensed practical/vocational nurse. A description for each step follows.

### Assessment/Data Collection

Assessment/data collection questions address the process of gathering subjective and objective data relative to the client, confirming that data, and communicating and documenting the data.

Remember that assessment/data collection is the first step in the nursing process. When you are asked to select your first and initial nursing action, look for an option that addresses assessment/data collection. If an option contains the concept of assessment or the collection of client data, it is best to select that option. Some strategic words to look for in the options that indicate an assessment/data collection action, are listed below. A sample question follows.

If an assessment/data collection action is not noted in one of the options, follow the steps of the nursing process (clinical problem-solving process) as your guide in selecting your initial or first action. *Possible exception to this guideline for prioritizing:* If the question presents an emergency situation, read carefully; in an emergency situation, an intervention may be the priority!

Use the steps of the nursing process (clinical problem-solving process) to prioritize!

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

Use of the nursing process is a really effective way to prioritize on nursing exams, in clinical, and when writing care plans. With enough practice, you will implement this process without even know you're doing it, so keep practicing!

### Strategic Words in Options That Indicate Assessment/Data Collection

Ascertain  
Assess  
Check  
Collect  
Determine  
Find out  
Identify  
Monitor  
Observe  
Obtain information  
Recognize



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Assessment/Data Collection

**Case Event:** A nurse is teaching a client with coronary artery disease about dietary measures that should be followed.

**Question Query:** During the session the client expresses frustration in learning the dietary regimen. The nurse should take which **initial** action?

1. Notify the health care provider
2. Continue with the dietary teaching
3. Identify the cause of the frustration
4. Tell the client that the diet needs to be followed

**ANSWER: 3**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *initial*, and focus on the **subject**—a nursing action. Use the **steps of the nursing process**. Of the options presented, the only assessment/data collection action is option 3. Options 1, 2, and 4 identify the implementation step of the nursing process. The initial action is to identify the cause of the frustration. Remember that assessment/data collection is the first step of the nursing process.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Coronary artery disease affects the arteries that supply blood to the myocardium. When blood flow to the myocardium is partially or completely blocked, ischemia or infarction of the myocardium can occur, and the client experiences a heart attack. Because coronary artery disease is life-threatening, great emphasis is placed on reducing or eliminating the modifiable risk factors, such as obesity, high blood pressure, stress, smoking, and high cholesterol. Dietary measures include limiting foods high in cholesterol. High-fat foods, such as fried foods, are high in cholesterol. Because cholesterol is also found in foods of animal origin, meats such as organ meats, beef, bacon, and sausage are high in cholesterol. You will learn about coronary artery disease when you study the cardiovascular system in medical-surgical nursing, and you will learn about the foods high in cholesterol when you study nutrition related to cardiovascular disorders. Be sure to learn about these foods that are high in cholesterol because you will need to teach your client with cardiovascular disease about limiting them in the diet.

**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

Analysis questions are higher-level questions and require analysis and application of learned knowledge in addition to determining the priority nursing action. In addition to basic knowledge, these questions require practice in order to perfect your ability to answer them correctly.

**Analysis**

Beware! For the student studying to become a *registered nurse*, analysis questions are the most difficult because they require understanding of the principles of physiological responses and require interpretation of the data on the basis of assessment. Analysis questions also require critical thinking and determining the rationale for therapeutic interventions that may be addressed in the question; therefore, many questions on the NCLEX-RN exam are analysis-type questions. Questions that address this step of the nursing process also may address the formulation of a plan of care and the communication and documentation of the results of the process of analysis. Remember to read the question carefully, identify the strategic words and the subject, and use the process of elimination to select the correct option. An example of an analysis-type question is provided below.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Analysis**

**Case Event:** The nurse is reviewing the laboratory results of an infant suspected of having pyloric stenosis.

**Question Query:** Which laboratory finding should the nurse **most likely** expect to note in this infant?

1. A blood pH of 7.50
2. A blood pH of 7.30
3. A blood bicarbonate of 22 mEq/L
4. A blood bicarbonate of 19 mEq/L

**ANSWER: 1**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic words** *most likely*, and focus on the **subject**—laboratory results. It is necessary to understand the physiology associated with pyloric stenosis and that metabolic alkalosis is likely to occur as a result of vomiting. Next, it is necessary to know which laboratory findings would be noted in this acid-base condition. The normal pH ranges from 7.35 to 7.45. In an alkalotic condition the pH is elevated. Analysis of these data will direct you to the correct option.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Pyloric stenosis is a condition in which a narrowing of the pyloric sphincter at the outlet of the stomach occurs. This results in an obstruction that blocks the flow of food into the small intestine. The condition primarily occurs as a congenital defect in newborns. The infant experiences forceful projectile vomiting, causing the loss of hydrochloric acid, which results in metabolic alkalosis in the infant. The condition is treated by surgical correction. You will learn about acid-base disorders in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course. You will also learn about pyloric stenosis in your maternity and newborn course and in your pediatrics nursing course.

**Planning**

Planning questions frequently address formulating a client plan of care. These questions require prioritizing client problems, determining goals and outcome criteria for goals of care, developing interventions, and communicating and documenting the plan of care. With regard to questions that address the planning step of the nursing process, keep two important points in mind. First, remember that this is a nursing examination, and the answer to the question most likely involves something related to the nursing plan rather than to the medical plan, unless the question asks what you anticipate the health care provider will prescribe. The second point to remember relates to questions that contain options listing client

problems and require you to prioritize them or to select the client problem of highest priority. In these questions, it is important to remember that actual client problems rather than potential or at-risk client problems will most likely be the priority. Read the information in the question carefully; this information will guide you to select the correct option in this type of question. An example of a planning type of question is provided below.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Planning

**Case Event:** The nurse is reviewing the plan of care for a client with a diagnosis of sickle cell anemia.

**Question Query:** Which client problem, if stated on the plan of care, should the nurse select as receiving the **highest priority**?

1. Dehydration
2. Nervousness about the disease
3. Embarrassment about appearance
4. Inability to cope with life-style limitations imposed as a result of the disease

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic words** *highest priority*, and focus on the **subject**—a client problem in the plan of care. To correctly answer this question, use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to prioritize, remembering that physiological needs come first. Using this guideline will direct you to option 1. *Dehydration* is a physiological need and is the priority client problem. Options 2, 3, and 4 are psychosocial needs and may or may not be a concern for the client, but remember that physiological needs are the priority.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Sickle cell anemia is a severe and chronic incurable anemic condition in which the abnormal hemoglobin called hemoglobin S (Hb S) results in distortion and fragility of the erythrocytes. It is characterized by crises in which the sickled cells clump and cause obstruction of the blood vessels. Joint pain, thrombosis, fever, lethargy, weakness, and splenomegaly occur. You may have learned about sickle cell anemia in your anatomy and physiology course. You will also learn more about this type of anemia in your medical-surgical nursing course and pediatrics course. Sickle cell anemia also may be discussed in your maternity nursing course because this type of anemia in a pregnant client places the client at risk for complications during the pregnancy.

### Implementation

Implementation questions address the process of organizing and managing care, counseling and teaching, providing care to achieve established goals, supervising and coordinating care, and communicating and documenting nursing interventions. Because the NCLEX exam tests your competence and ability to function as a professional nurse, many questions on the examination are implementation-type questions.

When you are presented with a question on NCLEX that requires you to determine what the nurse will do, there are two important points to keep in mind. The first point is that the only client that you need to be concerned about is the client in the question; remember that the client in the question is your only assigned client. This is an important point to bear in mind as you are trying to select the correct option.

The second important point to keep in mind when you are answering NCLEX questions is that you need to answer the question from an ideal and textbook perspective, not a reality perspective; you also need to answer the question as if the

You have only one client to be concerned about!

Answer the question from an ideal and textbook perspective!

Answer the question as if the nurse had all the time available to care for the client and all the resources needed at the client's bedside!

nurse has all the time available to care for the client and all the needed resources available at the client's bedside.

To illustrate these important points, let us look at the following sample questions.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Implementation

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a preoperative client who verbalizes a great deal of anxiety about the surgical procedure scheduled in 2 hours.

**Question Query:** Which action by the nurse would **best** alleviate the client's anxiety?

1. Stay with the client until he is brought to the operating room
2. Call the client's wife, and ask her to visit the client before surgery
3. Talk to the client for 15 minutes, and return shortly thereafter to check on the client
4. Tell the client that you will spend some time answering his questions as soon as you get your other tasks completed

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *best*, and focus on the **subject**—alleviating the client's anxiety. As you are reading the options, you may hesitate to select option 1 and may say to yourself, "I could never stay with a client for 2 hours. I would never get any of my other clients taken care of." Stop right there and remember that on the NCLEX exam, the only client that you are caring for is the client in the question. Therefore, option 1 is the *best* option.

#### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A preoperative client is a client who is either preparing for surgery or is waiting to be transferred to the operating room. Often these clients are anxious about the surgery, and the nurse is responsible for alleviating the anxiety. You will learn about the many ways to alleviate a client's anxiety, but one way is to be present and available for the client to answer questions if necessary and to provide comfort. Many times just the nurse's presence provides comfort to a client. You will learn about caring for the client having surgery in your fundamentals of nursing course, and you will also learn about the many measures that you can implement to alleviate a client's anxiety.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Implementation

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a client after a cardiac catheterization. The client suddenly reports a feeling of wetness in the groin at the catheter insertion site.

**Question Query:** The nurse checks the site, notes that the client is actively bleeding, and should take which **best** action?

1. Contacts the health care provider
2. Checks the client's peripheral pulse in the affected extremity
3. Dons a sterile glove and places pressure on the insertion site using sterile gauze
4. Dons a clean glove and places pressure on the insertion site with the gloved hand

**ANSWER: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *best*, and focus on the **subject**—a nursing action for a client who is bleeding. Active bleeding indicates the need for intervention and the application of pressure at the site of bleeding. This directs you to options 3 and 4 as the possible correct options. You may hesitate to select option 3 because you may say to

yourself, “I would not use the sterile gloves or gauze, because by the time I went to the treatment room, obtained these sterile items, and returned to the room, the client would have lost a critically large amount of blood.” Stop right there, and remember that on the NCLEX exam, you have all the resources needed and readily available at the client’s bedside. Because the catheter insertion site is an open area, the best option is to don a sterile glove and place pressure on the insertion site using sterile gauze.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A cardiac catheterization is a diagnostic procedure in which a catheter is introduced through an incision into a large blood vessel and threaded through the circulatory system of the heart. This procedure is primarily done to assess the status of the coronary arteries in the heart and to determine if any blockage is present and, if so, the extent of the blockage. Following the procedure the client is at risk for bleeding, infection, thrombophlebitis, and dysrhythmias (irregular heart beat patterns). You will learn about this important cardiac diagnostic procedure when you study cardiovascular disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

## Evaluation

Evaluation questions focus on comparing the actual outcomes of care with the expected outcomes and on how the nurse should monitor or make a judgment concerning a client’s response to therapy or to a nursing action. These questions also address evaluating the client’s ability to implement self-care, health care team members’ ability to implement care, and the process of communicating and documenting evaluation findings.

In an evaluation question, it is important to note if the question includes a negative event query. Look for the words or phrases that indicate a negative event query because they may be used in evaluation-type questions and ask for inaccurate information related to the subject of the question. (Words or phrases used in a negative event query are listed in Chapter 7.) Following is an example of an evaluation-type question.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Evaluation

**Case Event:** A client recovering from an exacerbation of left-sided heart failure had a problem with tolerating activity.

**Question Query:** The nurse determines that the client **best** tolerates mild exercise if the client exhibits which change in vital signs during activity?

1. Pulse rate increased from 80 to 104 beats/min
2. Oxygen saturation decreased from 96% to 91%
3. Respiratory rate increased from 16 to 19 breaths/min
4. Blood pressure decreased from 140/86 to 110/68 mm Hg

**ANSWER: 3**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *best*, and focus on the **subject**—the client’s ability to tolerate exercise. Use the process of elimination and nursing knowledge regarding normal vital sign values. Options 1 and 2 are incorrect, because they represent changes from normal to abnormal values. A decrease in blood pressure of more than 10 mm Hg could indicate an orthostatic hypotensive change and that the client is not tolerating the exercise. The only option that identifies values that remain within the normal range is option 3.

## STUDY TIP

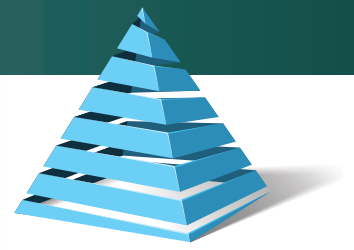
### Scope of Practice

Evaluation is performed by both registered nurses (RNs) and licensed practical nurses (LPNs) or licensed vocational nurses (LVNs). These types of questions ask about outcomes for care administered and teaching. In addition, when answering questions that differentiate between the role of RNs and LPNs/LVNs, remember that LPNs/LVNs do not assess or analyze data (they collect data and report the data to the RN). They also reinforce teaching initiated by the RN.

**▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

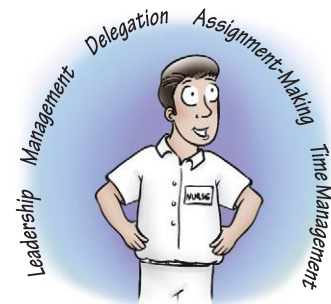
Heart failure is an inability of the heart to maintain adequate circulation to meet the metabolic needs of the body because of an impaired pumping ability. Because of the imbalance of the oxygen supply and demand that occurs in this disorder, activity intolerance can be a problem for the client. In the case of a client with heart failure, activity intolerance refers to an insufficient amount of physiological energy necessary to tolerate or complete the desired activity or exercise. You will learn about heart failure when you learn about cardiac disorders. One important thing to remember is that with all clients, airway is the priority.





# Leading and Managing, Delegating, and Assignment-Making Questions

The nurse is both a leader and a manager. As a leader and a manager, the nurse needs to assume many roles and responsibilities. Some of these roles include managing, organizing, and prioritizing care; making client care or related task assignments and delegating care; supervising care delivered by other health care providers; and managing time efficiently. The National Council Licensure Examination (NCLEX®) Test Plan identifies the content related to these roles and responsibilities in the Safe and Effective Care Environment Client Needs category. The Test Plan can be obtained at [www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org). It is important to review the information related to this content area to ensure that you are well prepared for questions regarding the roles and responsibilities of the nurse as a leader and a manager. This chapter reviews these roles and responsibilities of the nurse and other health care providers, including the licensed practical or vocational nurse and the unlicensed assistive personnel. This chapter also reviews the guidelines and principles related to delegating and assignment making, which are two important roles of the nurse. In addition, this chapter identifies guidelines for time management because managing time efficiently is a key factor for completing activities and tasks within a definite time period.



## Delegation and Assignment Making

### What Is Delegation?

Delegation is the process of transferring a selected nursing task in a client situation to an individual who is competent to perform that specific task. It involves sharing activities and achieving outcomes with other individuals who have the competency to accomplish the task. The nurse practice act and any other practice limitations, such as agency policies and procedures, define the aspects of care that can be delegated and the tasks and activities that need to be performed by the registered nurse, those that can be performed by the licensed practical nurse or licensed vocational nurse, and those that can be performed by an unlicensed assistive personnel. When delegating an activity, the nurse needs to determine the degree of supervision that the delegatee may require and provide supervision as appropriate.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Scope of Practice

When answering test questions related to delegation, remember that you must understand the scope of practice, experience level, and level of understanding of the person you are delegating to. Also remember that the nurse holds ultimate accountability for delegated tasks.

#### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

Many test questions on the NCLEX exam in the Safe and Effective Care Environment Client Needs category relate to the nurse's responsibilities regarding delegating care and assignment making, and the supervisory role of these responsibilities. You may also be presented with questions that require you to determine the priority of care for a client and for a group of clients.

**Delegation: Transferring a nursing task to an individual who is competent to perform the task.**



**Assignment Making:** Planning care activities for a client or a group of clients and determining who will provide the care or perform certain activities.



## STUDY TIP

### Preparing for Clinical

When in clinical, be sure you understand the policies and procedures specific to where you are practicing. There are certain guidelines that vary agency-to-agency, so when in doubt, check the agency policy and procedure manual. Apply this concept to the exams you take as well. An NCLEX exam question will not ask you something about a specific agency policy or procedure, because they may vary across institutions.

## What Is Assignment Making?

Assignment making is a specific activity that involves planning care activities for a client or a group of clients and determining specifically who will provide the care or perform certain activities. As with delegating, the nurse practice act and any other practice limitations, such as agency policies and procedures, which define the aspects of care, need to be used as a guide when planning assignments for activities and client care. Supervision of performance of the activity as appropriate also is important.



## What Are the Important Points to Keep in Mind When Delegating or Making Assignments?

When you are answering questions related to either delegating or assignment making, keep two important points in mind. First, even though a task or activity may be delegated to someone, the nurse who delegates the task or activity maintains accountability for the overall nursing care of the client. Remember that only the task, not the ultimate accountability, may be delegated to another.

The second point to keep in mind is that the NCLEX exam is a national examination. Therefore, use general guidelines, such as the nurse practice act, regarding what a health care provider can competently and legally perform to answer the question correctly. On NCLEX, avoid using agency policies and procedures and agency position descriptions to answer the question, unless the question provides information to do so, because they are specific to the agency.

Let us review two sample questions: one that illustrates the use of general guidelines related to delegating and assignment making and one that relates to specific agency policies and procedures.



## SAMPLE QUESTION: General Guidelines

**Case Event:** The nurse is planning client assignments for the day and has a licensed practical nurse (LPN) and an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) on the nursing team.

**Question Query:** The nurse **most appropriately** assigns which client to the licensed practical nurse?

1. A client with a tracheostomy who requires frequent suctioning
2. A client who requires the collection of urine for a 24-hour period
3. A client recovering from pneumonia who requires ambulation every 3 hours
4. A client who requires turning and repositioning every 2 hours and range-of-motion exercises every 4 hours

**ANSWER: 1**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic words** *most appropriately*. This question requires that you determine which client should most appropriately be assigned to the licensed practical nurse. No information in the question indicates the need to use agency policies, procedures, or position descriptions to determine the most appropriate assignment; therefore, use general guidelines such as the nurse practice act. As you read each option, think about and visualize the client's needs. The client described in option 1 has needs that cannot be met by the UAP. Remember that the health care provider needs to be competent and skilled to perform the assigned task or client activity.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You will learn about the specific roles and responsibilities of various health care providers in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn more specific content about these roles and responsibilities when you discuss leadership and management roles of the nurse. The important thing to remember is that the registered nurse is

educationally prepared to assume the highest level of responsibility. The licensed practical or vocational nurse can assume some responsibilities that are invasive, and the unlicensed assistive personnel can assume responsibilities that are noninvasive. A tracheostomy is a surgically created opening into the neck that provides an airway for a client who is unable to breathe through the upper airway. A client with a tracheostomy requires suctioning, which involves, as needed, the insertion of a tube that provides suction to remove secretions to maintain a clear airway. This is an invasive procedure, and thus a licensed nurse needs to be assigned to this client. The collection of urine, ambulating a client, and turning and repositioning and range-of-motion exercises are noninvasive procedures and thus can be assigned to unlicensed assistive personnel.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Specific Agency Policies and Procedures

**Case Event:** The licensed nurse employed in a hospital is assigning client care activities to an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP). The UAP is a first-semester senior nursing student and works at the hospital as a UAP part-time on weekends. The hospital position description for a nursing student who is employed as a UAP indicates that he or she may perform basic procedures learned in nursing school if supervised by a licensed nurse.

**Question Query:** Based on the hospital's position description, the licensed nurse assigns which **most appropriate** activity to this UAP?

1. Change a sterile abdominal dressing
2. Hang a unit of red blood cells on a client
3. Insert an intravenous catheter into an infant
4. Administer digoxin (Lanoxin) by intravenous (IV) push

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

In this question, information is provided that directs you to use the hospital's position description to determine the most appropriate activity to assign to the UAP. The **strategic words** in the question are *most appropriate*. Based on the data provided in the question and in the options, it is best to select the least invasive activity. Also, recall that blood administration and medication administration must be performed by a licensed health care provider. Inserting an IV catheter into an infant is an invasive procedure that needs to be performed by a health care provider specially trained to perform it. Remember that the health care provider needs to be competent and skilled to perform the assigned task or client activity.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

When answering assignment making questions, remember to focus on who the task is being assigned to and remember to select the least invasive task if the health care provider is not licensed. Hanging red blood cells means that the client will receive blood by the IV route, and this is a highly invasive procedure. Inserting an IV catheter and administering digoxin (a cardiac medication) intravenously are also highly invasive procedures that need to be performed by licensed personnel. Changing a sterile dressing is also invasive to some degree and requires education in its performance to maintain sterility.

#### STUDY TIP

##### Lifestyle Planning

Many nursing students choose to do nursing internships or externships while in nursing school. This is an excellent opportunity and provides valuable experience for nursing students and for graduates. If your schedule permits, you should explore the availability of these positions!



### What Principles and Guidelines Can Be Used to Delegate and Make Assignments?

If you are presented with a question on an examination that requires you to delegate or plan assignments for a group of clients, certain principles and guidelines can be used to assist in answering the question correctly. As you are using the process of elimination to determine the correct option, keep these principles and guidelines in mind. Also, read each option carefully. Think about and visualize the client's needs to



determine which health care provider could best meet the client's needs. Following is a review of these principles and guidelines for delegating and assignment making.

### **Principles and Guidelines for Delegating and Assignment Making**

1. Always ensure client safety—never select an option that could potentially harm the client.
2. Focus on the subject of the question and what the question is asking; for example, is the question asking you to delegate to another registered nurse, a licensed practical or vocational nurse, or unlicensed assistive personnel?
3. Determine which tasks or client care activities can be delegated and to whom and match the task to the delegatee on the basis of the nurse practice act, agency policies and procedures, or position descriptions as appropriate; that is, think about the activities that the delegatee can safely and legally perform.
4. Think about individual variations in work abilities, and determine the degree of supervision that may be required; for example, if the question asks you to delegate or assign a client care activity to a new graduate, then you must think about the need for providing adequate supervision and the need to teach the new graduate about the assigned activity.
5. Always provide directions to the delegatee that are clear, concise, accurate, and complete and that validate the person's understanding of the directions and expectations; that is, ask the delegatee to verbalize the procedure for performing the task or activity that was delegated.
6. Communicate a feeling of confidence to the delegatee, and provide feedback promptly after the task or activity is performed regarding his or her performance; ensure that the delegatee completed the task, and evaluate the outcome of the care provided.
7. Provide the delegatee with a timeline for completion of the task or activity; for example, if a client is scheduled for a diagnostic test and an activity or task needs to be completed before the test, it is important to identify this timeline to the delegatee.
8. Maintain continuity of care as much as possible when assigning client care; for example, it is best for the client to be cared for by a nurse with whom the client has developed a therapeutic relationship. However, it is also important to remember that in some client situations, maintaining continuity of care would be unfavorable with regard to ensuring a safe environment for a health care provider, such as with the client with an infectious disease or the client with a radiation implant.

#### **STUDY TIP**

##### **Student-to-Student**

As a nursing student, when you are in clinical, be sure that if client care activities are delegated to you, you are comfortable and experienced with performing the task safely and effectively. Even after graduation, this concept is important to keep in mind. If you are unfamiliar with an assigned task, be certain to ask an experienced nurse. Remember client safety is the priority!



#### **SAMPLE QUESTION: Assignment Making**

**Case Event:** The nurse is planning the client assignments for the day and is reviewing client data and the needs of the clients on the nursing team.

**Question Query:** To maintain continuity of care, the nurse should ensure that which client is cared for by the nurse who cared for the client on the previous day?

1. A client with active tuberculosis
2. A client with herpes zoster (chickenpox)
3. A client with a cervical radiation implant
4. A client recently diagnosed with inoperable cancer

**ANSWER: 4**

#### **TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Focus on the **subject** of the question—to maintain continuity of care. Read each option carefully, keeping 2 points in mind, the client's needs and ensuring a safe environment for the health care provider. The clients described in options 1, 2, and 3 can potentially present a risk to the health care provider. The client in option 4 will likely have psycho-

social needs that can best be met if the client is cared for by a health care provider with whom the client has developed a therapeutic relationship.

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Tuberculosis is an infection caused by an acid-fast bacillus known as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and usually affects the lungs, although infection of multiple organ systems can occur. In its active stage it is highly contagious and is transmitted by the inhalation of infected droplets. Herpes zoster (chickenpox) is an acute and highly contagious viral disease caused by the varicella zoster virus. This disease is transmitted by direct contact with skin lesions or by droplet spread from the respiratory tract of an infected person. A radiation implant is a device that is placed internally into a client to treat cancer. This type of therapy is also known as brachytherapy. When a radiation implant is in place, the client is strictly isolated because the implant emits radiation and can affect and be harmful to other individuals. Cancer, also known as a neoplasm, is an abnormal growth. It is characterized by the uncontrolled growth of cells that invades surrounding tissue and spreads (metastasizes) to other parts of the body. Cancer is not a contagious disorder. You will learn about the spread of infectious diseases in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about tuberculosis and radiation implants in your medical-surgical nursing course and about herpes zoster (chickenpox) in your pediatrics course.

## Who Can Do What?

There are some general guidelines to follow when answering a question that requires determining what tasks and client care activities should be assigned to which health care provider. Remember that these are general guidelines, and the general guidelines are the ones that you need to follow when taking a national examination. These guidelines (listed below) are followed by sample questions in both multiple-choice and multiple-response formats.

### Unlicensed Assistive Personnel (UAP)

Generally, noninvasive tasks and basic client care activities can be assigned to an unlicensed assistive personnel. Some of these tasks and activities include:

- Ambulation
- Basic skin care
- Bathing
- Client transport
- Grooming
- Hygiene measures
- Positioning
- Range-of-motion exercises
- Some specimen collections, such as urine or stool

### Licensed Practical or Vocational Nurse

In addition to the tasks that the UAP can perform, a licensed practical or vocational nurse can perform certain invasive tasks and client care activities. Some of these additional tasks include:

- Administering oral medications
- Administering intramuscular injections
- Administering subcutaneous injections
- Administering intradermal medications
- Administering medications by the rectal, vaginal, eye, ear, nose, or topical routes
- Administering medications by a gastrointestinal tube
- Administering some selected IV piggyback medications
- Changing dressings
- Irrigating wounds
- Monitoring an IV flow rate
- Suctioning



### STUDY TIP

#### Preparing for Clinical

As a student in clinical, other health care providers on the nursing unit can be very valuable resources to you during your rotations. Ask questions and ask them to assist with tasks and you will learn a lot about client care.

Teaching about basic hygienic and nutritional measures

Urinary catheterization

Using the nursing process (clinical problem-solving process): data collection, planning, implementing, and evaluating

### Registered Nurse

The registered nurse is competent to perform many tasks and client care activities. In addition to the tasks and client care activities that a licensed practical or vocational nurse can perform, the registered nurse can perform numerous other procedures. To assist you in differentiating the role of the registered nurse and the licensed practical or vocational nurse, some tasks and client care activities that only the registered nurse can perform are:

Administering IV medications by continuous IV, by piggyback, and by IV push

Initiating client teaching

Using the nursing process: assessment, analyzing data, planning, implementing, and evaluating



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Multiple Response

**Case Event:** The nurse is planning the client assignments for the day and has a registered nurse, a licensed practical nurse, and unlicensed assistive personnel on the nursing team.

**Question Query:** Which clients can be safely assigned to the licensed practical nurse?

Select all that apply.

- 1. A client scheduled for an ultrasound of the heart
- 2. A client with an open abdominal wound who requires wound irrigations every 3 hours
- 3. A client with a spinal cord injury who requires intermittent urinary catheterization every 4 hours
- 4. A client newly diagnosed with diabetes mellitus who requires teaching about insulin administration
- 5. A client with pulmonary edema who was admitted to the hospital 2 hours ago and requires frequent respiratory assessments
- 6. A client with a central IV line who is receiving parenteral nutrition and lipids and has a health care provider's prescription to receive 2 units of packed red blood cells

**ANSWER: 1, 2, 3**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Focus on the **subject** of the question—a client assignment to a licensed practical nurse. Use general principles and guidelines to assist in answering the question correctly. Think about and visualize the client's needs, and determine whether the licensed practical nurse can competently and legally perform activities to meet these needs. Initial teaching about insulin administration needs to be done by a registered nurse. Client assessment is done by the registered nurse; however, the licensed practical nurse can collect data. A client with a central IV line who needs to receive blood transfusions needs to be cared for initially by a registered nurse. In addition, this client has complex needs with regard to the central IV line because the client is also receiving parenteral nutrition and lipids and has a prescription to receive a blood transfusion. Remember that the health care provider needs to be competent and skilled to perform the assigned task or client activity.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

An ultrasound of the heart is a noninvasive procedure in which the heart chambers and valves are visualized and examined for abnormalities. There is no client preparation for the procedure, and the procedure is painless for the client. Wound irrigations may be prescribed for certain clients who have wound infections or are at risk for a wound infection. This procedure requires sterile technique and cleansing of the wound with a sterile solution, such as normal saline, or another type of solution as prescribed by the health care provider. A spinal cord injury occurs as a result of a traumatic disruption of the spinal cord, such as from a car or other type of accident or from some sort of violent

impact. Such trauma can cause varying degrees of paralysis; depending on the level of injury in the spinal cord, some individuals lose the ability to urinate on their own. As a result these individuals require urinary catheterization (insertion of a tube to drain the bladder), an invasive procedure. Diabetes mellitus is a disorder of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism that occurs primarily as a result of a deficiency or complete lack of insulin secretion by the beta cells of the pancreas or resistance to insulin. Many clients with diabetes mellitus require insulin (although some may be controlled with oral medications). Insulin needs to be administered by subcutaneous injection, and these clients need to learn how to properly administer the insulin. In addition to insulin, diet and exercise are important components of management of the disease. Heart failure is an inability of the heart to maintain adequate circulation to meet the metabolic needs of the body because of an impaired pumping ability. Pulmonary edema is a serious complication of heart failure in which fluid accumulates in the pulmonary system as a result of the impaired pumping ability of the heart. A client with pulmonary edema requires frequent respiratory assessments. The registered nurse is the health care provider who is responsible for client assessment. A central IV line is one that is inserted into a central vein, usually the subclavian vein. Clients with this type of IV line can receive solutions such as parenteral nutrition (a solution containing a high concentration of nutrients and glucose) and lipids (fat emulsion to prevent fatty acid deficiency) through the line. Red blood cells, usually administered to a client with anemia, can also be administered through a central IV line, and a registered nurse is responsible for administering the blood transfusion. You will learn about these client conditions in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Multiple Choice

**Case Event:** The nurse is planning client assignments for the day and needs to assign 4 clients. There is a registered nurse, a licensed practical nurse, and 2 unlicensed assistive personnel on the nursing team.

**Question Query:** Which client should the nurse **most appropriately** assign to the registered nurse?

1. A client requiring a bed bath
2. A client who requires frequent ambulation
3. A client with a right above-the-knee amputation who requires a dressing change
4. A client who was admitted to the hospital during the night after experiencing an acute asthma attack

**ANSWER: 4**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic words** *most appropriately*, and focus on the **subject** of the question—a client assignment to a registered nurse. Use general principles and guidelines to assist in answering the question correctly. Think about and visualize the client's needs. The client who was admitted to the hospital during the night after experiencing an acute asthma attack should most appropriately be assigned to the registered nurse, because this client would require frequent respiratory assessments. The unlicensed assistive personnel can most appropriately give a bed bath and ambulate a client. The licensed practical nurse can perform dressing changes. Remember that the health care provider needs to be competent and skilled to perform the assigned task or client activity.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Asthma is a respiratory disorder that is characterized by recurring episodes of difficulty breathing (dyspnea), wheezing lung sounds, constriction of the bronchi, coughing, and the production of mucoid bronchial secretions. Acute attacks can occur that require aggressive treatment to maintain a patent airway. These clients require frequent respiratory

assessment that needs to be done by a registered nurse. You will learn about asthma in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory problems. You will also learn about asthma in your pediatrics nursing course. You will learn about the procedure for giving a client a bed bath (bathing a client while the client is in bed) and will learn about the safe procedure for ambulating a client during your fundamentals of nursing course. These are noninvasive procedures and can therefore be assigned to unlicensed assistive personnel because these health care providers are trained to perform these procedures safely. A right above-the-knee amputation means that the client underwent a surgical procedure in which the right limb to the level above the knee was surgically removed. This client requires dressing changes, which are an invasive procedure that requires sterile technique. The licensed practical or vocational nurse is trained to perform sterile dressing changes. You will also learn about the procedure for changing sterile dressings in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Multiple Choice

**Case Event:** The nurse is planning the client assignments for the day.

**Question Query:** Which assignment is **most appropriate** for the unlicensed assistive personnel?

1. A client requiring colostomy irrigation
2. A client receiving continuous tube feedings
3. A client who requires stool specimen collections
4. A client with difficulty swallowing food and fluids

**ANSWER: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*, and focus on the **subject** of the question—a client assignment to an unlicensed assistive personnel. Use general principles and guidelines to assist in answering the question correctly. Think about and visualize the client's needs, and determine whether the unlicensed assistive personnel can competently and legally perform activities to meet these needs. In this situation the most appropriate assignment for an unlicensed assistive personnel would be to care for the client who requires stool specimen collections. Colostomy irrigations and tube feedings are not performed by unlicensed assistive personnel. The client with difficulty swallowing food and fluids is at risk for aspiration. Remember that the health care provider needs to be competent and skilled to perform the assigned task or client activity.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A colostomy is the surgical creation of a stoma (an artificial anus) on the abdominal wall that allows for the elimination of feces (bowel contents). This is created for the client with a bowel tumor who is experiencing bowel obstruction or for the client with a tumor or other disorder who requires removal of part of the colon. The colostomy may require irrigations to empty the content of the colon. This is an invasive procedure that can be performed by the licensed practical or vocational nurse or the registered nurse. Tube feedings involve the administration of liquid food to a client through a tube placed in the client's stomach or other area of the client's gastrointestinal tract. Because this procedure places that client at risk for aspiration (breathing in fluid or food into the lungs resulting in a blocked airway), a licensed nurse needs to perform this procedure. Likewise, a client having difficulty swallowing food and fluids is at risk for aspiration and requires care from a licensed nurse. The collection of stool specimens is a noninvasive procedure, and therefore unlicensed assistive personnel can perform this procedure. You will learn about caring for these types of clients in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.



## Time Management

### What Is Time Management, and Why Is It Important?

Time management is a technique used by the nurse to assist in completing tasks within a definite period. It involves learning how, when, and where to use one's time and involves establishing personal goals and time frames. Time management requires an ability to anticipate the day's activities, to combine activities when possible, and to avoid being interrupted by nonessential activities. It also involves efficiency in completing tasks quickly and thoroughly and effectiveness in deciding on the most important task to do and doing it correctly. The ability to manage time efficiently is important to complete tasks and client care activities within a reasonable time frame. In many client care situations, time management requires prioritizing. The nurse needs to be skilled in planning time resourcefully and needs to assist other health care providers with time management. Some principles and guidelines to use to assist in managing time efficiently are listed below.

### Principles and Guidelines of Time Management

Following is a list of the principles and guidelines of time management:

1. Identify tasks, obligations, and client care activities and write them down.
2. Organize the workday; identify which tasks and client care activities must be completed in specified time frames.
3. Prioritize client needs.
4. Anticipate the needs of the day, and provide time for unexpected and unplanned tasks or client care activities that may arise.
5. Focus on beginning the daily tasks by working on the most important first, while keeping goals in mind; look at the final goal for the day, which will help break down tasks into manageable parts.
6. Begin client rounds at the beginning of the shift, assessing/collecting data on each assigned client.
7. Delegate tasks when appropriate.
8. Keep a daily hour-by-hour log to assist in providing structure to the tasks that must be accomplished, and cross tasks off the list as they are accomplished.
9. Use hospital and agency resources efficiently, anticipating resource needs and gathering the necessary supplies before beginning the task.
10. Organize paperwork, and continuously document task completion and necessary client data throughout the day.
11. At the end of the day, evaluate the effectiveness of time management.



### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

Time management techniques can be applied to your study habits as well. Look at your class schedule and map out when you have to be in class and any other obligations you have that you know are times you will be unable to study. From here, set specific time schedules that you plan to use to study. This will help you stay organized and will ensure success in nursing school!

**Time Management: The ability to manage time efficiently in order to complete tasks and client care activities within a reasonable time frame.**

#### Time Management

Think!  
Organize!  
Plan!  
Prioritize!

### SAMPLE QUESTION: Prioritizing and Time Management

**Case Event:** The nurse on the day shift is assigned to care for 4 clients.

**Question Query:** Following report from the night shift, which client should the nurse plan to assess/collect data from **first**?

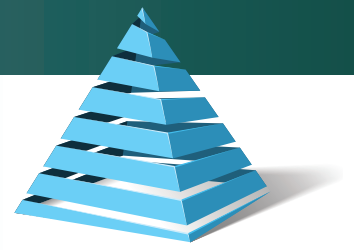
1. Client scheduled for a cardiac catheterization at 10:00 AM
2. Client scheduled to have an electrocardiogram (ECG) at 9:00 AM
3. Client with pulmonary edema who was treated with furosemide (Lasix) at 5:00 AM
4. Client newly diagnosed with diabetes mellitus who is scheduled for discharge to home

**ANSWER: 3****TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *first*, and focus on the **subject**—which client the nurse plans to assess/collect data from first. This question describes a situation in which the nurse needs to prioritize and manage his or her time with regard to the assigned clients. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to answer the question. Airway is always a high priority; therefore, the nurse should assess and collect data from the client with pulmonary edema who was treated with furosemide (Lasix) at 5:00 AM first. The nurse should next assess/collect data from the client scheduled for the cardiac catheterization because this client will require preprocedural preparation. The client scheduled for discharge should be attended to next because there may be discharge needs that require attention. The client scheduled for an ECG can be checked last.

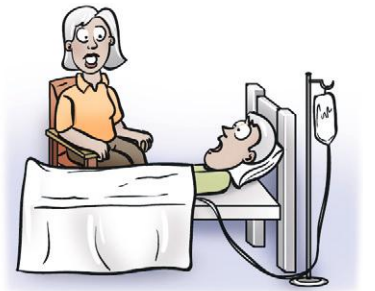
**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Heart failure is an inability of the heart to maintain adequate circulation to meet the metabolic needs of the body because of an impaired pumping ability. Pulmonary edema is a serious complication of heart failure in which fluid accumulates in the pulmonary system as a result of the impaired pumping ability of the heart. The client is treated with a diuretic, which is a medication that will result in an increased urine output, thus ridding the body of the excess fluid that accumulated in the pulmonary system. Furosemide (Lasix) is a diuretic. A major concern for the client with pulmonary edema is airway and breathing, so this is the reason why assessing/collecting data from this client is the priority. A cardiac catheterization is a diagnostic procedure in which a catheter is introduced through an incision into a large blood vessel and threaded through the circulatory system of the heart. This procedure is primarily done to assess the status of the coronary arteries in the heart and to determine if any blockage is present and if so, the extent of the blockage. The client requires some preprocedural preparation, such as ensuring informed consent has been obtained, checking for client allergies, obtaining height and weight and vital signs and noting the quality and presence of peripheral pulses, ensuring that an IV line is inserted, client teaching, and administering prescribed medications. Because this procedure is scheduled for 10:00 AM, this client can be assessed second. Diabetes mellitus is a disorder of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism that occurs primarily as a result of a deficiency or complete lack of insulin secretion by the beta cells of the pancreas or resistance to insulin. Insulin therapy or oral medications, diet therapy, and an exercise regimen are important components for management of the disease to prevent complications, and the nurse needs to ensure that the client has been taught about management and understands the treatment prescribed for the disorder. Because the client is scheduled for discharge it is important that the nurse ensure that the client's needs are met and that the client understands the prescribed treatment. Therefore, in this situation, this client is the nurse's third priority. An ECG is a diagnostic test that is performed using a device that records the electrical activity of the myocardium (heart) and detects the transmission of the cardiac impulse through the tissues of the heart muscle. This test can diagnose specific abnormalities of the heart. It is a noninvasive test that requires no specific preparation except for explaining the procedure to the client. Therefore, in this situation, this client would be the nurse's last priority.



# Communication Questions

Communication is a process in which information is exchanged, either verbally or nonverbally, between two or more individuals. According to the National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN), an Integrated Process of the Test Plan is a process that is fundamental to the practice of nursing and is incorporated throughout the Client Needs categories of the Test Plan. In the National Council Licensure Examination (NCLEX®) Test Plan, the NCSBN identifies the concept of communication as a component of one of the Integrated Processes. In addition, in the Psychosocial Integrity category of Client Needs, therapeutic communication and cultural awareness/cultural influences on health are listed as content that is tested on the NCLEX exam. Therefore, it is likely that you will be presented with questions related to the communication process. This chapter reviews the guidelines to follow when answering communication questions and identifies various cultural aspects to consider when communicating and caring for clients. Several sample questions are included to illustrate how these guidelines are used.



## STUDY TIP

### Preparing for Clinical

As a nursing student, one thing your instructor will expect is that you have the ability to communicate with your assigned clients. Become very familiar with therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques before your first clinical experience!

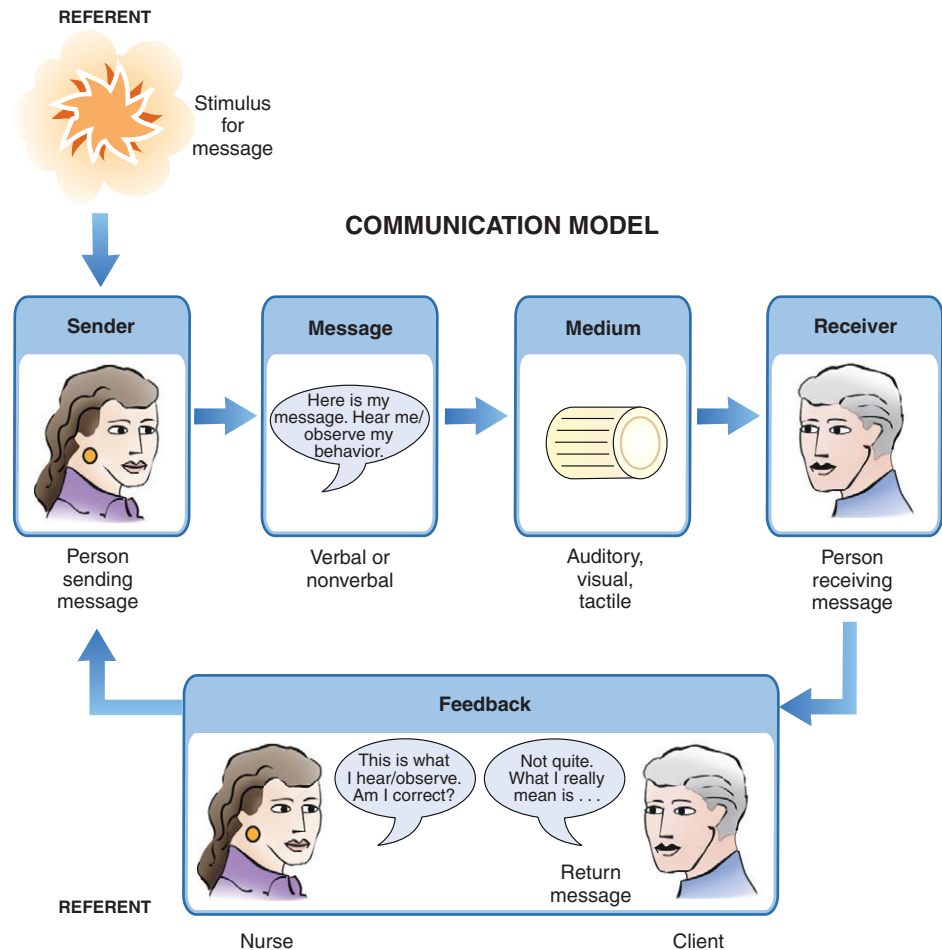
## How Are Communication Concepts Tested in a Question?

Communication is an important characteristic of the nurse–client relationship. Therefore, test questions that refer to the concept of communication may address a client situation in any clinical setting and any nursing care area.

When we think about communication concepts and the nurse–client relationship, we usually visualize an interaction between the nurse and the client. Although this is an accurate visualization, it is important to broaden our thinking with regard to the communication process and the concepts that are tested on the examination. Test questions not only address the communication process between the nurse and the client, but also the process between the nurse and a client's family member or significant other, or the nurse and another member of the health care team, such as another nurse, unlicensed assistive personnel, or health care provider. For example, you may be asked about how you would respond to a staff member who makes an inappropriate statement or how you would respond to a health care provider who is demanding. Therefore, most questions that test the concept of communication relate to how the nurse should respond to the person with whom he or she is communicating.

**NCLEX® EXAM TIP**

Communication questions may address client situations in the adult health area, the maternity area, the pediatric area, or the mental health area in settings such as the hospital, clinic, health care provider's office, or other health care setting. In addition, these questions may identify a client from a culture different from your own, and you will need to consider cultural differences in order to answer the question correctly.



Communication model. (From Varcarolis EM: *Foundations of psychiatric mental health nursing*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2002, Saunders.)



## What Guidelines Can Be Used to Answer Communication Questions?

The four primary guidelines to use when answering communication questions are as follows:

1. Use therapeutic communication techniques to answer communication questions because of their effectiveness in the communication process. As you read the question and each option, find the option that indicates the use of a therapeutic communication technique.
2. Nontherapeutic communication techniques are ineffective and should be avoided when responding to a client, a client's family member or significant other, or another member of the health care team. As you read the question and each option, eliminate the options that indicate the use of a nontherapeutic communication technique.
3. Focus on feelings, concerns, anxieties, or fears. As you read the question and each option, look for the option that indicates the use of a therapeutic communication technique and focuses on the feelings, concerns, anxieties, or fears of the client, the client's family member or significant other, or the health care team member.
4. Consider cultural differences as you answer the question. If you note that a question contains information that identifies a specific cultural group, think about specific cultural characteristics to answer the question correctly. Remember that each culture is unique with regard to characteristics related to the process of communication.

**STUDY TIP****Student-to-Student**

When answering test questions related to therapeutic and non-therapeutic communication techniques, envision yourself actually saying the words presented in the options to an assigned client. This will help you answer the question correctly!

### Guidelines for Communication

Use therapeutic communication techniques.  
 Avoid nontherapeutic communication techniques.  
 Focus on the client's feelings, concerns, anxieties, or fears.  
 Consider cultural differences.

## Communication Techniques

### What Are the Therapeutic Communication Techniques?

Using therapeutic communication techniques encourages the client, or other individual with whom the nurse is communicating, to express his or her thoughts and feelings. Many therapeutic communication techniques can be used to promote verbalization. If you are not familiar with these techniques, you will learn them in your first nursing course in nursing school. The following table provides a brief review of these techniques.

Therapeutic Communication Techniques	
Technique	Description
Active listening	Carefully noting what the client is saying and observing the client's nonverbal behavior
Broad openings	Encouraging the client to select topics for discussion
Clarifying	Providing a means for making the message clearer, correcting any misunderstandings, and promoting mutual understanding
Focusing	Directing the conversation on the topic being discussed
Informing	Giving information to the client
Offering self to help	Includes staying with the client, talking to the client, and offering to help the client
Open-ended questions	Encouraging conversation because these questions require more than one-word answers
Paraphrasing	Restating in different words what the client said
Reflecting	Directing the client's question or statement back to the client for consideration
Restating	Repeating what the client has said and directing the statement back to the client to provide the client the opportunity to agree or disagree or to clarify the message further
Silence	Allowing time for formulating thoughts
Summarizing	Stating briefly what was discussed during the conversation
Validating	Verifying that both the nurse and the client are interpreting the topic or message in the same way

### What Are the Nontherapeutic Communication Techniques?

Nontherapeutic communication techniques impair or block the flow of a conversation. They are also known as the barriers to an effective communication process. The many nontherapeutic communication techniques need to be avoided when communicating because of their ineffectiveness. The following table briefly reviews some nontherapeutic communication techniques.



### Nontherapeutic Communication Techniques

Technique	Description
Approval	Implying that the client is thinking or doing the right thing and is not thinking or doing what is wrong; this may direct the client to focus on thinking or behavior that pleases the nurse
Asking excessive questions	Demanding information from the client without respect for the client's willingness or readiness to respond
Changing the subject	Avoiding addressing the client's thoughts, feelings, or concerns; implying that the client's statement is not important
Closed-ended questions	Questions that ask for specific information such as a "yes" or "no" answer and therefore inhibit communication
Disagreeing	Opposing the client's thinking or opinions, implying that the client is wrong
Disapproving	Indicating a negative value judgment about the client's behavior or thoughts
False reassurance	Making a statement that implies that the client has no reason to be worried or concerned; belittling a client's concerns
Giving advice	Assuming that the client cannot think for himself or herself, which inhibits problem solving and fosters dependence
Minimizing the client's feelings	Making a statement that implies that the client's feelings are not important
Parroting	Repeating the client's words before determining what the client has said
Placing the client's feelings on hold	Avoiding addressing the client's thoughts, feelings, or concerns; making a statement that places the responsibility of addressing the client's thoughts, feelings, or concerns elsewhere or on another person
Value judgments	Making a comment that addresses the client's morals; this can make the client feel angry or guilty or as though he or she is not being supported
"Why?" questions	Cause the client to feel defensive because many times he or she does not know the reason "why"; these types of questions also often imply criticism

#### STUDY TIP

##### Scope of Practice

It is within the scope of nursing practice and is also the responsibility of the nurse to communicate with clients in a way that makes them feel comfortable and in a caring environment. Therapeutic communication is also very important for the client with a mental health disorder.



### Why Are Cultural Considerations Important?

The nurse needs to be aware of certain cultural characteristics that relate to the communication process and other aspects of care that may differ from his or her own cultural uniqueness. Questions on the NCLEX exam may address the concept of communication with a client from a specific cultural group. If you note that a question contains information identifying a specific cultural group, think about specific cultural characteristics to answer the question correctly.

Communication involves three cultural characteristics: communication style, use of eye contact, and the meaning of touch. The following table addresses various cultural preferences with regard to these three characteristics.

Culture and Communication			
Culture	Communication Style	Use of Eye Contact	Meaning of Touch
African Americans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Personal questions asked on initial contact with the client may be viewed as intrusive.</li> <li>Head nodding by the client does not necessarily mean agreement.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Direct eye contact may be interpreted as rude or aggressive behavior.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>African Americans may feel comfortable with close personal space when they are interacting with family and friends.</li> <li>The nurse needs to respect the client's personal space.</li> </ul>
Asian Americans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Asian cultures may believe that feelings and emotions are private, and an open expression of emotions is regarded as a weakness.</li> <li>Silence is valued by the client.</li> <li>Criticism or disagreement is not expressed verbally by the client.</li> <li>Head nodding by the client does not necessarily mean agreement.</li> <li>The client may interpret the word "no" as disrespect for others.</li> <li>The client does not use hand gestures.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eye contact is limited and may be considered inappropriate or disrespectful.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Asian Americans prefer a formal personal space except with family and close friends.</li> <li>They usually do not touch others during conversation.</li> <li>Touching is unacceptable with members of the opposite gender; if possible, a female client prefers a female health care provider.</li> <li>The head is considered to be sacred; therefore touching someone on the head may be considered disrespectful.</li> <li>The nurse should respect the client's personal space and avoid physical closeness and excessive touching and should only touch a client's head when necessary, informing the client before doing so.</li> </ul>
White Americans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silence can be used by the client to show respect or disrespect for another, depending on the situation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eye contact may be viewed as indicating trustworthiness.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Depending on nationality, White Americans may avoid close physical contact.</li> <li>The nurse needs to respect the client's personal space.</li> </ul>
Hispanic Americans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The client may use dramatic body language, such as gestures or facial expressions, to express emotion or pain.</li> <li>The client may tend to be verbally expressive, yet confidentiality is important.</li> <li>Hispanic Americans may believe that direct confrontation is disrespectful and the expression of negative feelings is impolite.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some Hispanic Americans believe that avoiding eye contact with a person in authority indicates respect and attentiveness.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hispanic Americans are comfortable with close proximity with family, friends, and acquaintances and value the physical presence of others.</li> <li>The nurse needs to protect the client's privacy and respect the client's personal space.</li> <li>Hispanic Americans are very tactile and use embraces and handshakes.</li> <li>The nurse needs to ask if it would be all right to touch a child before examining him or her.</li> </ul>
Native Americans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To Native Americans, silence indicates respect for the speaker.</li> <li>Many of these clients speak in a low tone of voice and expect others to be attentive.</li> <li>Body language is important.</li> <li>Obtaining input from members of the extended family is important.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eye contact may be viewed as a sign of disrespect.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Personal space is very important to Native Americans and the nurse needs to respect the client's personal space.</li> <li>Native American clients may lightly touch another person's hand during greetings.</li> <li>In this culture, massage is used for the newborn infant to promote bonding between the infant and mother.</li> <li>Touching a dead body may be prohibited in some tribes.</li> </ul>

Review the characteristics associated with specific cultures and become familiar with them before taking the NCLEX exam. If you are unfamiliar with content related to the characteristics of various cultures, refer to *Saunders Comprehensive Review for the NCLEX-RN Examination* or *Saunders Comprehensive Review for the NCLEX-PN Examination*. These products contain information about cultural characteristics and a specific chapter, entitled "Cultural Awareness and Health

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

When caring for clients from a culture different from your own, consider their lifestyle choices when planning care. Never impose your lifestyle choices or cultural beliefs on a client.

**Cultural Communication Points to Consider!**

Communication style  
Use of eye contact  
Meaning of touch

Practices," that describes many features related to cultural differences for various cultural groups.

**Other Cultural Considerations**

Being knowledgeable of ethnic dietary preferences is an important nursing responsibility. The nurse needs to incorporate the client's dietary preferences into the plan of care, otherwise the client may not comply with health care recommendations. In addition, the nurse needs to ensure that the client receives an adequate nutritional intake to prevent nutritional deficiencies.

**Ethnic Group and Dietary Preferences**

Ethnic Group	Dietary Preference
African Americans	Fried foods Chicken, pork, greens, rice Some pregnant African-American women engage in pica
Asian Americans	Raw fish Rice Vegetables
Hispanic and Latino Americans	Beans Fried foods Spicy foods
Native Americans	Blue cornmeal Fish Game Fruits and berries
White Americans	Carbohydrates Meat items Some prefer non-meat and/or non-dairy items

Food may have a symbolic meaning in some religious groups, and these beliefs need to be acknowledged by the nurse when planning care. Awareness of and recognizing the value and importance of these religious beliefs will prevent imposition and guide the nurse's actions and decision-making to ensure culturally competent care.

**Religion and Dietary Preferences**

Religious Group	Dietary Preference
Seventh-Day Adventist (Church of God)	Alcohol and caffeinated beverages usually prohibited. Many are lacto-ovo-vegetarians; those who eat meat avoid pork. Overeating is prohibited; 5-6 hr between meals without snacking is practiced.
Buddhism	Alcohol is usually prohibited. Many are lacto-ovo-vegetarians. Some eat fish, and some avoid only beef.
Roman Catholicism	Avoid meat on Ash Wednesday and Fridays of Lent. Optional fasting is practiced during Lenten season. Children, pregnant women, and the ill are exempt from fasting.
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Mormon)	Alcohol, coffee, and tea are usually prohibited. Consumption of meat is limited. First Sunday of the month is optional for fasting.
Hinduism	Many are vegetarians; those who eat meat do not eat beef or pork. Fasting rituals vary. Children not allowed to participate in fasting.



## Religion and Dietary Preferences—cont'd

Religious Group	Dietary Preference
Islam	Pork, birds of prey, alcohol, and any meat product not ritually slaughtered are prohibited. During month of Ramadan, fasting occurs during daytime hours.
Jehovah's Witness	Any foods to which blood has been added are prohibited. Can eat animal flesh that has been drained.
Judaism	Dietary kosher laws must be followed by Orthodox believers. Meats allowed include animals that are vegetable eaters, cloven-hoofed animals, and animals that are ritually slaughtered. Fish that have scales and fins are allowed. Any combination of meat and milk is prohibited. During Yom Kippur, 24-hr fasting is observed. Pregnant women and those who are seriously ill are exempt from fasting; children may also be exempt. During Passover, only unleavened bread is eaten.
Pentecostal (Assembly of God)	Alcohol is prohibited. Avoid consumption of anything to which blood has been added. Some individuals avoid pork.
Eastern Orthodox	During Lent all animal products including dairy products are forbidden. Fasting occurs during Advent. Exceptions from fasting include illness and pregnancy; children may also be exempt.



## SAMPLE QUESTION: Cultural Considerations

The nurse is assisting a hospitalized client who is Buddhist complete a dietary menu. The nurse understands that this client will **most likely** make which dinner selection?

- Cheeseburger with French fries and a diet soda
- Steak tips with mashed potatoes, green beans, and milk
- Garden salad with Italian dressing, a hard-boiled egg, and lemonade
- Meat loaf with oven-roasted potatoes, creamed corn, and iced water

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Clients who identify with Buddhism have specific dietary preferences. Alcohol is usually prohibited and many are lacto-ovo-vegetarians (eggs and dairy products are acceptable). Some eat fish and some only avoid beef. A garden salad with Italian dressing, a hard-boiled egg and lemonade is acceptable for someone who follows a lacto-ovo-vegetarian diet. A cheeseburger, steak tips, and meat loaf all use beef as a main ingredient and therefore are not acceptable to consume for this client.

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic words** *most likely*. Recalling that clients of the Buddhist faith are usually lacto-ovo-vegetarians will assist in directing you to the correct option. Also noting that options 1, 2, and 4 are **comparable and alike** will assist in eliminating these options.

**TIP FOR BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

For clients who are a different culture than your own, it is important to remember to consider what cultural influences may impact client care and to address these influences accordingly. You will learn about dietary practices associated with specific religious backgrounds in your fundamentals of nursing course or other course on culture.

End-of-life care practices may vary among religious groups, and it is important for the nurse to understand and incorporate these practices in the plan of care. For the dying client, maintaining the integrity of religious rituals promotes a peaceful death. For the family members or significant others, maintaining religious practices helps provide a sense of fulfilling obligations and helps promote acceptance of their loved one's death.

Religion and End-of-Life Care Practices	
Religious Group	End-of-Life Care Practice
Catholic and Orthodox	Anointing of the sick is done by a priest. Other sacraments before death include reconciliation and Holy Communion.
Protestant	No last rites (anointing of the sick accepted by some groups). Prayers given to offer comfort and support.
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Mormon)	May administer a sacrament if the client requests.
Jehovah's Witness	Do not believe in sacraments. Will be excommunicated if they receive a blood transfusion.
Amish	Funerals are conducted in the home without a eulogy, flower decorations, or any other display; caskets are plain and simple, without adornment. At death, a woman is usually buried in her bridal dress. One is believed to live on after death, either with eternal reward in heaven or punished in hell.
Islam	Second-degree male relatives, such as cousins or uncles, should be contact persons and determine whether the client and/or family should be given information about the client. Client may choose to face Mecca (west or southwest in the United States). The head should be elevated above the body. Discussions about death are not usually welcomed. Stopping medical treatment is against the will of Allah (Arabic word for God). Grief may be expressed through slapping or hitting the body. If possible, only a same-gender Muslim should handle the body after death; if not possible, non-Muslims should wear gloves so as not to touch the body.
Judaism	Prolongation of life is important (life support must be maintained for a client until death). A dying person should not be left alone (a rabbi's presence is desired). Autopsy and cremation are usually not allowed.
Hinduism	Rituals: tying a thread around the neck or wrist of the dying person, sprinkling the person with special water, or placing a leaf of basil on the tongue. After death, sacred threads are not removed and the body is not washed.
Buddhism	A shrine to Buddha may be placed in client's room. Time for meditation at the shrine is important and should be respected. Clients may refuse medications that could alter their awareness (e.g., opioids). After death, a monk may recite prayers for 1 hr (need not be done in the presence of the body).

## Sample Communication Questions

Following are sample communication questions that illustrate the use of therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques. Remember to use therapeutic communication techniques and focus on the client's feelings, concerns, anxieties, and fears when answering communication questions.



### SAMPLE QUESTION 1

**Case Event:** A mother says to the nurse in the health care provider's office, "I am afraid that my child might have another seizure."

**Question Query:** Which response by the nurse is **most** therapeutic?

1. "Tell me what frightens you the most about seizures."
2. "Why worry about something that you cannot control?"
3. "Most children will never experience a second seizure."
4. "Phenytoin (Dilantin) can prevent another seizure from occurring."

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *most* and use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Option 1 is the only option that addresses the client's fears. Option 2 is a nontherapeutic response, because it states that the mother should not worry. Options 3 and 4 are incorrect because the nurse is giving false reassurance to the mother that a seizure will not recur or can be prevented in this child.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A seizure is a hyperexcitation of the neurons in the brain leading to a sudden, violent involuntary series of contractions of a group of muscles. There are different types of seizures. The most important nursing measures when a client experiences a seizure are to maintain a patent airway and to ensure safety for the client. You will learn about caring for a client with seizures when you study neurological disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.



### SAMPLE QUESTION 2

**Case Event:** A client examined in the health care clinic has been diagnosed with hypertension and has been taking a prescribed antihypertensive medication. On a follow-up visit, the client says to the nurse, "I don't understand why I have to take this medication. It makes me feel awful."

**Question Query:** What is the **most appropriate** nursing response?

1. "You will need to ask your doctor about that."
2. "Everyone who takes that medication says the same thing."
3. "You have to take this medication if you want to prevent a stroke."
4. "Describe what you mean when you say that the medication makes you feel awful."

**ANSWER: 4**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*. Option 1 avoids the client's concern and places the client's feelings on hold. Option 2 minimizes the client's feelings and implies that the client's complaint is not important. In option 3 the nurse gives advice and also provides false reassurance that the medication will prevent a stroke. In this option, the nurse also avoids the client's complaint, is somewhat threatening, and may induce fear

in the client. In option 4 the nurse uses the **therapeutic communication technique** of restating. In this technique, the nurse explores by repeating what the client has said and directing the statement back to the client to provide the client the opportunity to clarify the message further.

### **TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Hypertension is a condition characterized by an elevated blood pressure above the normal value and is a known cardiovascular risk factor. Many times clients with hypertension do not even know that they are experiencing the disorder and are without signs and symptoms. This is why the disorder is sometimes called a “silent disease” and may not be discovered until a routine physical exam is performed. Antihypertensive medications are prescribed to lower the blood pressure, but unpleasant side effects of the medication can occur. This is why noncompliance can be a concern for clients with hypertension taking antihypertensive medications. You will learn about hypertension in your medical-surgical nursing course.



### **SAMPLE QUESTION 3**

**Case Event:** A client with a history of cardiac disease is brought to the emergency department because of an episode of chest pain while mowing the lawn. During the assessment, the client tells the nurse that he stopped taking his cardiac medication.

**Question Query:** What is the **most appropriate** nursing response?

1. “Why did you stop taking your medication?”
2. “Tell me some of the reasons that led you to stop taking your medication.”
3. “Everything is going to be just fine. We will get you started on those medications right away.”
4. “You stopped the medication! Don't you know that you are never supposed to do that with cardiac medications?”

**ANSWER: 2**

### **TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate* and use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Option 2 is an open-ended and broad opening question that will promote and encourage the client to communicate. The statement in option 1 uses the word *why*. Use of this word implies criticism and often makes the client feel defensive; in addition, many times the client does not know why he or she stopped the medication. In option 3 the nurse provides false reassurance by telling the client that everything is going to be fine. Also, the nurse avoids exploring the reason(s) that led the client to stop the medication. In option 4 the nurse demoralizes, belittles, and lectures the client, which is nontherapeutic.

### **TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Cardiac disease can result from a variety of causes, including but not limited to angina pectoris (chest pain), myocardial infarction (heart attack), heart failure, or valvular disorders. If a client experiences chest pain, this could result from a lack of oxygen to the myocardial tissue and needs to be attended to immediately to prevent myocardial tissue death. You will learn about cardiac disease during your medical-surgical nursing course; because heart disease is a major health concern, focus on the ways to teach a client to prevent it.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 4**

**Case Event:** A client recently diagnosed with ovarian cancer says to the nurse, “I cannot believe this has happened to me. I wish that I were dead!”

**Question Query:** Which nursing response is **most** therapeutic?

1. “Every client diagnosed with this type of cancer says the same thing.”
2. “You must be feeling very upset. Are you thinking of hurting yourself?”
3. “I know what you mean, but there are a lot of treatments available for ovarian cancer.”
4. “Why are you talking that way? Your children would not want to hear you say that, would they?”

**ANSWER: 2**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *most* and use **therapeutic communication techniques**. In option 2 the nurse focuses on the client's statement and addresses the client's feelings in the response. In options 1 and 3 the nurse minimizes the client's feelings. In addition, option 3 provides false reassurances. In option 4 the nurse uses the word *why*, which implies criticism and often makes the client feel defensive. In addition, option 4 focuses on the client's children and their feelings rather than on the client's feelings.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Ovarian cancer is a malignant tumor of the ovary or ovaries. It is rarely detected in its early stages and is usually far advanced when diagnosed. Regularly scheduled pelvic examinations contribute significantly to early diagnosis; thus, it is important to teach clients about the importance of these pelvic examinations. You will learn about ovarian cancer and other types of cancer in your medical-surgical nursing course.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 5**

**Case Event:** Which nursing responses indicate the use of therapeutic communication techniques?

**Question Query:** Select all that apply.

- 1. “I know how you feel.”
- 2. “You will do just fine, just wait and see.”
- 3. “Don't worry about anything. You are in good hands!”
- 4. “Why do you still smoke when you know that you have cancer?”
- 5. “Let's talk more about the reasons you are not following your diet.”
- 6. “You are feeling anxious because of the conversation that you had with your boss yesterday.”

**ANSWER: 5, 6**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Focus on the **subject**—**therapeutic communication techniques**. Review the following nursing responses:

1. “I know how you feel.”—nontherapeutic and minimizes the client's feelings
2. “You will do just fine, just wait and see.”—nontherapeutic and minimizes and avoids the client's feelings and provides false reassurance
3. “Don't worry about anything. You are in good hands!”—nontherapeutic; avoids the client's feelings and provides false reassurance
4. “Why do you still smoke when you know that you have cancer?”—nontherapeutic; demoralizes the client and also can make the client feel guilty, angry, anxious, or unsupported

5. “Let’s talk more about why you are not following your diet.”—therapeutic and uses the technique of focusing and exploring feelings
6. “You are feeling anxious because of the conversation that you had with your boss yesterday.”—therapeutic and indicates the use of reflection; also encourages the client to verbalize feelings

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

This question asks you to select the statements that reflect the use of therapeutic communication techniques. The use of therapeutic communication techniques promote the communication process between a nurse and client. So think about these therapeutic techniques. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course.



### SAMPLE QUESTION 6

**Case Event:** The nurse is providing instructions to an Asian client regarding obtaining a stool specimen for testing for occult blood. As the nurse explains the instructions, the client continuously turns away.

**Question Query:** Which nursing action is **most appropriate**?

1. Stress the importance of the instructions with the client.
2. Continue with the instructions, verifying client understanding.
3. Walk around the client so that the nurse continuously faces the client.
4. Give the client the list of instructions and return later to continue with the instructions.

**ANSWER: 2**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

In this question you need to consider the characteristics of the Asian culture. Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*. If the client turns away from the nurse during a conversation, the most appropriate action is to continue with the conversation. Telling the client about the importance of the instructions may be viewed as degrading. Walking around the client so that the nurse faces the client is in direct conflict with the cultural practice. The client may view returning later to continue with the explanation as a rude gesture.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

When a question addresses a specific culture, consider the cultural characteristics of the specific group to answer the question. Many Asian clients maintain a formal distance with others, which is a form of respect. Also, many Asian clients are uncomfortable with face-to-face communications, especially when there is direct eye contact. So if the client turns away from the nurse during a conversation, the most appropriate action is to continue with the conversation. You will learn about the cultural characteristics of various cultural groups in your fundamentals of nursing course and other nursing courses.

**SAMPLE QUESTION 7**

**Case Event:** The nurse in an ambulatory care clinic is performing an admission assessment on an African-American client scheduled for a laparoscopic cholecystectomy.

**Question Query:** Which question would be inappropriate for the nurse to ask on **initial** assessment?

1. "Do you ever experience chest pain?"
2. "Do you have any difficulty breathing?"
3. "Do you have a close family relationship?"
4. "Do you frequently have episodes of abdominal pain?"

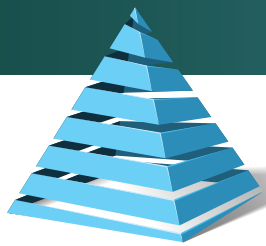
**ANSWER: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *initial*. Also focus on the **subject**, *an inappropriate question*. In this question you need to consider the characteristics of the African-American culture. In the African-American culture, it may be considered intrusive to ask personal questions on the initial contact. African Americans are highly verbal and express feelings openly to family or friends, but what transpires within the family is viewed as private. Options 1, 2, and 4 are appropriate to ask the client on initial assessment. In addition, use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**: options 1, 2, and 4 include cardiovascular, respiratory, and gastrointestinal assessments; physiological assessments are the priority assessments.

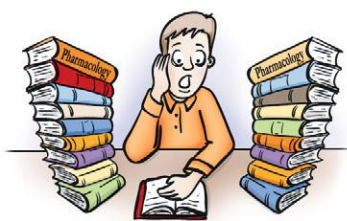
**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

A laparoscopic cholecystectomy is the surgical excision of the gallbladder through small incisions made in the abdominal wall done with the client under general anesthesia. You will learn more about this type of surgery when you study gastrointestinal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course. In the African-American culture it may be considered intrusive to ask personal questions at the initial meeting. Remember that if the question identifies a specific cultural group, you need to consider the characteristics of the culture to answer the question.



## CHAPTER 11

# Pharmacology, Medication, and Intravenous Calculation Questions



### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

When a pharmacology question appears on the exam, note the name of the medication and remember that the question will identify both the generic name and the trade name. Focus on the client's diagnosis, and use medical terminology skills to break the name of the medication down into parts to determine the medication and its intended use. Also, use other pharmacology strategies and guidelines to answer the question.

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

When answering questions on medications, look at the case event and the query very closely. If a disease process is mentioned, this information can help you answer the question correctly. In addition, look for both generic and trade names. If you don't know one name, you may know the other!

Pharmacology is one of the most difficult nursing content areas to master. One reason it is so difficult is because of the enormous number of medications available. Another reason is the vast amount of information to know about each medication. The National Council Licensure Examination (NCLEX) Test Plan addresses pharmacological and parenteral therapies in the Physiological Integrity Client Needs category. The registered nurse (RN) Test Plan identifies 12% to 18% as the percentage of this type of test question that will possibly appear on the examination, and the licensed practical/vocational nurse (LPN/LVN) Test Plan identifies this percentage as 11% to 17%. This means that if you took a 100-question examination, 12 to 18 of the questions (RN Test Plan) or 11 to 17 of the questions (LPN/LVN Test Plan) would relate to pharmacology and parenteral therapies. Therefore, it is important to spend ample time reviewing pharmacology in preparation for the NCLEX exam, and it is best to do your review from a question-and-answer perspective.

This chapter provides the strategies for preparing to answer pharmacology questions and various general guidelines to use when attempting to answer the questions correctly. The pharmacology strategies are listed in the box below. In addition, remember to read the question carefully, noting the strategic words and the subject of the question, and always use the process of elimination to select the correct option. As with any type of question, it is best to use your nursing knowledge to answer the question. However, a question may appear on your examination that contains a medication name with which you are unfamiliar. When this occurs, the guidelines and the strategies to answer a pharmacology question correctly will be valuable. After you read this chapter, practice answering as many pharmacology questions as you can. Several resources are available that contain hundreds of pharmacology practice questions.

### Additional Pharmacology Practice Question Resources

For the RN student:

- *Saunders Comprehensive Review for the NCLEX-RN® Examination*
- *Saunders Q&A Review for the NCLEX-RN® Examination*
- *Saunders Q&A Review Cards for the NCLEX-RN® Examination*
- *HESI/Saunders Online Review Course for the NCLEX-RN® Examination*

For the LPN/LVN student:

- *Saunders Comprehensive Review for the NCLEX-PN® Examination*
- *Saunders Q&A Review for the NCLEX-PN® Examination*
- *Saunders Review Cards for the NCLEX-PN® Examination*
- *HESI/Saunders Online Review Course for the NCLEX-PN® Examination*

These products can be obtained at the Elsevier website ([www.elsevierhealth.com](http://www.elsevierhealth.com)).



## Pharmacology: General Guidelines to Follow

Some general guidelines to keep in mind as you are trying to select the correct option are given in the following list.

1. Medication absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion are affected by age and physiological processes; the older client and the neonate and infant are at greater risk for toxicity than an adult.
  2. Many medications are contraindicated in pregnancy and during breastfeeding.
  3. Antacids are not usually administered with medication because the antacid will affect the absorption of the medication.
  4. Grapefruit juice is not usually administered with medication because it contains a substance that will impede the absorption of the medication.
  5. Enteric-coated and sustained-release tablets should not be crushed; also, capsules should not be opened.
  6. Nursing interventions always include monitoring for intended effects, side effects, adverse effects, or toxic effects of the medication.
  7. Nursing interventions always include client education.
  8. The nurse or client should never adjust or change a medication dose, abruptly stop taking a medication, or discontinue a medication.
  9. The nurse may withhold a medication if he or she suspects that the client is experiencing an adverse or toxic effect of a medication; the nurse must immediately contact the health care provider if either of these effects occurs. The nurse may also withhold the medication if specific parameters are prescribed and withholding the medication is indicated based on these parameters.
  10. The client needs to avoid taking any over-the-counter medications or any other medications, such as herbal preparations, unless they are approved for use by the health care provider.
  11. The client needs to know how to correctly administer the medication.
  12. The client needs to be aware of the side effects and adverse effects of medications and how to check his or her own temperature, pulse, and blood pressure.
  13. The client needs to take the prescribed dose for the prescribed length of therapy and understand the necessity of compliance.
  14. The client needs to avoid consuming alcohol and to avoid smoking.
  15. The client should wear a Medic-Alert bracelet if he or she is taking medications such as, but not limited to, anticoagulants, oral hypoglycemics or insulin, certain cardiac medications, corticosteroids and glucocorticoids, antimuscarinic medications, anticonvulsants, and monoamine oxidase inhibitors.
  16. The client needs to follow up with a health care provider as prescribed.
- The following sample pharmacology question illustrates how these general pharmacology guidelines may be helpful.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: General Pharmacology Guidelines

**Case Event:** A client taking amitriptyline hydrochloride (Elavil) calls the nurse at the health care provider's office and reports that he has an upset stomach whenever he takes the medication.

**Question Query:** What information should the nurse provide to the client?

1. Take the medication with food.
2. Take the medication with an antacid.
3. Take the medication on an empty stomach.
4. Stop the medication for 2 days and then resume the prescribed medication schedule.

### Pharmacology Strategies

Read the question carefully.  
 Note the strategic words.  
 Note the subject.  
 Use the process of elimination.  
 Use nursing knowledge.  
 Use general and other pharmacology guidelines.  
 Use test-taking strategies.

### STUDY TIP

#### Preparing for Clinical

Be sure to bring your medication or drug handbook with you to clinical. Research your client's medications and discuss them with your clinical instructor before administering them. Make sure to check the six rights of medication administration and understand the effects of the medications you are administering.

**ANSWER: 1****TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question. The **subject** is the client's complaint of an upset stomach. Recalling that antacids are not usually administered with medication and that the nurse would not tell a client to discontinue a medication will assist in eliminating options 2 and 4. From the remaining options, focusing on the **subject** will assist in eliminating option 3.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Amitriptyline hydrochloride (Elavil) is a medication that is called a tricyclic antidepressant. It affects chemicals in the brain that may become unbalanced and is used to treat symptoms of depression. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

**STUDY TIP****Scope of Practice**

Remember that as a nurse, if you are questioning anything about a medication prescription, you can use the pharmacy as your resource to answer your questions. If you feel that the prescription requires further clarification, be sure to contact the health care provider before administering it.

**Six Medication Rights**

Right client  
Right medication  
Right dose  
Right time and frequency  
Right route  
Right documentation

**Pharmacology: Assessment/Data Collection Guidelines****What Are the Pharmacology Assessment/Data Collection Guidelines, and How Will They Help in Answering a Pharmacology Question?**

There are some specific assessment/data collection guidelines to follow when you administer medication to a client. In addition to using the six rights when administering medications, these guidelines include client assessment and assessment of other factors related to the medication, such as checking certain laboratory values or vital signs; checking for potential interactions or contraindications related to the medication; client teaching; monitoring for intended effects, side effects, adverse effects, or toxic effects; and evaluating the client's response to the medication therapy. When you are presented with a pharmacology question and are trying to select the correct option, using the pharmacology assessment/data collection guidelines will assist you in eliminating incorrect options. Some of these guidelines are listed in the following box.

**Pharmacology: Assessment/Data Collection Guidelines to Follow**

The following list gives pharmacology assessment/data collection guidelines to follow when administering medication to a client:

1. Always assess for client allergies or hypersensitivity to a medication.
2. Always assess the client for existing medical disorders that are contraindicated with the administration of a prescribed medication.
3. Always assess for potential interactions related to the medication.
4. Always check pertinent laboratory results.
5. Always check the client's vital signs, particularly if medications such as antihypertensive or cardiac medications are being administered.
6. Always assess the client for intended effects, side effects, adverse effects, or toxic effects of the medication.
7. Always assess the client's response to the medication.

These guidelines are particularly helpful if the question asks for the priority nursing action when administering a medication. Below is a sample pharmacology question illustrating how these assessment/data collection guidelines may be helpful.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Pharmacology**

**Case Event:** The nurse notes that a health care provider has prescribed sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim (Bactrim) for a client with a urinary tract infection.

**Question Query:** Which **priority** action should the nurse take before administering this medication?

1. Call the pharmacy to obtain the medication.
2. Ask the client about an allergy to sulfonamides.
3. Inform the client about the need to increase fluid intake.
4. Check the medication supply room to find out whether the medication needs to be obtained from the pharmacy.

**ANSWER: 2**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** and the **strategic word**. In this question the **strategic word** is *priority*, and the **subject** is the action that the nurse will take. Also note that the client has a urinary tract infection. Using the pharmacology assessment/data collection guidelines will direct you to option 2. In addition, use of the **steps of the nursing process** will direct you to the correct option because option 2 is the only option that addresses client assessment/data collection.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Bactrim contains a combination of sulfamethoxazole and trimethoprim and is an antibiotic that treats different types of infection caused by bacteria. It is used to treat ear infections, urinary tract infections, bronchitis, *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia, and other types of infection. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study the immune system.

**Medication Effects****What Are the Differences Among an Intended Effect, a Side Effect, an Adverse Effect, and a Toxic Effect of a Medication?**

It is important to understand the differences among an intended effect, a side effect, an adverse effect, and a toxic effect; understanding them will assist in eliminating the incorrect options in a pharmacology question that asks about one of these effects. When you are presented with a question on the examination that asks about an effect of a medication, note the specific subject—is the subject of the question an intended effect, a side effect, an adverse effect, or a toxic effect? The differences are described in the following sections, and each section has a sample question related to the specific effect discussed in that section.

**Intended Effect**

An intended effect is the desired and expected effect of a medication. For example, the intended effect of morphine sulfate is pain relief. A sample question that asks about an intended effect is provided.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Intended Effect**

**Case Event:** Ibuprofen (Motrin IB) is prescribed for a client with rheumatoid arthritis.

**Question Query:** On a follow-up visit to the health care provider's office, the nurse should ask the client whether the medication has provided relief from which symptom?

1. Diarrhea
2. Joint pain

**STUDY TIP****Lifestyle Planning**

Pharmacology is a difficult content area to study and retain information. When you know that you have an exam in pharmacology, or you are studying pharmacology for the NCLEX exam, it may be best to study this content area first when you begin your study session when your mind is brightest.

**INTENDED EFFECT: A desired effect**

3. Dyspepsia
4. Flatulence

**ANSWER: 2**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question. In this question, the **subject** is an intended effect of the medication and the noteworthy words are *provided relief from*. Note that the question provides the client's diagnosis. Recalling the pathophysiology related to rheumatoid arthritis will assist in directing you to option 2. Also note that options 1, 3, and 4 are **comparable or alike** in that they all address gastrointestinal symptoms. When options are **comparable or alike**, it is best to eliminate those options because they are unlikely to be correct. In addition, options 1, 3, and 4 are side effects of ibuprofen, not intended effects.

### ▶▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Ibuprofen (Motrin IB) is in a group of medications called nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). It works by reducing hormones that cause inflammation and pain in the body. It is used to reduce fever and treat pain or inflammation caused by many conditions, such as headache, toothache, back pain, arthritis, menstrual cramps, or minor injury. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.

**SIDE EFFECT:** Not a desired effect, not usually life threatening, and can usually be alleviated with specific measures

### Side Effect

A side effect is a physiological effect of a medication that is unrelated to the intended medication effects. For example, a side effect of an antihistamine medication is drowsiness. A side effect of a medication is not usually life threatening, and normally there are measures that will either eliminate the side effect or alleviate the discomfort associated with it. A sample question that asks about a side effect is provided.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Side Effect

**Case Event:** Erythromycin has been prescribed for a client with a respiratory infection.

**Question Query:** The nurse should tell the client that which frequent side effect can occur from this medication?

1. Severe diarrhea
2. Yellow-colored skin
3. Abdominal cramping
4. Yellow discoloration to the white part of the eye

**ANSWER: 3**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question. In this question the **subject** is a side effect of the medication. Eliminate options 2 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike** and both indicate the presence of hepatitis, an adverse effect of the medication. From the remaining options, eliminate option 1 because of the word *severe*. Remember that the question asks about a side effect, not an adverse effect.

### ▶▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Erythromycin is in a group of medications called macrolide antibiotics. Macrolide antibiotics slow the growth of, or sometimes kill, sensitive bacteria by reducing the production of important proteins needed by the bacteria to survive. Erythromycin is used to treat many different types of infections caused by bacteria. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study the immune system.

## Adverse Effect

An adverse effect is more severe than a side effect and is always an undesirable effect. For example, an adverse effect of a sulfonamide is hypersensitivity that may be evidenced by a rash, fever, and shortness of breath. An adverse effect can range from a mild effect to a severe effect, such as anaphylaxis. Adverse effects are always reported to the health care provider. A sample question that asks about an adverse effect is provided.

**ADVERSE EFFECT:** More severe than a side effect, always an undesirable effect, and always reported to the health care provider



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Adverse Effect

**Case Event:** A client with heart failure is receiving furosemide (Lasix).

**Question Query:** The nurse should monitor the client for which adverse effect of the medication?

1. Nausea
2. Gastric upset
3. Muscle weakness
4. Increase in urinary output

**ANSWER: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question. In this question the **subject** is an adverse effect of the medication. Eliminate options 1 and 2 first because they are **comparable or alike** and both relate to the gastrointestinal system. From the remaining options, eliminate option 4 because it is an intended effect of the medication. Also, recall that furosemide is a diuretic and can cause electrolyte imbalances and that muscle weakness is an indication of hypokalemia. Remember that the question asks about an adverse effect.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Furosemide (Lasix) is a potent diuretic (water pill) that works by blocking the absorption of salt and fluid in the kidney tubules, causing a profound increase in urine output (diuresis). The diuretic effect of furosemide can cause body water and electrolyte depletion. It is used to treat excessive fluid accumulation and swelling (edema) of the body caused by heart failure, cirrhosis, chronic kidney disease, and nephrotic syndrome. It is sometimes used in conjunction with other blood pressure pills to treat high blood pressure. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study the cardiovascular system.

## Toxic Effect

A toxic effect (toxicity) of a medication occurs when the medication level in the body exceeds the therapeutic level either from overdosing or medication accumulation. Always report toxic effects to the health care provider. Toxic effects are most often identified by monitoring the plasma (serum) therapeutic range of the medication. For example, the therapeutic blood level range of digoxin (Lanoxin) is 0.5 to 2 ng/mL; if the blood level is greater than 2 ng/mL, the client experiences toxicity. The client will normally exhibit certain signs and symptoms (depending on the medication) that indicate toxicity, and the nurse needs to monitor for these signs and symptoms. For example, in digoxin toxicity, the client may experience gastrointestinal disturbances, such as anorexia, nausea, and vomiting; or ocular disturbances, such as photophobia, light flashes, or halos around bright objects.

### Therapeutic Blood Medication Levels

Therapeutic Medication	Range
Acetaminophen (Tylenol)	10-20 mcg/mL
Carbamazepine (Tegretol)	5-12 mcg/mL
Digoxin (Lanoxin)	0.5-2 ng/mL

Continued

**TOXIC EFFECT:** The medication level in the body exceeds the therapeutic level.

### Therapeutic Blood Medication Levels—cont'd

Therapeutic Medication	Range
Gentamicin	5-10 mcg/mL
Lithium (Lithobid)	0.5-1.3 mEq/L
Magnesium sulfate	4-7 mg/dL
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	10-20 mcg/mL
Salicylate	100-250 mcg/mL
Theophylline (Theo-24)	10-20 mcg/mL



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Toxic Effect

**Case Event:** The nurse reviews the results of a therapeutic blood level that was drawn from a client taking theophylline (Theo-24) and notes that the level is 22 mcg/mL.

**Question Query:** The nurse should take which **most appropriate** action?

1. Report the result to the health care provider.
2. Administer the next scheduled dose of theophylline.
3. Ask the laboratory to draw another blood specimen to verify the result.
4. Place these normal results of the blood test in the client's medical record.

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question and the **strategic words**. In this question, the **strategic words** are *most appropriate*, and the **subject** is a toxic effect of the medication. Recalling that the therapeutic blood level range of theophylline is 10 to 20 mcg/mL will assist in determining that the client is experiencing toxicity. Remember that toxic effects are always reported to the health care provider.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

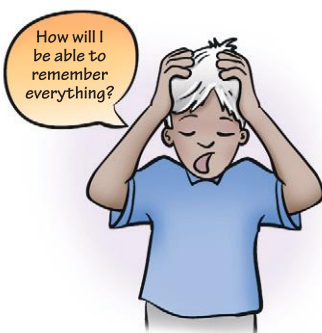
Theophylline (Theo-24) is an oral bronchodilator medication used to treat symptoms of asthma, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema. It opens the airways by relaxing the smooth muscle of the airways and blood vessels in the lungs. It is indicated for the treatment of the symptoms of reversible airflow obstruction associated with chronic asthma and other chronic lung diseases, such as emphysema and chronic bronchitis. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study the respiratory system.



### Medication Names

#### Do You Need to Memorize Both the Generic Name and the Trade Name of a Medication?

No memorizing is necessary! When a pharmacology question appears on the computer screen, both the generic name and the trade name will appear. This will assist you in answering the question correctly. One medication name, perhaps the generic name, may be unfamiliar to you, but you may recognize the trade name. For example, a question may ask about a medication named furosemide (Lasix). You may not be familiar with the medication name furosemide, but it is very likely that you will be familiar with the medication name Lasix because it is a commonly administered medication.



## How Will Medical Terminology Skills Help Answer a Pharmacology Question?

If a pharmacology question appears on your examination that contains the name of a medication with which you are unfamiliar, try to break the generic or trade name of the medication into parts and use medical terminology to assist in determining the medication action. Following is a pharmacology question that illustrates how this strategy works.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Medical Terminology Skills

**Case Event:** Metoprolol (Lopressor) has been prescribed for a client.

**Question Query:** The nurse should perform which **most important** assessment before administering the medication to the client?

1. Take the client's temperature.
2. Check the client's lung sounds.
3. Take the client's blood pressure.
4. Check the client for peripheral edema.

**ANSWER: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question and the **strategic words**. In this question, the **strategic words** are *most important*, and the **subject** is an assessment. Focus on the name of the medication; if you are unfamiliar with the medication, try to break the name of the medication into parts and use medical terminology to assist in determining the medication action. For example, *Lopressor* lowers (*lo*) the blood pressure (*pressor*).

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Metoprolol (Lopressor) is a  $\beta$ -adrenergic blocking agent that is used for treating high blood pressure, heart pain (angina pectoris), abnormal rhythms of the heart, and some neurological conditions. It blocks the action of the sympathetic nervous system by blocking beta receptors on sympathetic nerves. Because the sympathetic nervous system is responsible for increasing the heart rate, by blocking the action of these nerves, metoprolol reduces the heart rate and is useful in treating abnormally rapid heart rhythms. Metoprolol also reduces the force of contraction of heart muscle and thereby lowers blood pressure. By reducing the heart rate and the force of muscle contraction, metoprolol reduces the need for oxygen by heart muscle. Because heart pain (angina pectoris) occurs when oxygen demand of the heart muscle exceeds the supply of oxygen, metoprolol is helpful in treating heart pain (angina pectoris). You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study the cardiovascular system.



## Medication Classifications

### How Will It Help to Identify a Medication by the Classification to Which It Belongs?

Medications that belong to a particular classification have similar medication actions and usually have commonalities in their side effects and nursing interventions related to administration. It is nearly impossible to learn every feature about every individual medication. Learning medications by a "classification system method" groups several medications with similar properties together and makes the amount of information that needs to be learned condensed and manageable.

Relate nursing interventions to the side effects of a medication!

With regard to side effects and nursing interventions, do not try to memorize every side effect and every nursing intervention for every medication. It is best if you associate side effects with nursing interventions. Learn to recognize the common side effects associated with each medication classification, and then relate the appropriate nursing interventions to each side effect. For example, if a side effect is hypertension, then the associated nursing intervention would be to monitor blood pressure; if a side effect is hypokalemia, then the associated nursing interventions are to monitor the client for signs of hypokalemia and to monitor the client's potassium blood level. Again, this makes the vast amount of information that you need to remember manageable.

## How Can You Determine the Medication Classification if You Are Unfamiliar with the Medication?

If you are presented with a pharmacology question that contains the name of a medication with which you are unfamiliar, some strategies to use include the following:

1. Note whether the question identifies the client's diagnosis. For example, if the question states: "Cyclophosphamide has been prescribed for a client with metastatic breast cancer," focusing on the client's diagnosis will help you determine that cyclophosphamide is an antineoplastic medication.
2. Break down the name of the medication (either the generic or trade name) into parts. For example, if the question states metoprolol (Lopressor) has been prescribed, think about the action of the medication as lowering (*Lo-*) the blood pressure (*-pressor*). Thus, metoprolol is an antihypertensive medication.
3. Note the letters in the medication name, and look for those letters that identify a particular medication classification. For example, diltiazem (*Cardizem*) is used for *cardiac* disorders, such as angina and heart rhythm disorders.



## Commonalities in Medication Names

Learning commonalities in medication names that belong to a particular classification will also help in answering a question. If you note a medication name in a test question and are unfamiliar with the medication, if you can at least associate the medication with a classification, you will be able to determine the medication's action, side effects, and nursing interventions. Sample questions follow.

1. Androgens: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-terone*, such as testosterone.
2. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-pril*, such as enalapril (Vasotec).
3. Antidiuretic hormones: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-pressin*, such as desmopressin (DDAVP).
4. Antilipemic medications: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-statin*, such as atorvastatin (Lipitor).
5. Antiviral medications: *Most* antiviral medications contain *vir* in their names, such as ritonavir (Norvir).
6. Benzodiazepines: Benzodiazepines include alprazolam (Xanax), clordiazepoxide (Librium), clorazepate (Tranxene), and triazolam (Halcion); *most* other benzodiazepines names end with the letters *-pam*, such as diazepam (Valium).
7.  $\beta$ -Adrenergic blockers: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-lol*, such as atenolol (Tenormin).
8. Calcium channel blockers: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-pine*, such as amlodipine (Norvasc); some exceptions include diltiazem (Cardizem), and verapamil (Calan SR).



9. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-mide*, such as acetazolamide (Diamox).
10. Estrogens: *Most* estrogen medications contain *est* in their names, such as conjugated estrogen (Premarin).
11. Glucocorticoids and corticosteroids: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-sone*, such as prednisone.
12. Histamine H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-dine*, such as cimetidine (Tagamet).
13. Nitrates: *Most* medications contain *nitr* in their names, such as nitroglycerin (Nitrostat).
14. Pancreatic enzyme replacements: *Most* medications contain *pancre* in their names, such as pancrelipase (Pancrease).
15. Phenothiazines: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-zine*, such as chlorpromazine.
16. Proton pump inhibitors: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-zole*, such as lansoprazole (Prevacid).
17. Sulfonamides: *Most* medications include *sulf* in their names, such as sulfamethoxazole.
18. Sulfonylureas: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-mide*, such as chlorpropamide (Diabinese) or *-ide* such as glimepiride (Amaryl).
19. Thiazide diuretics: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-zide*, such as hydrochlorothiazide.
20. Thrombolytic medications: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-ase*, such as alteplase (Activase).
21. Thyroid hormones: *Most* medications contain *thy* in their names, such as levothyroxine (Synthroid).
22. Xanthine bronchodilators: *Most* medication names end with the letters *-line*, such as theophylline.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Commonalities in Medication Names

**Case Event:** A nurse is collecting data from a client who is taking pantoprazole (Protonix).

**Question Query:** The nurse determines that the medication is **effective** if the client states relief of which symptom?

1. Heartburn
2. Constipation
3. A nighttime cough
4. Migraine headaches

**ANSWER: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question and the **strategic word**. In this question the **strategic word** is *effective*, and the **subject** is an intended effect. Remembering that most proton pump inhibitor medication names end with the suffix *-zole* will direct you to option 1.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Pantoprazole (Protonix) is in a group of medications called proton pump inhibitors that decreases the amount of acid produced in the stomach. It is used to treat erosive esophagitis (damage to the esophagus from stomach acid) and other conditions involving excess stomach acid, such as a condition known as Zollinger-Ellison syndrome. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Commonalities in Medication Names**

**Case Event:** The nurse is collecting a health history on a client seen at the health care clinic for the first time. When the nurse asks the client about current prescribed medications, the client tells the nurse that he takes indinavir (Crixivan) twice daily.

**Question Query:** Based on this finding, the nurse should suspect the presence of which condition?

1. Diverticulitis
2. Peptic ulcer disease
3. Inflammatory bowel disease
4. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

**ANSWER: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question. In this question the **subject** is the nurse's health history finding. Remembering that many anti-viral medication names contain the letters *vir* will direct you to option 4. Also note that options 1, 2, and 3 are **comparable or alike** and relate to a gastrointestinal disorder.

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Indinavir (Crixivan) is a protease inhibitor. Protease inhibitors block the part of HIV called protease. When protease is blocked or inhibited, HIV is unable to infect new cells. Protease inhibitors are almost always used in combination with at least two other anti-HIV medications. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study immune disorders.

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Commonalities in Medication Names**

**Case Event:** The nurse is preparing to administer atenolol (Tenormin) to a client.

**Question Query:** The nurse should check which item before administering the medication?

1. Temperature
2. Blood pressure
3. Potassium level
4. Blood glucose level

**ANSWER: 2**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Remember to read the question carefully, noting the **subject** of the question. In this question the **subject** is an assessment. Note the name of the medication, *atenolol*. Recalling that most  $\beta$ -blocker medication names end with the letters *-lol* and that these medications are used to control blood pressure will direct you to option 2.

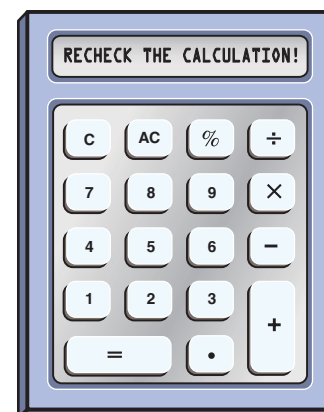
**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

Atenolol (Tenormin) is a  $\beta$ -adrenergic blocking agent that is used for treating high blood pressure, heart pain (angina pectoris), abnormal rhythms of the heart, and some neurological conditions. It blocks the action of the sympathetic nervous system by blocking beta receptors on sympathetic nerves. Because the sympathetic nervous system is responsible for increasing the heart rate, by blocking the action of these nerves, atenolol reduces the heart rate and is useful in treating abnormally rapid heart rhythms. Atenolol also reduces the force of contraction of heart muscle and thereby lowers blood pressure. You will learn about this medication in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study the cardiovascular system.



## What Strategies Will Help When Answering Medication and Intravenous Calculation Questions?

When a medication or IV calculation question is presented, always use the appropriate formula to solve the problem. Shortcuts should not be used in making these calculations. The problem and the answer should be expressed in the correct units of measure. Always be careful with decimal points. It is important to place the decimal points in the correct places, or the answer will be incorrect. When solving a medication calculation problem, always determine whether the answer is within reason and makes sense. Following are two sample questions related to medication and IV calculations.



### NCLEX® EXAM TIP

On the NCLEX exam, medication and IV calculation questions will most likely be in a fill-in-the-blank format. You are provided with an on-screen calculator for these medication and IV problems. Even if you use the calculator to calculate dosages and flow rates, it is important to recheck the calculation before typing the answer. Follow the formula, place the decimal points in the correct places, and check the accuracy of the calculation. Read the question carefully, because many of these questions will ask you to record your answer using one decimal place.

### Medication and Intravenous Calculations

- Use the on-screen calculator.
- Convert the unit of measure if necessary.
- Follow the formula.
- Place the decimal point in the correct place.
- Recheck the accuracy of the calculation.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Medication Calculation

**Case Event:** A health care provider's prescription reads phenytoin (Dilantin) 0.2 g orally twice daily. The medication label states 100-mg capsules.

**Question Query:** The nurse prepares how many capsule(s) to administer one dose? **Fill in the blank and record your answer using one decimal place.**

**ANSWER: 2 capsules**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Use the medication calculation formula. In this medication calculation problem, it is necessary to first convert grams to milligrams. In the metric system, to convert larger to smaller multiply by 1000 or move the decimal three places to the right; therefore, 0.2 g = 200 mg.

**Formula:**

$$\frac{D(\text{desired})}{A(\text{available})} \times Q(\text{quantity}) = X$$

$$\frac{200 \text{ mg}}{100 \text{ mg}} \times 1 \text{ tablet} = 2 \text{ tablets}$$



Use the on-screen calculator to perform the calculation, and then recheck your work, making sure that the answer makes sense before typing the answer!

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You will learn about nursing math in your fundamentals of nursing course or in another course specifically designed to teach you about nursing math. You will be using nursing math to perform calculations when you prepare medications in the clinical setting. Be sure to learn the formulas and how to perform the calculations because the formulas are critical steps in the process of preparing a safe dose of a medication.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Intravenous Calculation

**Case Event:** A health care provider prescribes 1000 mL 0.45% normal saline to infuse over 8 hours. The drop factor is 15 gtt/mL.

**Question Query:** The nurse should set the flow rate at how many drops per minute (gtt/min)? **Round answer to the nearest whole number.**

**ANSWER: 31 gtt/min**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

This question is in the fill-in-the-blank format. Use the formula for calculating IV flow rates when answering the question, and note that the question asks you to round the answer to the nearest whole number. Also, be sure to change 8 hours to minutes.

**Formula:**

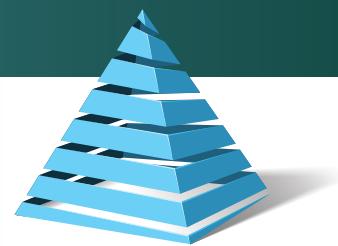
$$\frac{\text{Total volume to infuse} \times \text{Drop (gtt) factor}}{\text{Time in minutes}} = \text{Drops/minute}$$

$$\frac{1000 \times 15}{480 (8 \text{ hours} \times 60 \text{ minutes})} = 31.25 \text{ or } 31 \text{ gtt/min}$$

Use the on-screen calculator. Remember to follow the formula, recheck your answer, and make sure that the answer makes sense before typing it!

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

You will learn about calculating IV flow rates in your fundamentals of nursing course or in another course specifically designed to teach you about IV therapy. You will be using this formula for calculating an IV flow rate in the clinical setting when you care for a client receiving IV therapy. Be sure to learn this formula and how to determine the accurate flow rate because it is critical for the safe administration of IV fluids to a client.



# Additional Pyramid Strategies

In addition to all the test-taking strategies that you have reviewed so far in this book, you can use other helpful strategies to assist in the process of elimination and answering questions correctly. This chapter reviews these helpful strategies and provides sample questions to illustrate how these strategies are used. Also included in this chapter are useful strategies for answering questions that relate to medication and intravenous (IV) calculations, laboratory values, client positioning, therapeutic diets, and disaster planning. Some additional pyramid strategies include:

1. Eliminating options that contain closed-ended words
2. Eliminating options that contain medical rather than nursing interventions
3. Eliminating comparable or alike options
4. Ensuring that all components of an option are correct
5. Selecting the umbrella option
6. Visualizing the information in the case event, question query, and options
7. Looking for concepts in the question that are comparable or alike to a concept in one of the options



## Eliminating Options That Contain Closed-Ended Words: How Will This Help?

In most situations, if an option contains a closed-ended word, it is incorrect. As you read each option, if you note a word that is closed-ended, eliminate that option. Conversely, as you read an option and note an open-ended word, then that may be the correct option. A list of closed-ended and open-ended words follows.

### Closed-Ended Words

All  
Always  
Cannot  
Every  
Must  
Never  
None  
Not  
Only  
Will not

### Open-Ended Words

Generally  
May  
Possibly  
Usually

### STUDY TIP

#### Lifestyle Planning

In addition to all of the strategies you have learned about so far in this text, remember that self-care is one of the most important factors that will lead to your success. Take the time to care for your own needs, and you will notice that you are able to focus much better on your schoolwork!

Closed-ended words may indicate an incorrect option!

Open-ended words may indicate a correct option!

Following are sample questions that illustrate the strategy of closed-ended versus open-ended words.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Eliminating Options That Contain Closed-Ended Words

**Case Event:** The nurse is providing dietary instructions to a client about a low-fat diet.

**Question Query:** The nurse should make which statement to the client?

1. "Never use butter for cooking."
2. "Drink fluids only if they are fat free."
3. "Eat foods that have less than 1% fat content only."
4. "Read the labels on food items to determine the fat content."

**Answer: 4**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Read every word in each option carefully. Note the **closed-ended words** *never* in option 1 and *only* in options 2 and 3. Remember that the use of a **closed-ended word** in an option will most likely make the option incorrect!

#### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

For a regular healthy diet it is usually recommended that of the total calories eaten, no more than 30% should come from fat. A low-fat diet may require even greater restriction. Low-fat diets may be prescribed for a variety of conditions, including gastrointestinal disorders such as liver disease or gallbladder disease, cardiovascular disorders, or obesity. You will learn about the various types of diets in your fundamentals of nursing course or nutrition course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study nutrition.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Selecting Options That Contain Open-Ended Words

**Case Event:** A client scheduled for a computerized tomography (CT) scan of the abdomen asks the nurse when the results of the test will be available.

**Question Query:** The nurse should make which **most appropriate** response to the client?

1. "The results will not be available for at least 1 week."
2. "You must ask the CT technician for that information."
3. "Your health care provider (HCP) may have the results in about 3 days."
4. "Every scan is read by a radiologist, and this process always takes 1 week."

**Answer: 3**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Read every word in each option carefully, and note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*. If you were unable to answer this question using nursing knowledge, note the use of the open-ended word *may* in option 3. Also, note the **closed-ended words** *will not* in option 1, *must* in option 2, and *every* and *always* in option 4. Remember that the use of a **closed-ended word** in an option will most likely make the option incorrect, and the use of an open-ended word in an option tends to make the option correct.

#### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A CT scan is an x-ray procedure that combines x-ray images with the aid of a computer to generate cross-sectional views and, if needed, three-dimensional images of the internal organs and structures of the body. A CT scan is used to define normal and abnormal structures in the body and/or assist in procedures by helping to accurately guide the placement of instruments or treatments. You will learn about this diagnostic procedure during your nursing education, most likely in your medical-surgical nursing course.

### STUDY TIP

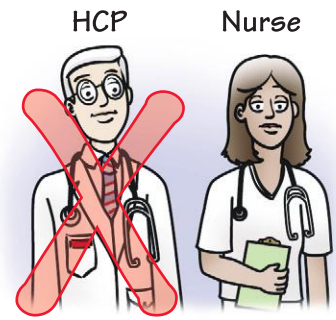
#### Preparing for Clinical

When in clinical, you should be aware of any diagnostic procedures your assigned client(s) have recently undergone, what the results of these procedures are if they are available, and any related post-procedure care that needs to be followed. Additionally, you should be aware of any procedures your assigned client(s) are scheduled to undergo while you are caring for them, and ensure implementation of any specific preprocedure instructions, such as diet prescriptions or withholding of certain medications.



## Eliminating Options That Contain Medical Rather Than Nursing Interventions: How Will This Help?

An important point to remember is that the NCLEX® exam is a nursing examination, not a medical one. Therefore, focus on nursing and select the option that relates to a nursing intervention rather than a medical one. The only situation in which you may need to select a medical intervention is if the question indicates to do so. For example, if the question query states, “Which intervention does the nurse anticipate to be prescribed?” then you may need to select the option that contains a medical action or prescription. Following is a review with sample questions that illustrate this strategy.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Eliminating Options That Contain Medical Rather Than Nursing Interventions

**Case Event:** The nurse is caring for a client with a diagnosis of heart failure who suddenly experiences severe dyspnea and suspects that pulmonary edema has developed.

**Question Query:** What is the **immediate** nursing action?

1. Insert a Foley catheter
2. Place the client in high-Fowler's position
3. Obtain a vial of furosemide (Lasix) and a syringe
4. Obtain a dose of morphine sulfate from the opioid medication drawer

**Answer: 2**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *immediate*, and note the **subject** of the question—a nursing action. Although options 1, 3, and 4 are interventions that would be done in this situation, they all require a medical prescription from the health care provider. Option 2 is a nursing action that does not require a medical prescription. Remember that your exams are nursing examinations, not medical examinations!

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Heart failure is an inability of the heart to maintain adequate circulation to meet the metabolic needs of the body because of an impaired pumping ability. Heart failure can progress to pulmonary edema, a condition in which fluid accumulates in lung tissue. This is a medical emergency. If this occurs the immediate action of the nurse is to place the client in an upright (high-Fowler's) position. You will learn about heart failure and pulmonary edema when you learn about cardiac disorders. One important thing to remember is that with all clients, airway is the priority.

Focus on nursing rather than medical interventions!

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

Be sure to be familiar with the scope of nursing practice with regard to various aspects of client care. Knowing this information will help you with questions that relate to scope of practice and require you to differentiate between medical actions and nursing actions.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Selecting an Option That Indicates a Medical Intervention

**Case Event:** The nurse is admitting an infant to the pediatric unit with a diagnosis of respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).

**Question Query:** The nurse anticipates that the health care provider will prescribe which measure?

1. A private room
2. Contact precautions
3. Ribavirin (Virazole)
4. Strict handwashing procedures

**Answer: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **subject** of the question—the intervention that the health care provider will prescribe. Although the health care provider may document options 1, 2, and 4 on the medical prescription sheet, these are interventions that the nurse can implement for an infant with RSV. That is, a health care provider's prescription is not required for these interventions. In contrast, option 3 requires a health care provider's prescription. Remember that your exam is a nursing examination, not a medical examination, and the only situation in which you may need to select a medical intervention is if the question indicates to do so!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

RSV is a viral infection that is a common cause of acute bronchiolitis, bronchopneumonia, and the common cold in infants and young children. Symptoms include fever, cough, and severe malaise. Treatment includes rest, humidity, adequate fluid intake, oxygen, and the administration of ribavirin (Virazole). You will learn about this virus when you study respiratory infections in your pediatrics course.

**Eliminating Comparable or Alike Options: How Will This Help?**

An important point for you to remember is that multiple choice questions have only one correct option. As you read the options, if you note options that are comparable or alike with regard to their context, eliminate these options. The correct answer to the question will be the option that is different. Following is a sample question that illustrates this strategy of eliminating comparable or alike options.

Eliminate comparable or alike options!

**SAMPLE QUESTION: Eliminating Comparable or Alike Options**

**Case Event:** The nurse is preparing a plan of care for a client who will be receiving a blood transfusion.

**Question Query:** The nurse should write which intervention in the plan that relates to monitoring for a transfusion reaction?

1. Weigh the client before and after the transfusion.
2. Check the client's lung sounds hourly for crackles.
3. Monitor the client's temperature during the transfusion.
4. Monitor the client's intake and output during the transfusion.

**Answer: 3**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **subject** of the question—a transfusion reaction. If you know the signs of a transfusion reaction, you can answer this question easily. If you do not know these signs, read the options carefully. Note that options 1, 2, and 4 are **comparable or alike** in that they relate to the complication of fluid overload. Because they are all **comparable or alike**, they are incorrect and need to be eliminated. Remember that the correct answer to the question will be the option that is different!

**TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT**

A blood transfusion involves the IV administration of a component of blood, such as packed red blood cells, to replace blood or one of its components lost as a result of trauma, surgery, or a disease. One complication that can occur when administering blood is a blood transfusion reaction. Some signs and symptoms of



this complication include fever; facial flushing; rapid, thready pulse; cold, clammy skin; itching; dizziness; difficulty breathing; or low back or chest pain. You will learn about blood transfusions, the complications, and the nursing care involved with the administration of blood during your medical-surgical nursing course when you study hematological disorders.

## Ensuring That All Parts of an Option Are Correct: How Will This Help?

Some questions on exams or on the NCLEX exam may contain options that include two parts, and each part of the option is separated by the word *and*. Read the question carefully, note the strategic words, and focus on the subject. As you read the options, read both parts of the option. If you note that one part of the option is incorrect, then the entire option is incorrect; therefore, eliminate that option. In these types of questions, it is important to ensure that both parts of the option are correct. Following is a sample question that illustrates this strategy of ensuring that all parts of an option are correct.

### ? SAMPLE QUESTION: Ensuring That All Parts of an Option Are Correct

**Case Event:** The nurse is performing an assessment on a client diagnosed with a cataract of the right eye.

**Question Query:** The nurse should expect to obtain which data on assessment?

1. A cloudy white pupil and reports of eye pain
2. Reports of a frontal headache and photophobia
3. Reports of a gradual loss of vision and photophobia
4. Reports of blurred vision and excessive tearing of the eye

**Answer:** 3

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

The options in this question contain two parts, and each part of the option is separated by the word *and*. Noteworthy words are *expect to obtain*, and the **subject** of the question is assessment data noted in a client with a cataract. In this question, knowledge regarding the differences between the signs and symptoms of a cataract versus glaucoma will assist in answering the question correctly. Although a cloudy white pupil and photophobia occur in a client with a cataract, eye pain and frontal headaches do not. Therefore, options 1 and 2 are not entirely correct and need to be eliminated. Eye pain and frontal headaches occur in the client with glaucoma. From the remaining two options, recalling that excessive tearing occurs in the client with glaucoma, not the client with a cataract, will assist in eliminating option 4. Remember that all parts of the option need to be correct for the option to be correct!

#### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Cataract is a condition that affects the lens of the eye. On assessment the nurse would note a cloudy white pupil. Symptoms include a gradual loss of vision, photophobia, painless blurring and distortion of objects, and glare from bright lights. You will learn about cataracts, their treatment, and the nursing care involved during your medical-surgical nursing course when you study eye disorders.

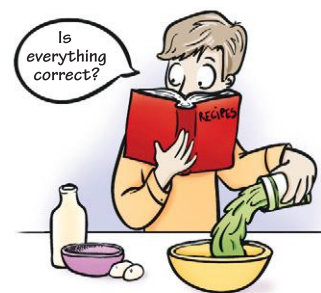
## Selecting the Umbrella Option: How Will This Help?

The umbrella option is a general statement that may incorporate the content of the other options within it. When you are answering a question and note that more than one option appears to be correct, look for the umbrella option.

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

Watch for comparable or alike options when answering exam questions, and if you encounter them, eliminate them because it is not possible for both of them to be correct. Additionally, look for options that are opposite. It is likely that one of the opposite options is the correct one!



Ensure that all parts of an option are correct!

### STUDY TIP

#### Student-to-Student

When preparing for nursing exams, remember that many questions will be related to nursing assessment. When studying certain conditions, it may be helpful to you to look at images or animations of expected assessment findings associated with these conditions, especially if you are a visual learner!

Look for the umbrella option!

The umbrella option will be the correct answer. Following is a sample question that illustrates this strategy.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Selecting the Umbrella Option

**Case Event:** In a telephone call from emergency medical services, the nurse in the emergency department is told that several victims who survived a plane crash and are suffering from cold exposure will be transported to the hospital.

**Question Query:** What is the **initial** nursing action by the emergency department nurse?

1. Call the nursing supervisor to activate the agency disaster plan.
2. Supply the trauma rooms with bottles of sterile water and normal saline.
3. Call the intensive care unit to request that nurses be sent to the emergency department.
4. Call the laundry department to request as many warm blankets as possible for the emergency department.

**Answer: 1**

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *initial*, and focus on the **subject**—the nursing action in the event of a disaster. As you read each option, you will note that all options are correct. In this type of question, look for the **umbrella option**. Option 1 is the **umbrella option**. Activating the agency disaster plan will ensure that the interventions in options 2, 3, and 4 will occur. Remember that the **umbrella option** incorporates the ideas of the other options within it.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A disaster preparedness plan is a structured and formal plan of action that is implemented when a disaster occurs in the health care agency or external to the agency, such as in the community. The plan provides a coordinated plan of action for all members of the health care team. You will learn about disasters and disaster preparedness plans during your community nursing course.



### What Strategies Will Help When Answering Questions Related to Laboratory Values?

LEARN NORMAL  
LABORATORY  
VALUES!

The questions on a nursing exam or the NCLEX exam related to laboratory values require you to identify whether the laboratory value is normal or abnormal, and then to think critically about the effects of the laboratory value in terms of the client. If you know the normal values, you will be able to determine if an abnormality exists when a laboratory value is presented in a question.

#### Normal Laboratory Values

Laboratory Test	Reference Intervals
<b>Arterial Blood Gases</b>	
pH	7.35-7.45
Pco <sub>2</sub>	35-45 mm Hg
HCN <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	22-27 mm Hg
Po <sub>2</sub>	80%-100%
Sao <sub>2</sub>	96%-100%

Normal Laboratory Values—cont'd	
Laboratory Test	Reference Intervals
<b>Renal Function Studies</b>	
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	8-25 mg/dL
Creatinine	0.6-1.3 mg/dL
<b>Gastrointestinal Studies</b>	
Cholesterol	Total: 140-199 mg/dL High-density lipoprotein (HDL): 30-70 mg/dL Low-density lipoprotein (LDL): less than 130 mg/dL
Triglycerides	Lower than 200 mg/dL
Protein	6-8 g/dL
Albumin	3.4-5 g/dL
Amylase	25-151 units/L
Lipase	10-140 units/L
Ammonia	10-80 mcg/dL
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	10-40 units/L
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)	10-30 units/L
Bilirubin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bilirubin, direct (conjugated): 0-0.3 mg/dL</li> <li>Bilirubin, indirect (unconjugated): 0.1-1 mg/dL</li> <li>Bilirubin, total: lower than 1.5 mg/dL</li> </ul>
<b>Glucose Studies</b>	
Glucose	70-110 mg/dL
Hemoglobin A <sub>1c</sub>	4%-5.9% (nondiabetic) 7% or lower: good diabetic control 7% to 8%: fail diabetic control Higher than 8%: poor diabetic control
<b>Erythrocyte Studies</b>	
Hemoglobin	Female: 12-15 g/dL Male: 14-16.5 g/dL
Hematocrit	Female: 35%-47% Male: 42%-52%
<b>Coagulation Studies</b>	
Platelets	150,000-400,000 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT)	20-36 sec, depending on testing method
Prothrombin time (PT)	9.5-11.8 sec
International normalized ratio (INR)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 to 3 for standard warfarin therapy</li> <li>3 to 4.5 for high-dose warfarin therapy</li> </ul>
<b>Electrolyte Values</b>	
Potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L
Sodium	135-145 mEq/L
Chloride	98-107 mEq/L
Bicarbonate (venous)	22-29 mEq/L
<b>White Blood Cell and Differential Count</b>	
White blood cells	4500-11,000 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Neutrophils	1800-7800 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Bands	0-700 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Eosinophils	0-450 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Basophils	0-200 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Lymphocytes	1000-4800 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>
Monocytes	0-800 cells/mm <sup>3</sup>

Continued

## Normal Laboratory Values—cont'd

Laboratory Test	Reference Intervals
<b>Cardiac Markers</b>	
Creatine kinase (CK)	CK-MB: 0%-5% of total CK value CK-MM: 95%-100% of total CK value CK-BB: 0% of CK value
Troponin I	Lower than 0.6 ng/mL
Troponin T	Lower than 0.1-0.2 ng/mL
Myoglobin	Lower than 90 mcg/L
Natriuretic peptides	Atrial natriuretic peptides (ANP): 22-27 pg/mL Brain natriuretic peptides (BNP): less than 100 pg/mL C-type natriuretic peptides (CNP): not determined
<b>Elements</b>	
Magnesium	1.6-2.6 mg/dL
Phosphorus	2.7-4.5 mg/dL
Calcium	8.6-10 mg/dL

Included here are some of the most common tests and their reference intervals (formally referred to as normal values). Laboratory values may vary depending on different techniques or different laboratories.

Points to review are the normal values for the most common laboratory tests, therapeutic serum medication levels of commonly prescribed medications, and determination of the need to implement specific actions based on the findings. Remember that most blood specimens should not be drawn during hemodialysis or from an extremity that has an IV solution running. Therapeutic serum medication levels of commonly prescribed medications are available in Chapter 11. The Normal Laboratory Values table lists the most commonly prescribed laboratory tests and their reference intervals.

When a question is presented on your exams regarding a specific laboratory value, note the disorder presented in the question and the associated body organ that is affected. This will help you determine the correct option. For example, if the question asks you about the immune status of a client receiving chemotherapy, assessment of laboratory values will focus on the white blood cell count. You will need to analyze the results as possibly being low and determine the specific client need, which in this case would be the risk for infection. In the client receiving chemotherapy who has a low white blood cell count, your plan should center on the immune system, specifically protecting that client from infection. Interventions focus on preventive interventions related to infection, perhaps even protective isolation measures, such as neutropenic precautions. Evaluation may focus on maintaining a normal temperature in the client. Following is a sample question that relates to a laboratory test.

## Laboratory Values

Note the disorder presented in the question!  
Identify whether the laboratory value is normal or abnormal!  
Identify the associated body organ that is affected as a result of the disorder!



## SAMPLE QUESTION: Laboratory Values

**Case Event:** A client with a diagnosis of sepsis is receiving antibiotics by the intravenous (IV) route.

**Question Query:** The nurse assesses for nephrotoxicity by monitoring which laboratory value **most** closely?

1. Lipase level
2. Platelet count
3. Blood urea nitrogen
4. White blood cell count

**Answer: 3**

## TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *most*. Focus on the information in the question, and note that the **subject** is nephrotoxicity. Read each option carefully, and note that option 3 is

the only option that relates to kidney function. Option 1 relates to pancreatic function. Option 2 relates to the hematological system. Option 4 relates to the immune system. Remember to note the disorder or **subject** presented in the question and the associated body organ that is affected as a result!

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Sepsis refers to a systemic infection that can occur as a result of a localized or other type of infection in the body. This serious infection needs to be treated aggressively with antibiotics, and usually blood cultures are done to determine the antibiotic of choice. Nephrotoxicity, which refers to the destruction of kidney cells, is a complication that can occur with the use of antibiotics. To monitor for nephrotoxicity, the nurse would check the results of the blood urea nitrogen and creatinine levels, which are kidney function tests. You will learn about antibiotics in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study infections and immune disorders.



## Visualizing the Information in the Case Event, Question Query, and Options: How Will This Help?

As you read the question, it is helpful to visualize the case event. Forming a mental image of the situation places you as the nurse into the scenario. This may be useful because as you create the mental image, you may recall a similar situation that you experienced in the actual clinical area and recall what the nurse did in the situation. In addition, visualize each option as you read it. Visualizing and relating the case event to a similar clinical experience can be a valuable strategy as you attempt to eliminate incorrect options. Following is a sample question that illustrates this strategy of visualizing the information.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Visualizing the Information in the Case Event, Question Query, and Options

**Case Event:** The nurse prepares to perform a sterile dressing change on an abdominal incision.

**Question Query:** The nurse explains the procedure to the client, washes her hands, and sets up the sterile field. The nurse should take which action **next**?

1. Don sterile gloves.
2. Assess the integrity of the abdominal incision.
3. Don clean gloves and remove the old dressing.
4. Clean the wound with povidone-iodine (Betadine) solution as prescribed.

**Answer: 3**

### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *next*. Form a mental image of this procedure, and visualize the steps that you would take in this procedure. You cannot clean the wound or assess the wound unless you remove the old dressing; therefore, eliminate options 2 and 4. From the remaining options, recall that sterile gloves are necessary for cleaning and dressing the incision once the old dressing is removed. This will direct you to option 3. Remember that visualizing and relating the case event to a similar clinical experience can be a valuable strategy as you attempt to eliminate incorrect options!

### ▶ TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A sterile procedure, such as a sterile dressing change, is one that involves taking measures so that no microorganisms come in contact with the wound or anything that is used to perform the procedure. There is a special technique that is used to maintain sterility when performing this procedure; you will learn this technique and how to perform sterile dressing changes during your fundamentals of nursing course.

Visualize the information!

Look for a concept in the question that is comparable or alike to a concept in one of the options!



## Looking for Concepts in the Question That Are Comparable or Alike to a Concept in One of the Options: How Will This Help?

Read the question carefully, noting the strategic words and the subject of the question. As you read each option, look for the option that contains comparable or alike concepts or has a relationship to those identified in the question. This strategy may help as you are eliminating the incorrect options. Following is a sample question that illustrates this strategy of looking for comparable or alike concepts.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Looking for Comparable or Alike Concepts in the Question and in One of the Options

**Case Event:** A client is admitted to the hospital with a diagnosis of pericarditis.

**Question Query:** The nurse assesses the client for which manifestation that differentiates pericarditis from other cardiopulmonary problems?

1. Anterior chest pain
2. Pericardial friction rub
3. Weakness and irritability
4. Chest pain that worsens on inspiration

**Answer:** 2

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the word *differentiates*, and focus on the **subject**—a manifestation that differentiates pericarditis from other cardiopulmonary problems. This tells you that the correct option will be one that is unique to this health problem. Note the relationship between the word *pericarditis* in the question and the word *pericardial* in the correct option. Also recall that a pericardial friction rub is heard when there is inflammation of the pericardial sac during the inflammatory phase of pericarditis. Remember to look for the option that contains a **comparable or alike** concept or has a relationship to the information in the question!

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Pericarditis is an inflammation of the pericardium (the sac that surrounds the heart) and can be associated with trauma, infection, myocardial infarction, malignant disease, or other disorders. The client exhibits fever, substernal chest pain, difficulty breathing, a dry nonproductive cough, and a rapid pulse rate. On auscultation of the lungs and chest, a pericardial friction rub and a muffled heartbeat over the apex of the heart would be heard. You will learn about auscultation of the lungs and chest during your physical assessment course and about pericarditis during your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiac disorders.



## What Strategies Will Help When Answering Questions Related to Client Positioning?

Nursing responsibility includes positioning clients in a safe and appropriate manner to provide safety and comfort. Knowledge regarding the client position required for a certain procedure or condition is expected. It is the nurse's responsibility to reduce the likelihood and prevent the development of complications related to an existing condition, prescribed treatment, or medical or surgical procedure. It is imperative that the nurse review the health care provider's prescriptions after treatments or procedures and take note of instructions regarding positioning and mobility.

When you are presented with a question that relates to positioning a client, focus on the information in the question, the client's diagnosis and the anatomical location of the client's diagnosis, and consider the pathophysiology of the disorder and the goals of care. That is, think about what complications you want to prevent. Some guidelines to remember when answering questions related to positioning are listed below.

### Guidelines Related to Positioning

- Elevation of an affected body part reduces edema.
  - Clients who have had neck or head surgery are placed in semi-Fowler's or Fowler's position.
  - After a liver biopsy the client is placed in a right lateral (side-lying) position to provide pressure to the site and prevent bleeding.
  - Clients receiving irrigations or feedings through a nasogastric, gastrostomy, or jejunostomy tube are placed in semi-Fowler's or Fowler's position to prevent aspiration.
  - The left Sims' position is used to administer a rectal enema or irrigation to allow the solution to flow by gravity in the natural direction of the colon.
  - Clients with a respiratory disorder or cardiovascular disorder are placed in semi-Fowler's or Fowler's position.
  - Clients with peripheral arterial disease may be advised to elevate their feet and legs at rest, because swelling can prevent arterial blood flow, but they should not raise their legs above the level of the heart because extreme elevation slows arterial blood flow; some clients may be advised to maintain a slightly dependent position to promote perfusion.
  - Clients with peripheral venous disease are usually advised to elevate their feet and legs above heart level.
  - Clients with a head injury are placed in semi-Fowler's or Fowler's position.
  - If a client develops autonomic dysreflexia, the head of the bed is elevated.
  - In clients with hemorrhagic strokes, the head of the bed is usually elevated to 30 degrees to reduce intracranial pressure and to facilitate venous drainage.
  - For clients with ischemic strokes, the head of the bed is usually kept flat.
  - After craniotomy the client should NOT be positioned on the operated site, especially if the bone flap has been removed, because the brain has no bony covering on the affected site; semi-Fowler's to Fowler's position is maintained with the head in a midline, neutral position to facilitate venous drainage from the head, and extreme hip and neck flexion is avoided.
  - With increased intracranial pressure, the client is placed in semi-Fowler's to Fowler's position; the head is maintained in a midline, neutral position to facilitate venous drainage from the head, and extreme hip and neck flexion is avoided.
  - In a spinal cord injury the client is immobilized on a spinal backboard, with the head in a neutral position, to prevent incomplete injury from becoming complete; head flexion, rotation, or extension is avoided; and the client is logrolled.
  - In the client who underwent a total hip replacement, positioning will depend on the surgical techniques used, the method of implantation, the prosthesis, and the health care provider's preference; extreme internal and external rotation and adduction are avoided, and side-lying on the operative side is usually not allowed (unless specifically prescribed by the health care provider).
- The following question relates to positioning a client.

### Client Positioning

Always review the health care provider's prescriptions!  
 Focus on the client's diagnosis!  
 Identify the anatomical location of the client's disorder!  
 Consider the pathophysiology of the disorder and the goals of care!  
 Think about what complications you want to prevent!



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Client Positioning

**Case Event:** The nurse assists a health care provider in performing a liver biopsy.

**Question Query:** After the biopsy the nurse plans to place the client in which position?

1. Prone
2. Supine
3. A left side-lying position with a small pillow or folded towel under the puncture site
4. A right side-lying position with a small pillow or folded towel under the puncture site

**Answer:** 4

#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

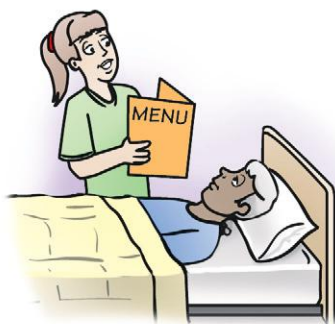
Focus on the **subject**, positioning after liver biopsy, and the anatomical location of the procedure, and think about what complication you want to prevent. In this situation you want to prevent bleeding. Remember that the liver is on the right side of the body and that the application of pressure on the right side will minimize the escape of blood or bile through the puncture site, because this position compresses the liver against the chest wall at the biopsy site. Remember to focus on the **subject** of the question, the client's diagnosis, and the anatomical location of the client's diagnosis, and consider the pathophysiology of the disorder and the goals of care!

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

A liver biopsy is a diagnostic procedure in which local anesthesia is administered followed by the introduction of a special needle into the liver to obtain a specimen for pathological examination. Bleeding is a concern following the procedure, and this is the reason why the client will be placed on the right side. This position provides pressure at the biopsy site by compressing the liver against the chest wall. You will learn about a liver biopsy in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.



### What Strategies Will Help When Answering Questions Related to Therapeutic Diets?



On nursing examinations, you may be asked questions about diet therapy and certain food items that are allowed with certain diets. You may also be asked about a particular diet that may be prescribed for a client with a certain disorder. Therefore, nutritional therapy and knowing the nutritional components of various food items are essential. Some strategies that you can use to help you answer these questions if you are unsure of the answer are listed below and are followed by a practice question that relates to a therapeutic diet. In addition, the accompanying table lists therapeutic diets, their indications for use, and associated nursing considerations.

#### Strategies for Answering Questions Related to Therapeutic Diets

1. Focus on the data in the question.
2. Note the subject of the question: Is the question asking about a specific diet or a specific food item?
3. Note the diagnosis of the client, and think about the organ system that is affected.
4. Think about the pathophysiology associated with the client's disorder.
5. Look at the options that are provided, and try to relate the client's disorder to the correct option.



Therapeutic Diets	
Indications	Nursing Considerations
<p><b>Clear Liquid Diet</b></p> <p>Initial feeding after complete bowel rest Used initially to feed malnourished person or person who has not had any oral intake for some time</p> <p>Bowel preparation for surgery or tests Postsurgical diet To treat fever, vomiting, or diarrhea Used in gastroenteritis</p>	<p>Clear liquid is deficient in energy and most nutrients The body digests and absorbs clear liquids easily Contributes to little or no residue in gastrointestinal (GI) tract</p> <p>Can be unappetizing and boring As a transition diet, used only as short-term measure Consists of foods that are relatively transparent to light, are clear, and liquefy at body or room temperature</p> <p>Includes items such as water, bouillon, clear broth, carbonated beverages, gelatin, hard candy, lemonade, ice pops, and regular or decaffeinated coffee or tea</p> <p>Limit amount of caffeine consumed by client because caffeine can cause an upset stomach and sleeplessness</p> <p>Client may have salt or sugar Dairy products and fruit juices with pulp not allowed</p>
<p><b>Full Liquid Diet</b></p> <p>May be used as second diet after clear liquids following surgery or for client who is unable to chew or swallow or tolerate solid foods</p>	<p>Nutritionally deficient in energy and most nutrients Includes both clear and opaque liquid foods and those that liquefy at body temperature</p> <p>Includes all clear liquids and items such as plain ice cream, sherbet, breakfast drinks, milk, pudding and custard, strained soups, refined cooked cereals, fruit juices, and strained vegetable juices</p> <p>Use of a complete nutritional liquid supplement is often necessary to meet nutrient needs for clients on a full liquid diet for more than 3 days</p>
<p><b>Mechanical Diet</b></p> <p>Provides foods that have been mechanically altered in texture to require minimal chewing</p> <p>Used for clients who have difficulty chewing but tolerate more variety in texture than a liquid diet offers</p> <p>Used for clients who have dental problems, surgery of the head or neck, or dysphagia (requires swallowing evaluation and may require thickened liquids)</p>	<p>Degree of texture modification depends on individual need, including puréed, mashed, ground, or chopped</p> <p>Avoid nuts; dried fruit; raw fruits and vegetables; fried foods; tough, smoked, or salted meats; and foods with coarse textures</p>
<p><b>Soft Diet</b></p> <p>Used in clients with difficulty chewing or swallowing</p> <p>Used for clients with ulcerations of mouth or gums, oral surgery, broken jaw, plastic surgery of head or neck, or dysphagia, or for the client who has had a stroke</p>	<p>Serve clients with mouth sores foods at cooler temperatures</p> <p>Clients who have difficulty chewing and swallowing because of reduced flow of saliva can increase salivary flow by sucking on sour candy</p> <p>Encourage client to eat variety of soft foods Provide plenty of fluids with meals to ease chewing and swallowing of foods</p> <p>Drinking fluids through a straw may be easier than drinking from a cup or glass</p> <p>All foods and seasonings are permitted; however, liquid, chopped, or puréed foods or regular foods with a soft consistency are tolerated best</p> <p>Avoid foods that contain nuts or seeds, which can easily become trapped in the mouth and cause discomfort</p> <p>Avoid raw fruits and vegetables, fried foods, and whole grains</p>

Continued

## Therapeutic Diets—cont'd

### Indications

### Nursing Considerations

#### Low-residue, Low-fiber Diet

Supplies foods that are least likely to form an obstruction when intestinal tract is narrowed by inflammation or scarring or when GI motility is slowed  
Inflammatory bowel disease, partial obstructions of intestinal tract, gastroenteritis, diarrhea, or other GI disorders

Foods high in carbohydrates are usually low in residue; include white bread, refined cooked cereals, cooked potatoes without skins, white rice, and refined pasta  
Avoid raw fruits (except bananas), vegetables, nuts and seeds, plant fiber, and whole grains  
Limit dairy products; usually are limited to two servings per day

#### High-residue, High-fiber Diet

Constipation; irritable bowel syndrome when primary symptom is alternating constipation and diarrhea; and asymptomatic diverticular disease

Adds volume and weight to stool and speeds movement of undigested materials through intestine  
Consists of fruits and vegetables and whole-grain products  
Increase fiber gradually and provide adequate fluids to reduce possible undesirable side effects, such as abdominal cramps, bloating, diarrhea, and dehydration  
Limit gas-forming foods

#### Cardiac Diet

Atherosclerosis, diabetes mellitus, hyperlipidemia, hypertension, myocardial infarction, and chronic kidney disease  
Reduces risk of heart disease

Limit total amount of fats and amounts of polyunsaturated, monounsaturated, saturated, and *trans* fats; cholesterol; and sodium

#### Fat-restricted Diet

Used to reduce symptoms of abdominal pain, steatorrhea, flatulence, and diarrhea associated with high intakes of dietary fat and to decrease nutrient losses caused by ingestion of dietary fat in individuals with malabsorptive disorders  
Used for clients with malabsorption disorders, pancreatitis, gallbladder disease, and gastroesophageal reflux

Restricts amount of total fat, including saturated, *trans*, polyunsaturated, and monounsaturated  
Clients with malabsorption may also have difficulty tolerating fiber and lactose  
Vitamin and mineral deficiencies may occur in clients with diarrhea or steatorrhea

#### High-calorie, High-protein Diet

Severe stress, burns, wound healing, cancer, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), respiratory failure, or any other type of debilitating disease

Encourage nutrient-dense, high-calorie, high-protein foods, such as whole milk and milk products, peanut butter, nuts and seeds, beef, chicken, fish, pork, and eggs  
High-calorie foods: sugar, cream, gravy, oil, butter, mayonnaise, dried fruit, avocado, and honey  
Encourage snacks between meals, such as milkshakes, instant breakfasts, and nutritional supplements

#### Carbohydrate-consistent Diet

Diabetes mellitus, hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia, and obesity

The Exchange System for Meal Planning, developed by the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics and the American Diabetes Association, is a food guide that may be recommended  
The Exchange System groups foods according to amounts of carbohydrates, fats, and proteins they contain  
Major food groups include carbohydrate group, meat and meat substitute group, and fat group  
The MyPlate diet may also be recommended

#### Sodium-restricted Diet

Hypertension, heart failure, kidney disease, cardiac disease, and liver disease

Individualized and can include 4 g of sodium daily (no-added salt diet), 2-3 g of sodium daily (moderate restriction), 1 g of sodium daily (strict restriction), or 500 mg of sodium daily (severe restriction and seldom prescribed)

Therapeutic Diets—cont'd	
Indications	Nursing Considerations
	<p>Encourage intake of fresh, rather than processed, foods, which have higher amounts of sodium</p> <p>Canned, frozen, instant, smoked, pickled, and boxed items usually contain higher amounts of sodium</p> <p>Lunch meats, soy sauce, salad dressings, fast foods, soups, and snacks such as potato chips and pretzels contain large amounts of sodium</p> <p>Certain medications contain significant amounts of sodium</p> <p>May use salt substitutes to improve palatability; most salt substitutes contain large amounts of potassium and should not be used by clients with renal disease</p>
<p><b>Protein-restricted Diet</b> Kidney disease or hepatic disease</p>	<p>Provides enough protein to maintain nutritional status but not an amount that will allow buildup of waste products from protein metabolism (40-60 g of protein daily)</p> <p>The smaller the amount of protein allowed, the more important it becomes that all protein included in the diet be of high quality</p> <p>Adequate total energy intake from foods is critical for clients on protein-restricted diets (protein will be used for energy, rather than for protein synthesis)</p> <p>Special low-protein products, such as pastas, bread, cookies, wafers, and gelatin made with wheat starch, can improve energy intake and add variety to the diet</p> <p>Carbohydrates in powdered or liquid form can also provide additional energy</p> <p>Vegetables and fruits contain some protein; for very low-protein diets, these foods must be calculated into the diet</p> <p>Foods are limited from milk, meat, bread, and starch group</p>
<p><b>Renal Diet</b> Used for client with acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease and those requiring hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis</p>	<p>Controlled amounts of protein, sodium, phosphorus, calcium, potassium, and fluids may be prescribed; may also need modification in fiber, cholesterol, and fat, based on individual requirements</p> <p>Most clients receiving dialysis need to restrict fluids</p>
<p><b>Potassium-modified Diet</b> Low-potassium diet indicated for hyperkalemia, which may be due to impaired renal function, hypoaldosteronism, Addison's disease, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor medications, immunosuppressive medications, potassium-sparing diuretics, and chronic hyperkalemia High-potassium diet indicated for hypokalemia, which may be due to renal tubular acidosis, GI losses (diarrhea, vomiting), intracellular shifts, potassium-wasting diuretics, antibiotics, mineralocorticoid or glucocorticoid excess from primary or secondary aldosteronism, Cushing's syndrome, or exogenous steroid use</p>	<p>Foods low in potassium: applesauce, green beans, cabbage, lettuce, peppers, grapes, blueberries, cooked summer squash, cooked turnip greens, fresh pineapple, and raspberries</p> <p>Foods high in potassium: avocado, bananas, cantaloupe, carrots, fish, mushrooms, oranges, pork, beef, veal, potatoes, raisins, spinach, strawberries, tomatoes</p>

Continued

## Therapeutic Diets—cont'd

## Indications

## Nursing Considerations

**High-calcium Diet**

Calcium needed during bone growth and in adulthood to prevent osteoporosis and to facilitate vascular contraction and vasodilation, muscle contraction, and nerve transmission

Primary dietary sources of calcium are dairy products. Clients with lactose intolerance need to incorporate sources of calcium other than dairy products into their dietary patterns regularly. Foods high in calcium: broccoli, carrots, cheese, collard greens, green beans, milk, rhubarb, spinach, tofu, yogurt

**Low-purine Diet**

Used to treat gout, kidney stones, and elevated uric acid levels

Purine is precursor for uric acid, which forms stones and crystals. Foods to restrict: anchovies, herring, mackerel, sardines, scallops, organ meats, gravies, meat extracts, wild game, goose, and sweetbreads

**High-iron Diet**

Used in anemia

Replaces iron deficit from inadequate intake or loss. Includes organ meats, meat, egg yolks, whole-wheat products, dark green leafy vegetables, dried fruit, legumes

**Gluten-free Diet**

Used in Celiac disease or for those with an intolerance to gluten

Foods Allowed: Meat such as beef, pork, poultry, and fish; eggs; milk and some dairy products; vegetables, fruits, rice, corn, gluten-free flour, puffed rice, cornflakes, cornmeal, and precooked gluten-free cereals are allowed. Foods Prohibited: Commercially prepared ice cream; malted milk; prepared puddings; and grains, including anything made from wheat, rye, oats, or barley, such as breads, rolls, cookies, cakes, crackers, cereal, spaghetti, macaroni noodles, beer, and ale, are prohibited



## SAMPLE QUESTION: Therapeutic Diet

**Case Event:** The nurse is providing dietary instructions to a client who is immobile and experiencing frequent episodes of constipation. The client complains that the constipation is uncomfortable.

**Question Query:** The nurse should tell the client that which food item would be **most** helpful to include in the diet?

1. Pasta
2. Cabbage
3. White bread
4. Whole-grain bread

**Answer: 4**

**TEST-TAKING STRATEGY**

Note the **strategic word** *most*. Focus on the data in the question, and note the client complains of constipation. Think about the body organ affected in this condition and the associated pathophysiology. A client with constipation needs to include high-fiber foods in the diet. The only food item that is high in fiber is whole grains. Also note that options 1 and 3 are **comparable or alike** in that they are low-fiber foods. Option 2 is a gas-forming food and needs to be avoided because it will increase any discomfort that the client may be experiencing. Remember to focus on the data in the question, note the client's diagnosis or complaint, and think about the body organ affected and the associated pathophysiology.

### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

Constipation is a condition in which the client is having difficulty passing stool or is experiencing the incomplete or infrequent passage of hard stool. If immobility is the cause, one intervention is to include adequate amounts of fiber and fluids in the diet. You will learn about constipation in your fundamentals of nursing course when you study elimination patterns and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.

## Vegetarian and Semi-Vegetarian Diets

### Types of Diets

#### **Pescatarian**

Abstains from eating all meat and animal flesh with the exception of fish

#### **Flexitarian/Semi-Vegetarian**

Consumes mostly a vegetarian diet, but occasionally eats meat

#### **Vegetarian (Lacto/Ovo-Vegetarian)**

Does not consume beef, pork, poultry, fish, shellfish or animal flesh of any kind, but does eat eggs and dairy products

A lacto-vegetarian does not eat eggs but does eat dairy products.

An ovo-vegetarian does not eat meat or dairy products but does eat eggs.

#### **Vegan**

Does not consume meat of any kind and also does not eat eggs, dairy products, or processed foods containing these or other animal-derived ingredients such as gelatin

#### **Raw Vegan/Raw Food Diet**

Consumes unprocessed vegan foods that have not been heated above 115° F (46° C)

#### **Macrobiotic**

Consumes unprocessed vegan foods, such as whole grains and fruits and vegetables, and occasionally consumes fish; also consumes Asian vegetables, such as daikon, and sea vegetables, such as seaweed

### Nursing Considerations

Ensure that client eats sufficient amount of varied foods to meet normal nutrient and energy needs

Educate client about consuming complementary proteins over course of each day, to ensure all essential amino acids are provided

Potential deficiencies in vegetarian diets: energy, protein, vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, zinc, iron, calcium, omega-3 fatty acids, and vitamin D (if limited exposure to sunlight)

To enhance absorption of iron, vegetarians should include good source of iron and vitamin C with each meal

Foods commonly eaten: tofu, tempeh, soy milk and soy products, meat analogues, legumes, nuts and seeds, sprouts, and variety of fruits and vegetables

Soy protein considered equivalent in quality to animal proteins



## What Strategies Will Help When Answering Questions Related to Disasters?

A disaster is any human-made or natural event that causes destruction and devastation and requires assistance from others. For a health care agency, a disaster can be external or internal. External disasters include those that occur outside the health care agency, and internal disasters include those that occur inside the health care agency. If a disaster occurs, the agency disaster preparedness plan (emergency response plan) is immediately activated by the health care agency, and the nurse responds by following the directions identified in the plan. In the community setting, if the nurse is the first responder to a disaster, the nurse cares for the victims by attending to those with life-threatening problems first; once rescue workers arrive at the scene, immediate plans for triage should begin.

### Natural Disasters

Blizzards  
 Communicable disease epidemics  
 Cyclones  
 Droughts  
 Earthquakes  
 Floods  
 Forest fires  
 Hailstorms  
 Hurricanes  
 Landslides  
 Mudslides  
 Tornadoes  
 Tsunamis (tidal waves)  
 Volcanic eruptions

### STUDY TIP

#### Scope of Practice

When working outside of a health care facility, such as at the scene of an accident, it is necessary to remain mindful of what treatment you can provide as a nurse.

When triaging victims of a disaster at a disaster site, think survivability! Determine which victims sustained life-threatening injuries and need immediate treatment to sustain life!

### Human-Made Disasters

Dam failures resulting in flooding  
 Hazardous substance accidents, such as pollution, chemical spills, or toxic gas leaks  
 Accidents that result in the release of radiological materials  
 Resource shortages, such as food, water, and electricity  
 Structural collapse, fire, or explosions  
 Terrorist attacks, such as bombings, riots, and bioterrorism  
 Transportation accidents

The NCLEX exam may contain questions about disasters and focuses on nursing interventions. A question may identify the nurse as the first responder to a disaster site and ask you to identify the victim that the nurse should attend to first. If the question identifies a site outside the hospital environment, select the option that identifies a victim that the nurse could realistically save. Think about survivability and ask yourself, “Who can I save?” Also use prioritizing skills. Ask yourself, “Which victims sustained injuries that are not critical or life threatening and could wait to be cared for?”

An NCLEX question may also identify the nurse as the leader of a nursing unit and ask which clients in the unit could be discharged to free up beds for victims of a disaster brought to the emergency department who need to be admitted to the hospital. In this situation, read each client's description carefully and determine if the client can safely return home and if there are home care and community resources that could care for the client and meet the client's needs. These types of questions require the use of prioritizing skills.



### SAMPLE QUESTION: Human-Made Disaster

**Case Event:** The nurse is the first responder to the site of a disaster in which several people were injured in a train crash.

**Question Query:** Which victim of the crash should the nurse attend to **first**?

1. A victim with a fractured arm
2. A victim with multiple bruises on the legs
3. A victim with a severe head injury who is not breathing
4. A victim with an upper leg injury who is bleeding profusely

**Answer: 4**

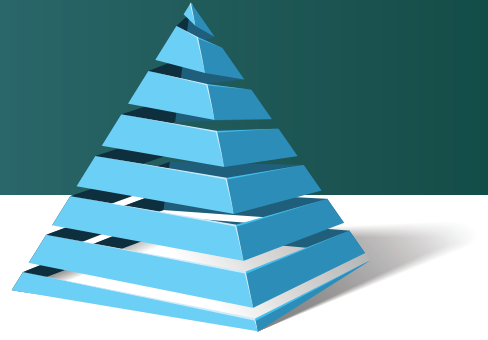
#### TEST-TAKING STRATEGY

Note the **strategic word** *first*. Focus on the data in the question, and note that the disaster site is outside the hospital environment. Therefore, determine which victim has a life-threatening injury and requires immediate treatment to sustain life. Think survivability. The victims described in options 1 and 2 sustained injuries that are not critical or life threatening and could wait for care. Outside the hospital environment, resources are limited. Therefore, it is unlikely that the nurse could help the victim with a severe head injury who is not breathing. The nurse could apply pressure to the leg of the victim who is bleeding profusely and could save this victim's life.

#### TIP FOR THE BEGINNING NURSING STUDENT

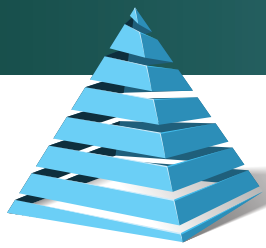
Disaster management is an important role of the nurse. An important point to remember is that the nurse needs to use prioritizing skills to determine how best to proceed in a disaster situation. Many types of disasters can occur, but the principles of care remain the same. The immediate priority of the nurse is to attend to the victim who has immediate and life-threatening needs and who could be saved. You will learn about disaster management and the nurse's roles and responsibilities in your community nursing course.

# PART III



## Practice Tests

- 13 Fundamental Skills Questions, 132
- 14 Adult Health Questions, 147
- 15 Mental Health Questions, 166
- 16 Maternity Questions, 178
- 17 Child Health Questions, 191
- 18 Pharmacology Questions, 202
- 19 Delegating/Prioritizing Questions, 216
- 20 Leadership/Management Questions, 231



## CHAPTER 13

# Fundamental Skills Questions

1. The nurse develops a plan of care for a newly hospitalized client who reports difficulty sleeping. The nurse plans to implement which **best** intervention?
  - 1 Offer the client a sleeping pill at night.
  - 2 Provide the client with a snack at bedtime.
  - 3 Ask the client what the client does to prepare for sleep.
  - 4 Leave the television on in the client's room at a very low volume.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** The best intervention is to ask the client what the client does to prepare for sleep. The nurse needs to assess habits that are beneficial to the client compared with those that disturb sleep. Options 1, 2, and 4 provide interventions without assessing what measures would be helpful to the client.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *best*, and use the **steps of the nursing process**. The only option that addresses assessment/data collection is option 3. Review: care of the client experiencing difficulty **sleeping**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about sleep patterns and measures to promote sleep in your fundamentals of nursing course. An important point to remember is that you always want to determine what measures the client takes at home to sleep and incorporate these measures in the plan of care during hospitalization.

**References**

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 410, 413-414; Potter et al (2013), pp. 949-950.

2. The nurse notes documentation in a client's medical record that the client is experiencing anuria. Based on this notation, what determination should the nurse make?
  - 1 The client is unable to produce urine.
  - 2 The client has a diminished capacity to form urine.
  - 3 The client has difficulty having a bowel movement.
  - 4 The client has episodes of alternating constipation and diarrhea.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Anuria is the term used to describe an inability to produce urine. Oliguria is a diminished capacity to form urine and is most likely the result of a decrease in renal perfusion. Options 3 and 4 do not relate to urinary tract dysfunction.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the definition of anuria. Use medical terminology skills to answer the question. Recalling that the prefix *an-* refers to absence and the suffix *-uria* refers to urine will direct you to the correct option. Review: the definition of **anuria**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about the terminology used to describe conditions related to the renal system in your fundamentals of nursing course and your medical-surgical nursing course when you study renal disorders. It is important to remember that the client should maintain a urinary output of at least 30 mL/hour and the nurse should monitor for this



occurrence. A decline in urine output could indicate kidney dysfunction or failure, hypovolemia, or an obstruction in the renal system. This occurrence needs to be reported.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 789; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1474.

3. The nurse is caring for a client who has a fever and is diaphoretic. The nurse monitors the client's intake and output and expects which finding?

- 1 The client's urine is diluted.
- 2 The client's output is decreased.
- 3 The client's urine production is increased.
- 4 The majority of the client's fluid is excreted through the skin.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Febrile conditions affect urine production. The client who is diaphoretic loses fluids through insensible water loss, which decreases urine production. However, the increased body temperature associated with fever increases accumulation of body wastes. Although urine volume may be reduced, it is highly concentrated. Some fluid (not the majority) will be lost through the skin. Options 1, 3, and 4 are incorrect.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, care of the client experiencing a fever and diaphoresis. This will direct you to the correct option because this client will also be losing some (not the majority) fluid through the skin. Review: conditions that affect **fluid balance**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about fluid balance and monitoring intake and output in your fundamentals of nursing course. An important point to remember is that fluid can be lost through the skin, the lungs during breathing, the kidneys, and the gastrointestinal tract. Normally most fluid is lost through the kidneys, but if the client has a fever and is diaphoretic (sweating), more than the normal amount is lost through the skin and less than the normal amount is lost through the kidneys.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 176-177; Linton (2012), pp. 202-203.

4. The nurse provides instructions to a female client regarding the procedure for collecting a midstream urine sample. The nurse should tell the client to perform which action?

- 1 Douche before collecting the specimen.
- 2 Cleanse the perineum from front to back.
- 3 Collect the urine in the cup as soon as the urine flow begins.
- 4 Collect the specimen before bedtime, and bring it to the laboratory the next morning.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and  
Learning

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** As part of correct procedure, the client should cleanse the perineum from front to back with the antiseptic swabs that are packaged with the specimen kit. The client should begin the flow of urine, collecting the sample after starting the flow of urine. The specimen should be sent to the laboratory as soon as possible and not allowed to stand. Improper specimen handling can yield inaccurate test results. It is not normal procedure to douche before collecting the specimen.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, urine collection for laboratory analysis. Noting the name of the type of sample—*midstream*—will assist in eliminating option 3. Recalling that the specimen should be sent or brought to the laboratory immediately after collection will assist in eliminating option 4. From the remaining options, use basic principles related to hygiene and infection control to assist in directing you to the correct option. Review: the procedure for collecting a **midstream urine sample**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about basic hygiene principles, asepsis, and collecting urine specimens in

your fundamentals of nursing course. An important client teaching point to remember is that the female client is taught to always wipe or cleanse the perineum from front to back to prevent the spread of microorganisms from the rectal area to the labial area, which could result in a urinary tract infection. Additionally, the male client is instructed to cleanse the penis with the towelettes, cleansing from the meatus outward, and retracting foreskin if present.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 495-496; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1479.

5. The nurse provides dietary instructions to a client diagnosed with iron deficiency anemia. The nurse should tell the client to increase the intake of which food item?
- 1 Plums
  - 2 Red apples
  - 3 Egg whites
  - 4 Kidney beans

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The client with iron deficiency anemia should increase intake of foods that are naturally high in iron, including kidney beans, soybeans, chickpeas, lima beans, cooked Swiss chard, red meat, liver and other organ meats, blackstrap molasses, lentils, egg yolk, spinach, kale, turnip tops, beet greens, carrots, raisins, and apricots. The food items in options 1, 2, and 3 are not high in iron.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a food high in iron. Eliminate options 1 and 2 first because they are **comparable or alike** and are fruit items. From the remaining options, recall either that beans are high in iron or that egg yolk (not egg white) is high in iron. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: food items high in **iron**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Iron deficiency anemia is a condition in which the client lacks sufficient red blood cells. One cause is an insufficient intake of dietary iron. You will learn about anemia in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study hematological disorders. You will also learn about the foods high in iron when you study nutrition. These food items are important to know because you will be teaching your client about a high-iron diet.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 347-348; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 876-870; Schlenker, Roth (2011), p. 153.

6. A client asks the nurse about the use of a complementary or alternative measure that will assist in promoting sleep. The nurse should make which suggestion?
- 1 Herbal therapy
  - 2 Acupuncture sessions
  - 3 Muscle relaxation techniques
  - 4 Traditional Chinese medicine sessions

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** A simple relaxation technique, such as muscle relaxation, can help reduce any existing anxiety and promote sleep. Herbal therapy involves the use of herbs (plant or a plant part). Some herbs have been determined to be safe, but other herbs, even in small amounts, can be toxic and the nurse would not recommend their use to a client. The client who is taking prescription medications should consult the health care provider regarding the use of herbs because serious herb-medication interactions can occur. Acupuncture is an invasive procedure that stimulates certain points on the body by the insertion of special needles to modify the perception of pain, normalize physiological functions, or treat or prevent disease. Traditional Chinese medicine focuses on restoring and maintaining a balanced flow of vital energy; interventions

include acupressure, acupuncture, herbal therapies, diet, meditation, and tai chi and qi gong (exercise that focuses on breathing, visualization, and movement). Any invasive therapy requires a prescription from the health care provider.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the relationship between the words *promoting sleep* and option 3. Also note that options 1, 2, and 4 are **comparable or alike** in that they include invasive measures. Review: **complementary and alternative therapies**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Complementary and alternative therapies include nontraditional and non-Western medical forms of treatment and may be prescribed to supplement existing medical therapies. They must be prescribed by the health care provider. You will learn about complementary and alternative therapies in your fundamentals of nursing course and your pharmacology course. An important point to remember is that the nurse would not recommend the use of these treatments, especially invasive ones, without first consulting the health care provider. Some of these therapies can harm the client.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 399; Potter et al (2013), pp. 644, 647-648.

7. The nurse instructs a client taking a potassium-retaining diuretic about foods high in potassium that need to be avoided. The nurse determines that the client **needs further instruction** if the client states that which food is high in potassium?

- 1 Kiwi
- 2 Celery
- 3 Oranges
- 4 Dried fruit

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Meats, some dairy products, dried fruits, bananas, cantaloupe, kiwi, and oranges are high in potassium. Vegetables that are high in potassium include avocados, broccoli, dried beans or peas, lima beans, mushrooms, potatoes, seaweed, soybeans, and spinach. Celery is a vegetable that is low in potassium.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *needs further instruction*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and indicate that you need to select the option that is an incorrect client response. Eliminate options 1, 3, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and are fruit items. Review: food items high and low in **potassium**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A diuretic is a medication that promotes the formation and excretion of urine and leads to an increase in urine output. These medications are used for clients with excess body fluid, such as those with hypertension or heart failure. Many diuretics cause the loss of potassium in the urine. A potassium-retaining diuretic does not, and the client tends to retain potassium rather than lose it. The client is taught about diet and the foods that are high and low in potassium. Both a low potassium level and a high potassium level can cause serious problems for the client; therefore, potassium imbalances are important to learn. You will learn about potassium imbalances and nutrition in your fundamentals of nursing course, and you will learn about diuretics in your pharmacology course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 44; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 186-187; Schlenker, Roth (2011), pp. 145-146.

8. A clear liquid diet has been prescribed for a client. The nurse should offer which item to the client?
- 1 Apple juice
  - 2 Orange juice
  - 3 Tomato juice
  - 4 Ice cream without nuts

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** A clear liquid diet consists of foods that are relatively transparent. The food items in options 2, 3, and 4 would be included in a full liquid diet.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 2, 3, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and are items allowed on a full liquid diet. Remember that a clear liquid diet consists of foods that are relatively transparent. Option 1 is the only food item that is transparent. Review: food items allowed on a **clear liquid diet** and **full liquid diet**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A clear liquid diet may be prescribed to provide fluids to treat or prevent dehydration, to provide complete bowel rest, to feed a malnourished person or a person who has not had any oral intake for some time, in preparation for surgery or tests, or as a postsurgical diet. A clear liquid diet consists of foods that are relatively transparent. You will learn about this type of diet and other diets in your fundamentals of nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 630; Potter et al (2013), p. 1017.

9. Oxygen by nasal cannula at 4 L/minute is prescribed for a hospitalized client. The nurse should perform which action(s) in the care of the client? **Select all that apply.**
- 1 Humidify the oxygen.
  - 2 Apply water-soluble lubricant to the nares.
  - 3 Instruct the client to breathe through the nose only.
  - 4 Instruct the client and family about the purpose of the oxygen.
  - 5 Increase the oxygen flow if the client complains of dryness in the nares.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1, 2, 4**

**Rationale:** The nasal cannula provides for lower concentrations of oxygen and can even be used with mouth breathers because movement of air through the oropharynx pulls oxygen from the nasopharynx. The nurse should humidify the oxygen and apply water soluble lubricant to the nares to prevent and treat dryness. The nurse should also instruct the client and family regarding the purpose of the oxygen. It is not necessary to instruct a client to breathe only through the nose. It is unnecessary and potentially harmful to increase the oxygen flow; this action requires a health care provider's prescription. Additionally, increasing the flow of oxygen will contribute further to dryness of the nares.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, care of the client receiving oxygen via nasal cannula. Noting that option 3 contains the **closed-ended word** *only* will assist in eliminating this option. Additionally, recalling the scope of nursing practice will assist in eliminating option 5. Review: care of the client receiving **oxygen**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Oxygen therapy is a treatment measure that needs to be prescribed by the health care provider and is used when a client is not able to take in sufficient oxygen on his or her own to adequately provide nutrients to the cells of the body. You will learn about oxygen therapy in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 557-558; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 563, 568.

10. The nurse is caring for a client who is diagnosed with a terminal disease. The nurse should plan which appropriate intervention(s) in the care of the client? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 Offer to contact the clergy to support the client's spiritual needs.
- 2 Make referrals to other disciplines based on the client's stated needs.
- 3 Plan to balance the client's need for assistance with that for independence.
- 4 Provide extremely thorough answers to each question asked by the client or family.
- 5 Ask the client about goals for the treatment plan and how he or she can best be assisted in achieving these goals

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Caring

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1, 2, 3, 5**

**Rationale:** In planning care for the client diagnosed with a terminal disease, the nurse provides information and answers questions to the extent most helpful to the client and family; extremely thorough answers may be overwhelming at this time. The nurse makes referrals to other disciplines and clergy based on an identified need and tries to balance the client's need for assistance with the need to maintain some measure of independence. It is also very helpful to spend time with the client and to ask the client about treatment goals and the best way these goals can be achieved; this involves the client in planning his or her care and allows the client to maintain a sense of control at this vulnerable time.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, care of the client who is dying. Note the **closed-ended word** *extremely* in option 4 to assist in eliminating this option. Review: the psychosocial needs of the **dying client**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The client who is diagnosed with a terminal disease may have many physical and psychosocial needs, and you will learn about these needs and how to care for the terminal client and the dying client in your fundamentals of nursing course. An important point to remember is that the client's family may also need some supportive care. Simply letting the family know that you are there to assist them if they should need anything can be quite supportive. Use therapeutic communication techniques to focus on the client's and family's feelings. You will learn about these techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and mental health or psychiatric nursing course.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 115-117; Potter et al (2013), pp. 320-322.

11. The nurse is calculating the client's fluid intake during a 12-hour period. The client consumed 4 oz of juice, 8 oz of coffee, and 6 oz of milk at breakfast. At lunchtime the client consumed 8 oz of iced tea and 6 oz of water. At dinner-time the client consumed 8 oz of coffee and 6 oz of lemonade. The client also consumed 4 oz of water at 10:00 AM, at 2:00 PM, and again at 6:00 PM when he received his oral medications. At 8:00 AM and 2:00 PM the client received an intravenous antibiotic diluted in 50 mL of normal saline. What is the client's total intake in milliliters? **Fill-in-the-blank.**

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_ mL

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1840 mL**

**Rationale:** There are 30 mL in 1 oz. The client consumed 4 oz of juice, 8 oz of coffee, and 6 oz of milk at breakfast. This totals 18 oz and equals 540 mL. At lunchtime the client consumed 8 oz of iced tea and 6 oz of water. This totals 14 oz and equals 420 mL. At dinner-time the client consumed 8 oz of coffee and 6 oz of lemonade. This totals 14 oz and equals 420 mL. The client also consumed 4 oz of water at 10:00 AM, at 2:00 PM, and again at 6:00 PM when he received his oral medications. This totals 12 oz and equals 360 mL. At 8:00 AM and 2:00 PM, the client received an intravenous antibiotic diluted in 50 mL of normal saline. This totals 100 mL. Therefore, adding 540 mL, 420 mL, 420 mL, 360 mL, and 100 mL equals 1840 mL.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, calculation of client intake. Note that the question requires you to convert ounces to milliliters. Remember that there are 30 mL in 1 oz. Read the question carefully, note the amount of oral intake in ounces, and then convert the total to milliliters. Use a calculator to assist in answering the question. Also remember to add the amount of intravenous intake. Review: the procedure for calculating fluid **intake**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Calculating intake and output will be a nursing measure that you will be implementing for many of your clients. It involves knowing how many milliliters are contained in various eating and drinking utensils and knowing that there are 30 mL in 1 oz. If you can remember this conversion and learn about the amount of milliliters in various eating and drinking utensils, then simple addition will be all that is necessary to determine intake and output. You will learn about calculating intake and output in your fundamentals of nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 662-663; Potter et al (2013), pp. 898, 900.

12. The nurse is teaching a client about a low-fat diet. The nurse should tell the client that it is acceptable to consume which food item(s)? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 Lentil soup
- 2 Watermelon
- 3 Tomato soup
- 4 Low-fat yogurt
- 5 Cream of mushroom soup

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1, 2, 3, 4**

**Rationale:** One cup of cream of mushroom soup contains 14 g of fat, whereas lentil soup contains 4 g and tomato soup contains 2 g. Low-fat yogurt contains 2 g of fat. Fresh fruits and vegetables are low in fat.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, food items low in fat. Note the word *cream* in the incorrect option; this will assist in eliminating this option. Review: the foods high in **fat**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about nutrition and the various types of diets in your fundamentals of nursing course. Remember that most fruits and vegetables are low in fat. Also some protein foods such as chicken and turkey are low in fat, whereas red meats tend to contain higher fat content.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 453; Schlenker, Roth (2011), pp. 66-67.

13. An antibiotic is diluted in 100 mL normal saline (NS) and is to be administered piggyback over 30 minutes. The drop factor is 10 drops (gtt)/mL. The nurse should set the flow rate at how many drops per minute? **Fill-in-the-blank. Round to the nearest whole number.**

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_ gtt/minute

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 33 gtt/minute**

**Rationale:** Use the intravenous (IV) flow rate formula:

$$\frac{\text{Total volume} \times \text{drop factor}}{\text{Time in minutes}} = \text{Drops/minute}$$

$$\frac{100 \text{ mL} \times 10 \text{ gtt}}{30 \text{ minutes}} = \frac{1000}{30} = 33.3, \text{ or } 33 \text{ gtt / minute}$$

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a medication calculation. Use the formula for calculating IV flow rates. Use a calculator, follow the formula, recheck your answer, and make sure that the answer makes sense before documenting the answer. Remember to round the answer to the nearest whole number. Review: **medication calculations**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about calculating IV flow rates in your fundamentals of nursing course or in another course specifically designed to teach you about IV therapy. You will be using this formula for calculating an IV flow rate in the clinical setting when you care for a client receiving IV therapy.

Be sure to learn this formula and how to determine the accurate flow rate because it is critical for the safe administration of IV fluids to a client.

### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 730-731; Potter et al (2013), pp. 925-926.

14. The nurse is preparing to assist in performing a venipuncture to initiate continuous intravenous (IV) therapy with 0.9% normal saline solution. The nurse gathers the needed supplies and plans to perform which action before beginning the venipuncture?

- 1 Applying a tourniquet below the chosen venipuncture site
- 2 Placing an armboard at the joint located above the venipuncture site
- 3 Placing cool compresses over the vein to be used for the venipuncture
- 4 Inspecting the 0.9% normal saline solution for particles or contamination

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** All IV solutions should be free of particles or precipitates. A tourniquet is applied above the chosen venipuncture site, not below. Cool compresses cause vasoconstriction, making the vein less visible. Armboards are applied only if necessary and after the IV line is started.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, the procedure for performing a venipuncture. Visualizing the procedure for preparing to initiate an IV infusion will help eliminate options 1 and 2. From the remaining options, use principles related to heat and cold to eliminate option 3. Review: the procedure for performing a **venipuncture**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A venipuncture is the insertion of a special needle or cannula into a client's vein to provide access for administering fluids and medications. You will learn about the procedure for performing a venipuncture during your nursing education. One extremely important point to remember when you are preparing to infuse or administer any solution by the IV route is that you need to inspect the solution for particles or precipitates. If these are noted then you would not use the solution for administration and would contact the pharmacy and return the solution to the department.

### References

Linton (2012), p. 296; Potter et al (2013), p. 918.

15. A health care provider has prescribed 25 mg of hydroxyzine hydrochloride (Vistaril) intramuscularly. The nurse reads the label on the medication vial and administers how many milliliters to the client? Refer to figure. Fill-in-the-blank.



(Figure from Ogden S, Fluharty L: *Calculation of drug dosages*, ed 9, St Louis, 2012, Mosby.)

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_ mL

### ANSWER: 0.5 mL

**Rationale:** Use the following formula for calculating medication doses.

$$\frac{\text{Desired}}{\text{Available}} \times \text{mL} = \text{mL per dose}$$

$$\frac{25 \text{ mg}}{50 \text{ mg}} \times 1 \text{ mL} = 0.5 \text{ mL}$$

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, a medication calculation question. Follow the formula for the calculation of the correct dose. It is not necessary to perform a conversion with this problem. Label the formula including the answer. Remember to use a calculator, follow the formula, recheck your answer, and make sure that the answer makes sense before documenting the answer. Review: **medication calculations**.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about nursing math in your fundamentals of nursing course or in another course specifically designed to teach you about nursing math. You will use nursing math to perform calculations when you prepare medications in the clinical setting. Be sure to learn the formulas and how to perform the calculations because the formulas are critical steps in preparing a safe dose of a medication.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 688-689; Potter et al (2013), pp. 574-577.

16. The nurse receives a telephone call from the hospital admission office and is told that a client with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) will be admitted to the nursing unit. In planning infection control measures for the client, the nurse prepares to institute which type of isolation precaution?
- 1 Droplet precautions
  - 2 Contact precautions
  - 3 Standard precautions
  - 4 Airborne precautions

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
Environment  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Planning  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** HIV is a retrovirus that causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). HIV is transmitted through anal or oral sexual contact with infected semen or vaginal secretions, through contact with infected blood or blood products, by transmission of the virus from mother to fetus during childbirth, through breastfeeding, or from other infected body fluids. Standard precautions, which include blood and body fluid precautions, will prevent contact with infectious matter and protect a health care provider from contracting the virus when providing care. Droplet, contact, and airborne precautions are more specific types of precautions and are known as transmission-based precautions. Droplet precautions require the use of a mask and are used when organisms can be spread by respiratory droplets but are unable to remain in the air farther than 3 feet (e.g., influenza). Contact precautions are used when caring for clients who have an infection that can be spread by direct or indirect contact (e.g., draining wounds). Airborne precautions require the use of a special particulate filter mask. These precautions are used to prevent infection when infectious organisms remain in the air for prolonged periods of time and can be transported in the air for distances greater than 3 feet (e.g., tuberculosis). No data in the question indicate that these types of precautions alone are necessary.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Read each option carefully. Note that option 3 is the **umbrella option**. Review: the methods of transmission of **human immunodeficiency virus** (HIV).

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Standard precautions are actions developed by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) that include hand hygiene and the use of other barrier precautions designed to reduce the transmission of infectious organisms. These actions are used for the care of every client regardless of whether an infection is present. Standard precautions are specific to the task and include the use of gloves, water-impermeable gowns, masks, and eye protection. You will learn about these types of precautions in your fundamentals of nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 109; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 440-441.



17. A client with heart disease says to the nurse, "I guess I'll never be able to eat ice cream again." How should the nurse respond to this client statement?
- 1 "Why do you say that?"
  - 2 "There are lots of other foods you can eat."
  - 3 "You do not think you will be able to eat ice cream at all?"
  - 4 "Ice cream has too much fat content, so why would you even want to eat it?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** The nurse most appropriately responds by rephrasing the client's statement. Option 3 is a therapeutic response and rephrases the client's statement. Options 1, 2, and 4 are examples of nontherapeutic communication techniques. Option 1 requests an explanation from the client. Options 2 and 4 give advice. In addition, option 4 lectures the client.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Option 3 is the only therapeutic response and rephrases the client's statement. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and mental health or psychiatric nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 430; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 832; Potter et al (2013), pp. 320-322.

18. A client scheduled for an operative procedure states to the nurse, "I am not sure if I should have this surgery." Which response should the nurse make to the client?
- 1 "It is your decision."
  - 2 "Do not worry. Everything will be fine."
  - 3 "Why do you not want to have this surgery?"
  - 4 "Tell me what concerns you have about the surgery."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** The nurse needs to gather more data and assist the client in exploring his or her feelings about the surgery. Options 1, 2, and 3 are nontherapeutic. Option 1 is a blunt response and does not address the client's concern. Option 2 provides false reassurance. Option 3 can make the client feel defensive.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Option 4 is the only option that addresses the client's concern. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Regardless of the type of surgery that the client is having, the nurse needs to address any concerns that the client may have. Always focus on the client's feelings and concerns. The nurse would use therapeutic communication techniques to promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and mental health or psychiatric nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 68; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 252; Potter et al (2013), pp. 320-322.

19. A 15-year-old female seeks treatment for a sexually transmitted infection at a local clinic. With regard to informed consent, the nurse should perform which action?
- 1 Ask the client to sign the informed consent form.
  - 2 Tell the client that a court order for treatment is needed.
  - 3 Tell the client that parental consent for treatment is needed.
  - 4 Call the client's mother to obtain telephone consent for treatment.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Parents normally must give informed consent for treatment of a minor. Some exceptions to this include the need for emergency treatment; when the consent of the minor is sufficient, such as for treatment of a sexually transmitted infection; or when a court order or other legal authorization has been made. Therefore, options 2, 3, and 4 are incorrect.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *15-year-old female* and *sexually transmitted infection*. Eliminate options 2, 3, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and indicate the need for informed consent from someone other than the client. Review: **informed consent** for the treatment of **minors**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Informed consent involves obtaining permission from the client to perform a treatment or procedure. Some types of informed consent include those needed to administer anesthesia, perform surgery, or administer blood; it is the health care provider's responsibility to explain the treatment or procedure to the client. The issues surrounding informed consent in the health care environment are extremely important ones, and you need to be sure that you understand these issues. You will learn about obtaining informed consent in your fundamentals of nursing course.

#### References

Linton (2012), pp. 39-40; Potter et al (2013), p. 303.

20. A client will be receiving long-term, continuous parenteral nutrition (PN) at home. The nurse should incorporate which **priority** client problem in the plan of care?
- 1 Lack of hope
  - 2 Being socially isolated
  - 3 Inability to cope effectively
  - 4 Low self-esteem related to current situation

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** The client will be receiving long-term, continuous PN at home. Therefore, the client will be socially isolated from stimuli outside the home. No data in the question support options 1, 3, or 4.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, care of the client receiving PN. Focus on the data provided in the question, and note the words *long-term*, *continuous*, and *at home*. Eliminate options 1, 3, and 4 because no data in the question support these options. Review: care of the client receiving **parenteral nutrition**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Parenteral nutrition, also known as total parenteral nutrition (TPN) is a solution containing a high concentration of nutrients and glucose and is administered intravenously (usually through the subclavian vein) to a client who has a disorder in which he or she is unable to obtain adequate nutrition orally. Social isolation indicates that the client's ability to socialize with others will be limited as a result of the client's condition. You will learn about parenteral nutrition when you study nutrition and gastrointestinal disorders.

#### References

Lewis et al (2011), p. 940; Perry, Potter, Elkin (2012), p. 682.

21. The nurse is having a conversation with a client and responds to the client's statement by saying, "You say that your mother left you when you were 6 years old." The nurse is using which therapeutic communication technique?
- 1 Focusing
  - 2 Restating
  - 3 Summarizing
  - 4 Sharing observations

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** In restating, the nurse repeats the main thought that the client expressed. This therapeutic communication technique indicates that the nurse is listening to the client. In this technique, the nurse validates, reinforces, or calls attention to something important that the client said. Therefore, options 1, 3, and 4 are incorrect.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use your knowledge regarding **therapeutic communication techniques**. Focus on the nursing statement. Noting the words "You say that ..." in the nursing statement will assist in identifying the technique that the nurse is using as restating. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and mental health or psychiatric nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 71-72; Morrison-Valfre (2009), p. 104.

22. A health care provider's prescription reads morphine sulfate gr  $\frac{1}{8}$  intramuscularly stat. The medication ampule reads morphine sulfate 10 mg per mL. The nurse should prepare how many milliliters to administer the correct dose?  
 Fill-in-the-blank.

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_ mL

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

**ANSWER: 0.75 mL**

**Rationale:** It is necessary to convert gr  $\frac{1}{8}$  to milligrams. After converting grains to milligrams, use the formula to calculate the correct dose.

**Conversion using ratio and proportion:**

$$60\text{mg} : \text{gr } 1 :: x\text{mg} : \text{gr } \frac{1}{8}$$

$$1x = \frac{1}{8} \times \frac{60}{1}$$

$$x = \frac{60}{8} = 7.5\text{mg}$$

**Formula:**

$$\frac{\text{Desired}}{\text{Available}} \times \text{mL} = \text{mL per dose}$$

$$\frac{7.5\text{ mg}}{10\text{ mg}} \times 1\text{ mL} = 0.75\text{ mL}$$

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a medication calculation. In this medication calculation problem, it is necessary to first convert grains to milligrams. Next use a calculator and follow the formula for the calculation of the correct dose. Recheck your work, making sure that the answer makes sense. Review: **medication calculations**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about nursing math in your fundamentals of nursing course or in another

course specifically designed to teach you about nursing math. You will be using nursing math to perform calculations when you prepare medications in the clinical setting. Be sure to learn the formulas and how to perform the calculations because the formulas are critical steps in the process of preparing a safe dose of a medication.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 689-690; Potter et al (2013), pp. 573-574.

23. The nurse instructs a client on a tyramine-restricted diet about foods that are acceptable to consume. The nurse should tell the client to consume which item(s) in the diet? **Select all that apply.**
- 1 Pizza
  - 2 Apples
  - 3 Chicken
  - 4 Tomatoes
  - 5 Homemade bread

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 2, 3, 4

**Rationale:** Some foods that are naturally high in tyramine include aged cheeses, yogurt, canned meats, beef or chicken liver, sausage, dried fish, beer and some wines, sherry, and chocolate. The client should also avoid yeast and any products made with yeast, such as pizza and homemade bread. Most fruits and vegetables are acceptable. The fruits and vegetables that should be avoided are bananas, figs, broad leaf beans and pea pods, eggplant, and mixed Chinese vegetables.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, foods acceptable to consume in a tyramine-restricted diet. Eliminate options 1 and 5 because they are foods that contain yeast. Review: food items that contain **tyramine**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A healthy and balanced diet is important for all individuals. In the clinical setting a major responsibility will be to ensure that your clients are receiving adequate nutrition to heal and to maintain health. Many times specific diets are prescribed for clients, and you will be responsible for teaching the client about the diet, what can be eaten, and what food items should be restricted. Tyramine is an amino acid that stimulates the release of the catecholamines epinephrine and norepinephrine. Tyramine may be restricted in certain disorders, but it is very important that individuals taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors avoid the ingestion of foods and beverages containing tyramine. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors are antidepressants that you will learn about in your pharmacology course and in your mental health or psychiatric nursing course. You will learn about other various therapeutic diets in your fundamentals of nursing course or in a nutrition course.

#### Reference

Schlenker, Roth (2011), p. 408.

24. A client's medication is available for injection in an ampule. Which action should the nurse take when drawing up this medication?
- 1 Shake the ampule gently to mix the contents.
  - 2 Snap the top of the ampule so that it opens toward the nurse.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Basic procedure for drawing up medication from an ampule involves tapping the top chamber until the medication lies in the lower area, placing an alcohol wipe around the neck of the ampule, snapping the top so that it opens away from the nurse, and withdrawing the medication without injecting air into the ampule. Snapping the ampule so that it opens away from the nurse prevents injury from possible shattered glass fragments. The neck is not wiped with the gauze after it is opened because first it

- 3 Wipe the neck of the ampule with gauze after snapping it open.
- 4 Place an alcohol wipe around the neck of the ampule before snapping it open.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

is unnecessary and could contaminate the contents of the ampule and second, it could injure the nurse's fingers from sharp glass edges.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, medication preparation from an ampule. Visualize this procedure and each of the options. Eliminate option 1 because of the word *shake*. Next eliminate option 2 because it is unsafe and could harm the nurse. From the remaining options, use principles of both asepsis and safety to direct you to the correct option. Review: medication preparation from an **ampule**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An ampule is a small container usually made of glass that contains a single dose of a medication. This is one type of container that contains medication that you will be using in the clinical setting. You will be administering injections and will be drawing medication from an ampule and other types of containers to prepare the injection. You will be learning about special procedures for drawing medication from containers and for preparing and administering injections to a client in your fundamentals of nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 712, 719; Potter et al (2013), pp. 602, 623.

25. The client has a platelet count of 60,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>. The nurse should implement which measure in the care of this client?
  - 1 Using a razor for shaving the client
  - 2 Providing vigorous skin care avoiding the use of lotions
  - 3 Measuring the temperature using a tympanic thermometer
  - 4 Encouraging the client to use a firm-bristle toothbrush for mouth care

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Fundamental Skills

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** The client with a low platelet count is at risk for bleeding. Therefore, the nurse institutes measures that will minimize the risk of injury or bleeding. The nurse should avoid vigorous washing or rubbing of the skin to avoid causing ecchymosis and would use lotions to prevent dryness and cracking of the skin. The nurse should avoid the use of razors or firm-bristle toothbrushes, which could also cause bleeding. In addition, the nurse should measure the temperature using a tympanic thermometer. Rectal thermometers are avoided because of the risk of bleeding, and oral thermometers are avoided if there is oral soreness or bleeding.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a platelet count of 60,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>. Recalling the normal platelet count and determining that a platelet count of 60,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> is low, placing the client at risk for bleeding, will assist in eliminating options 1, 2, and 4. Also noting the words *razor*, *vigorous*, and *firm* in these options, respectively, will assist in eliminating them. Review: **bleeding precautions**.

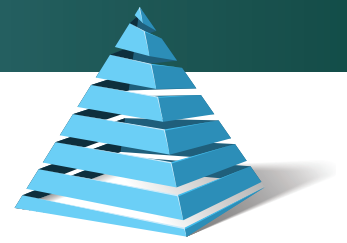
**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Platelets are a component of the blood and are formed in the bone marrow. They are essential for the coagulation of blood and in the maintenance of hemostasis. Therefore, if the platelet count is low, the coagulation of blood will not occur as it should, and the client is at risk for bleeding. The normal platelet count is 150,000 to 400,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>. If the count is low, then the nurse institutes measures to protect

the client from injury and resultant bleeding. You will be learning about normal and abnormal laboratory values in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about the platelet count when you study hematological disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

**References**

Lewis et al (2011), p. 684; Linton (2012), pp. 610, 612; Potter et al (2013), p. 448.

---



## Adult Health Questions

26. The nurse is monitoring a client who had a pleural biopsy. The nurse determines that the client is experiencing a complication if the client exhibits which manifestation?
- 1 Diaphoresis
  - 2 Warm, dry skin
  - 3 Mild pain at the biopsy site
  - 4 Capillary refill of 2 seconds

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** The nurse observes the client for dyspnea (difficulty breathing), excessive pain, pallor, or diaphoresis (profuse sweating) following pleural biopsy. These signs could indicate the presence of complications, such as pneumothorax, hemothorax, or intercostal nerve injury. Options 2 and 4 are normal findings. Mild pain is expected, because the procedure itself is painful. Abnormal signs and symptoms should be reported to the health care provider.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a complication associated with pleural biopsy. Eliminate options 2 and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and are normal findings. From the remaining options noting the word *mild* in option 3 will assist in eliminating this option. Review: the complications associated with a **pleural biopsy**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A pleural biopsy is an invasive procedure that involves the insertion of a needle into the pleural cavity or pleural space to obtain tissue or fluid for pathological examination. This procedure is diagnostic and may be done if suspicious lesions are present. The nurse monitors for signs of respiratory distress or bleeding following a biopsy. You will learn about care of the client following pleural biopsy and the important client assessments in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory disorders.

**References**

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 268, 270; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 560-561.

27. The nurse caring for a client following a bowel resection notes that the client is restless. The nurse takes the client's vital signs and notes that the client's pulse rate has increased and that the blood pressure has dropped significantly since the previous readings. The nurse suspects that the client is going into shock and should take which **immediate** action?
- 1 Check the client's oxygen saturation level.

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** In addition to hypotension, manifestations of shock include tachycardia; restlessness and apprehension; and cold, moist, pale, or cyanotic skin. If a client develops signs of shock the nurse should immediately raise the client's legs above the level of the heart to improve venous return and immediately notify the surgeon. The nurse should also check the client's pulse oximetry reading, plan to administer oxygen, increase the rate of IV fluids (unless contraindicated), administer medications as prescribed, and continue to monitor the client and the client's response to interventions.

- 2 Recheck the vital signs to verify the findings.
- 3 Raise the client's legs above the level of the heart.
- 4 Slow the rate of the intravenous (IV) fluid infusing.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

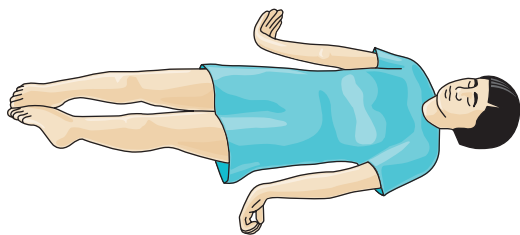
**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediate*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to answer the question. This will direct you to the correct option. Raising the client's legs above the level of the heart will assist in providing blood flow to body tissues. Review: interventions for **shock**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Shock is an abnormal condition of inadequate blood flow to the body's tissues resulting in an inadequate delivery of oxygen and nutrients to the tissues. There are different types of shock, but the most common is hypovolemic shock. It is caused by any condition that results in hypovolemia, such as hemorrhage. Fluid volume must be restored immediately to oxygenate perfusion-deprived tissues. This condition can be life threatening if not immediately treated. You will learn about shock as a postoperative complication in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1040; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 818.

28. The nurse is performing an assessment on a client with a diagnosis of a brain tumor that is located in the brainstem and notes that the client is assuming the posture in the below figure. The nurse contacts the health care provider and reports that the client is exhibiting which assessment finding? Refer to figure.



(Figure from Ignatavicius D, Workman ML: *Medical surgical nursing: Patient-centered collaborative care*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, Saunders.)

- 1 Opisthotonos
- 2 Flaccid quadriplegia
- 3 Decorticate posturing
- 4 Decerebrate posturing

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** In decerebrate posturing the upper extremities are stiffly extended and adducted with internal rotation and pronation of the palms. The lower extremities are stiffly extended with plantar flexion. The teeth are clenched, and the back is hyperextended. Decerebrate posturing indicates a lesion in the brainstem at the midbrain or upper pons. Opisthotonos is a prolonged arching of the back with the head and heels bent backward. It indicates meningeal irritation. Flaccid quadriplegia is complete loss of muscle tone and paralysis of all four extremities, indicating a completely nonfunctional brainstem. In decorticate posturing the upper extremities (arms, wrists, and fingers) are flexed with adduction of the arms. The lower extremities are extended with internal rotation and plantar flexion. Decorticate posturing indicates a hemispheric lesion of the cerebral cortex.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, assessment findings in the client with a brain tumor. Note the position of the client and that the extremities are stiffly extended. Also, noting the client's diagnosis and recalling that this posture indicates a lesion in the brainstem at the midbrain or upper pons will assist in answering the question. Review: **decerebrate posturing**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A brain tumor refers to a lesion in the brain. The clinical manifestations that the client exhibits depend on the location of the tumor. If a client has a tumor in the brain, one concern is increased intracranial pressure occurring because of the tumor. Another concern is deterioration in the client's condition as a result of the tumor pressing on structures in the brain. The nurse needs to monitor the neurological status of the client closely. If the nurse notes posturing, this indicates deterioration in the client's condition and needs to be reported immediately. You will learn about brain tumors, the signs of increased intracranial



pressure, and posturing in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 487; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 918, 1026.

29. A client newly diagnosed with type 1 diabetes mellitus is taking Humulin N insulin at 0700 daily. The nurse should monitor the client closely for which signs and symptoms in the late afternoon?
- 1 Increased appetite and abdominal pain
  - 2 Hunger, shakiness, and cool, clammy skin
  - 3 Thirst, red dry skin, and fruity breath odor
  - 4 Increased urination and rapid deep breathing

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The client taking Humulin N insulin would experience peak effects of the medication from approximately 6 to 12 hours after administration. At this time, the client is at risk for hypoglycemia if food intake is insufficient. The nurse should teach the client to watch for signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia, which include hunger, shakiness, cold sweating, headache, anxiety, increased pulse, blurred vision, confusion, and difficulty concentrating, during this time frame. The other options list various manifestations of hyperglycemia.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, that the client is taking Humulin N insulin at 0700. Also note the words *signs and symptoms in the late afternoon*. Recall that hypoglycemic reactions can occur at peak insulin times. Recall that Humulin N is an intermediate-acting insulin and peaks during the afternoon. Therefore, you are looking for the option that identifies signs and symptoms of a hypoglycemic reaction. Also, eliminate options 1, 3, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and identify signs and symptoms of hyperglycemia. Remember the 3 Ps of hyperglycemia—polyuria, polydipsia, and polyphagia. Review: the signs and symptoms of **hypoglycemia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Both injectable and oral insulins are used to treat the client with diabetes mellitus, and these medications can cause hypoglycemia. Two important complications of diabetes mellitus are hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. It is important to know the signs and symptoms of each and the interventions needed if either occurs and to teach this information to the client. You will learn about these complications and the other complications of diabetes mellitus when you study endocrine disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 874; Lewis et al (2011), p. 1242.

30. The nurse is developing a teaching plan for the client with viral hepatitis. The nurse should list which item in the plan?
- 1 Consume three large meals daily.
  - 2 The diet should be low in calories.
  - 3 Activity should be limited to prevent fatigue.
  - 4 Alcohol intake should be limited to 2 oz per day.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** The client with viral hepatitis should limit activity to avoid fatigue during the recuperation period. The client should take in several small meals per day rather than three large meals. The diet should be optimal in calories, protein, and carbohydrates. Alcohol is restricted, not limited.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, care of the client with viral hepatitis. Eliminate option 4 first using general principles related to client teaching. Next focus on the client's diagnosis, and recall that the liver needs rest during the healing process. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client with **hepatitis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Viral hepatitis is a viral inflammatory disease of the liver caused by one of the hepatitis

viruses. It can be transmitted orally, sexually, through contaminated water or food, or through exposure to infected blood; the mode of transmission varies depending on the type of hepatitis virus. You will learn about viral hepatitis when you study gastrointestinal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 699; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1062, 1066; Linton, Maebius (2012), pp. 846-848.

31. The nurse is reading the results of the client's Mantoux tuberculin skin test and palpates a 4-mm area of induration at the test site. The nurse should document which result?

- 1 Confirms tuberculosis
- 2 Is positive for tuberculosis
- 3 Is negative for tuberculosis
- 4 Provides a conclusive determination of tuberculosis

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** More than 10 mm of induration indicates exposure to and infection with tuberculosis. However, the infection may not be an active one, and the result could indicate the presence of inactive (dormant) disease. More than 5 mm of induration is considered a positive result for clients with known or suspected human immunodeficiency infection, intravenous drug users, people in close contact with a known case of tuberculosis, or clients with a chest radiograph suggestive of previous tuberculosis.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 1, 2, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and indicate that tuberculosis is present. Review: the **Mantoux tuberculin skin test**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Tuberculosis is an infection caused by an acid-fast bacillus known as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. It is usually transmitted by the inhalation or ingestion of infected droplets and usually affects the lungs. The Mantoux tuberculin skin test is a test that consists of an intradermal injection of a purified protein derivative of the tubercle bacillus. This test is used to assist in establishing a diagnosis of tuberculosis. You will learn about this test and tuberculosis when you study respiratory disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 299; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 655.

32. The nurse is conducting a training session on cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). The nurse should incorporate which guideline in the session?

- 1 Stop CPR once fatigue is felt.
- 2 Look, listen, and feel for breathing.
- 3 Assess circulation first, then airway and breathing.
- 4 Determine cardiac arrest based on unresponsiveness only.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** The American Heart Association sets forth guidelines for effective CPR. The current sequence for CPR is compressions, then airway and breathing (CAB). The health care provider should continue CPR until the return of spontaneous circulation or resuscitative efforts are terminated; not once fatigue is felt. Ideally, additional personnel should be available to assist in resuscitative efforts. "Look, listen, and feel" is no longer part of CPR procedures. Cardiac arrest is determined based on unresponsiveness and absence of a heart beat and breathing.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, guidelines of CPR. Begin by eliminating option 4, noting the **closed-ended word only**. From the remaining options, recall that the current guidelines implement CAB. Review: **cardiopulmonary resuscitation** guidelines.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Review the guidelines for performing CPR to ensure that you are ready to perform the procedure if

an emergency situation arises. Remember that CAB—compressions, airway, breathing—is the sequence to follow and that if the client is a victim of injury, such as from a motor vehicle crash or a fall from a ladder, and you suspect a neck injury, the jaw thrust maneuver is used to open the airway. As a health care provider, you will be required to remain current with your CPR certification. You will also review the CPR guidelines in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiac disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 81-82; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 736.

33. The client has been diagnosed with polycystic kidney disease. The nurse should assess the client for which manifestation that is **most** common for this disorder?
- 1 Headache
  - 2 Hypotension
  - 3 Flank pain and hematuria
  - 4 Complaints of low pelvic pain

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** The most common findings with polycystic kidney disease are hematuria and flank or lumbar pain that is either colicky in nature or dull and aching. Other common findings include proteinuria, calculi, uremia, and palpable kidney masses. Hypertension is another common finding and may be associated with cardiomegaly and heart failure. The client may complain of a headache, but this is not a specific assessment finding in polycystic kidney disease.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *most*. Note the relationship between the word *kidney* in the name of the disorder and the word *flank* in the correct option. Review: the manifestations of **polycystic kidney disease**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Polycystic kidney disease is an abnormal condition in which the kidneys are enlarged and contain many cysts. The three forms of the disease are childhood polycystic disease, congenital polycystic disease, and adult polycystic disease. Kidney failure can result that can progress to uremia and death. Treatment is symptomatic or may include dialysis or renal transplant. You will learn about this disease in your pediatrics nursing course or your medical-surgical nursing course when you study renal disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult Health* (2011), pp. 460-461; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1142-1143.

34. A client is tested for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) with an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) test, and the test result is positive. The client is very upset and asks the nurse if this means that he definitely has HIV. How should the nurse respond to the client?
- 1 "Yes, you definitely have HIV."
  - 2 "Another test will be done to determine if you have HIV."
  - 3 "False-positive results are reported all of the time and you should not be worried."

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The normal value for an ELISA test is negative. If the ELISA is positive, a second test, the Western blot, is performed to confirm a positive HIV status. The other options are incorrect. In addition, the nurse should not tell a client that "he should not be worried." If testing is performed too early in the initial infection period, a false-negative result may occur.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques** to eliminate options 1 and 3. Next, careful reading of option 4 will assist in eliminating this option. Remember that if testing is performed too early in the initial infection period, a false-negative result may occur. Review: interpretations of results of an **enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay** (ELISA) test.

- 4 "A positive test means that the infection was diagnosed early in the initial infection period."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** HIV is a retrovirus that causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). The HIV virus is transmitted through anal or oral sexual contact with infected semen or vaginal secretions, through contact with infected blood or blood products, by transmission of the virus from mother to fetus during childbirth, through breastfeeding, or through other infected body fluids. Various blood tests done to confirm the diagnosis include the ELISA and the Western blot. You will learn about these blood tests and HIV when you study immune disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 219; Lewis et al (2011), p. 246.

35. The nurse monitors for which acid-base disorder that can likely occur in a client with an ileostomy?

- 1 Metabolic acidosis
- 2 Metabolic alkalosis
- 3 Respiratory acidosis
- 4 Respiratory alkalosis

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Intestinal secretions are high in bicarbonate because of the effects of pancreatic secretions. These fluids may be lost from the body before they can be reabsorbed with conditions such as diarrhea or creation of an ileostomy. The decreased bicarbonate level creates the actual base deficit of metabolic acidosis. The client with an ileostomy is not at risk for developing the acid-base disorders identified in the other options.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, acid-base disorders. Note that the client has an ileostomy. Because the client does not have a respiratory condition, eliminate options 3 and 4. Next recall that intestinal fluids are alkaline; therefore, alkaline secretions are lost in a client with an ileostomy, resulting in an acidotic condition. Review: causes of **metabolic acidosis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An ileostomy is a surgical formation of an opening of the ileum onto the surface of the abdomen, through which fecal matter is emptied. This surgical procedure is performed for conditions such as advanced or recurrent ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, or cancer of the large bowel. You will learn about an ileostomy when you study gastrointestinal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 48; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 202-203.

36. The nurse provides instructions to a client who is being discharged after undergoing a percutaneous renal biopsy. Which statement by the client indicates a **need to reinforce the instructions**?

- 1 "A fever is normal following this procedure."
- 2 "I should not work out at the gym for about 2 weeks."
- 3 "I need to avoid any strenuous lifting for about 2 weeks."
- 4 "I will call the health care provider if my urine becomes bloody."

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Following percutaneous renal biopsy, the client is instructed to report immediately fever, increasing pain levels (back, flank, or shoulder), bleeding from the puncture site, weakness, dizziness, grossly bloody urine, or dysuria. Activity should be restricted if blood is seen in the urine. The client is also instructed to avoid strenuous lifting, physical exertion, or trauma to the biopsy site for up to 2 weeks after discharge.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *need to reinforce the instructions*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and the need to select the option that identifies an incorrect client statement. Eliminate options 2 and 3 first because they are **comparable**

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Adult Health

**or alike.** From the remaining options, recall the complications of this procedure. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: client instructions following a percutaneous **renal biopsy**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A percutaneous renal biopsy is performed by the insertion of a needle through the skin into the kidney to obtain a piece of tissue for pathological analysis. Infection and bleeding are concerns following this procedure, and the nurse monitors the client closely for these complications. You will learn about a percutaneous renal biopsy when you study renal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 768; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 1486-1487; Lewis et al (2011), p. 1118.

37. A client being treated for respiratory failure has the following arterial blood gas (ABG) results: pH 7.30,  $P_{aCO_2}$  58 mm Hg,  $P_{aO_2}$  75 mm Hg,  $HCO_3^-$  27 mEq/L. The nurse interprets that the client has which acid-base disturbance?
- 1 Metabolic acidosis
  - 2 Metabolic alkalosis
  - 3 Respiratory acidosis
  - 4 Respiratory alkalosis

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** Acidosis is defined as a pH of less than 7.35, whereas alkalosis is defined as a pH of greater than 7.45. In a respiratory condition, an opposite effect will be seen between the pH and the  $P_{aCO_2}$ . In respiratory acidosis, the pH is decreased and the  $P_{aCO_2}$  is elevated. The normal  $HCO_3^-$  is 22 to 27 mm Hg. Metabolic acidosis is present when the  $HCO_3^-$  is less than 22 mEq/L and the pH is less than 7.35, whereas metabolic alkalosis is present when the  $HCO_3^-$  is greater than 27 mEq/L and the pH is greater than 7.45. This client's ABG results are consistent with respiratory acidosis.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, interpretation of arterial blood gas values. Focus on the client's diagnosis, and recall that this client will have difficulty exchanging oxygen and carbon dioxide. This will assist in eliminating options 1 and 2. From the remaining options, remember that the pH is decreased with acidosis. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: the steps related to reading **arterial blood gas values**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Respiratory failure is the inability of the cardiovascular and pulmonary system to maintain an adequate exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the lungs. Respiratory failure can be caused by various conditions that affect oxygenation or ventilation, such as emphysema, infection, pneumonia, or lung cancer. You will learn about respiratory failure and ABG values when you study respiratory disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 47; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 205.

38. A client with a family history of cervical cancer has made an appointment to have a Papanicolaou smear done. The nurse who schedules the appointment should make which statement to the client?
- 1 "Sexual intercourse should be avoided for 24 hours before the test."

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** A Papanicolaou smear cannot be performed during menstruation. The test is usually painless but may be slightly uncomfortable with placement of the speculum or while a cervical scraping is obtained. A local anesthetic is not injected into the vaginal area. The client is instructed to avoid sexual intercourse, douching, or using vaginal hygiene sprays or deodorants for 24 hours before the test.

- 2 "If you are menstruating, douching will be required right before the test."
- 3 "A vaginal hygiene spray should be used for 2 consecutive days before the scheduled test."
- 4 "The test is very uncomfortable, but a local anesthetic will be injected into the vaginal area."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, client instructions for Papanicolaou smear. Eliminate option 4 first because of the words *very uncomfortable*. From the remaining options, think about the test and its purpose to direct you to the correct option. Review: client preparation for a **Papanicolaou test**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A Papanicolaou smear is a simple test in which cells are scraped from the cervix to obtain a specimen for examination. This test is usually done annually and permits early diagnosis of cervical cancer. You will learn about this screening test when you study oncological disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult Health* (2011), p. 542; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1581.

39. A client with a diagnosis of multiple myeloma is admitted to the hospital. When collecting data from the client, the nurse should ask which question that specifically relates to a clinical manifestation of this disorder?

- 1 "Do you have diarrhea?"
- 2 "Are you having any bone pain?"
- 3 "Have you noticed an increase in appetite?"
- 4 "Do you have feelings of anxiety and nervousness, along with difficulty sleeping?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Multiple myeloma is characterized by an abnormal proliferation of plasma B cells. These cells infiltrate the bone marrow and produce abnormal and excessive amounts of immunoglobulin. The most common presenting complaint is bone pain. Hypercalcemia occurs as a result of release of calcium from the deteriorating bone tissue, and subsequently the client presents with confusion, somnolence, constipation, nausea, and thirst.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, clinical manifestations associated with multiple myeloma. Focus on the client's diagnosis, and use medical terminology to answer the question. Also, recalling the pathophysiology of multiple myeloma and the effects it produces on the body will direct you to the correct option. Review: the manifestations associated with **multiple myeloma**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Multiple myeloma is a malignant tumor of the bone marrow. The tumor disrupts normal bone marrow function, destroys osseous tissue, and causes pain, fractures, hypercalcemia, and skeletal deformities. You will learn about multiple myeloma when you study oncologic disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult Health* (2011), p. 291; deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 360-361; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 894-895.

40. The nurse has provided instructions to a client scheduled for an exercise electrocardiogram (stress test) at 0900 on the following day. The nurse determines that the client **needs additional instructions** if the client makes which statement?

- 1 "I should not go to the gym to work out today."
- 2 "I should wear sneakers when I come for the test."

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The client should eat a light meal 1 to 2 hours before this procedure. In addition, the client should wear rubber-soled, supportive shoes, such as sneakers, and light, loose, comfortable clothing. A shirt that buttons in front is helpful for electrocardiogram (ECG) lead placement. The client should not do strenuous physical activity for at least 12 hours before testing. A workout at the gym the day before the procedure is acceptable as long as there are no existing cardiac disorders contraindicating this type of activity.

- 3 "I will wear light, loose, comfortable clothing for the procedure."
- 4 "I cannot eat for 24 hours before the procedure; I should only drink water."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *needs additional instructions*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and the need to select the option that is an incorrect client statement. Recall what this test entails. Since the test requires physical activity, not eating for 24 hours before the procedure could be harmful to the client. Review: client teaching related to a **stress test**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An exercise electrocardiogram (stress test) measures the function of the cardiopulmonary system as the body is subjected to carefully controlled amounts of physiological stress. In this test, a cardiac monitoring device is attached to the client and the cardiopulmonary system is monitored while the client performs some type of exercise, such as walking on a treadmill. The results of this test provide valuable information for the health care provider to determine cardiopulmonary problems or the effectiveness of medications or other treatments. You will learn about this type of stress test when you study cardiovascular disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 378; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 706.

41. A client has undergone pericardiocentesis to treat cardiac tamponade. The nurse should monitor the client for which sign to determine whether the tamponade is recurring?
- 1 Facial flushing
  - 2 Decreasing pulse
  - 3 Paradoxical pulse
  - 4 Rising blood pressure

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** Cardiac tamponade is a life-threatening situation caused by the accumulation of fluid in the pericardium. The fluid accumulates rapidly and in sufficient quantity to compress the heart and restrict blood flow in and out of the ventricles. Hypotension, tachycardia, jugular vein distension, cyanosis of the lips and nails, dyspnea, muffled heart sounds, diaphoresis, and paradoxical pulse (a decrease in systolic arterial pressure greater than 10 mm Hg during inspiration) are indications of this emergency situation. The emergency intervention of choice is pericardiocentesis, a procedure in which fluid is aspirated from the pericardial sac. Options 1, 2, and 4 are not indications of cardiac tamponade.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, signs of cardiac tamponade. Note the word *recurring*. This tells you that the correct option is a symptom of the original problem, which is cardiac tamponade. Recalling the pathophysiology associated with cardiac tamponade will direct you to option 3. Review: signs of **cardiac tamponade**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** When cardiac tamponade occurs, the heart becomes compressed by the accumulation of fluid in the pericardium. In order to sustain life, this fluid needs to be removed. Pericardiocentesis involves a surgical puncture into the pericardial space between the serous membranes for aspiration of the fluid from the pericardial sac. You will learn about cardiac tamponade and pericardiocentesis when you study cardiovascular disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 443-444; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 766.

42. A client has undergone cardiac catheterization using the right femoral artery for access. The nurse determines that the client is experiencing a complication of the procedure if which finding is noted?
- 1 Urine output 40 mL/hour
  - 2 Blood pressure 118/76 mm Hg
  - 3 Pallor and coolness of the right leg
  - 4 Respirations 18 breaths per minute

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Potential complications after cardiac catheterization include allergic reaction to the dye, cardiac dysrhythmias, and a number of vascular complications, such as hemorrhage, thrombosis, or embolism. The nurse detects these complications by monitoring for signs and symptoms of allergic reaction, decreased urine output, hematoma or hemorrhage at the insertion site, or signs of decreased circulation to the affected leg. Options 1, 2, and 4 are normal findings.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *experiencing a complication*. This tells you that the correct option is an abnormal piece of assessment data. Eliminate options 1, 2, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and are normal findings. Pallor and coolness indicate thrombosis or hematoma and should be further assessed and reported. Review: the signs of complications following a **cardiac catheterization**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A cardiac catheterization is a diagnostic procedure in which a catheter is introduced through an incision into a large blood vessel and threaded through the circulatory system of the heart. This procedure is primarily done to assess the status of the coronary arteries in the heart and to determine if any blockage is present and if so, the extent of the blockage. Postprocedure monitoring for complications is a primary nursing responsibility. You will learn about cardiac catheterization and important nursing interventions when you study cardiovascular disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 380-381; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 704-705; Lewis et al (2011), p. 732.

43. The nurse in the emergency department is performing an assessment on a client who sustained a right finger laceration from a fish hook while fishing. The nurse should ask the client which **priority** question?
- 1 "When was your last physical examination?"
  - 2 "Have you had a chest x-ray in the last year?"
  - 3 "When did you receive your last tetanus immunization?"
  - 4 "Have you ever sustained this type of injury in the past?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** A client who sustains a laceration is at risk for developing complications such as osteomyelitis, gas gangrene, and tetanus. During the assessment, the nurse should ask the client about the date of the last tetanus immunization to ensure that the client has tetanus prophylaxis. Although options 1 and 4 may be components of the assessment, these questions are not the priority. Option 2 is unrelated to the data in the question.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Focusing on the data in the question will assist in eliminating option 2. From the remaining options noting the word *laceration* will direct you to option 3. Review: emergency care for the client who sustains a **laceration**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Tetanus toxoid is an active immunizing agent prepared from detoxified tetanus toxin that produces an antigenic response in the body. It provides immunity to tetanus, an acute, potentially fatal infection of the central nervous system caused by an anaerobic bacillus, *Clostridium tetani*. The bacillus may enter the body through a wound, such as a laceration. If a client sustains an injury that involves a laceration



or other type of wound, a booster shot of tetanus toxoid is given if the client was previously immunized. People known to have been adequately immunized within 5 years of the injury (or a time period determined by the health care provider) do not usually require immunization. You will learn about treatment of skin injuries when you study integumentary disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1005; Lehne (2013), pp. 871-872; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1545, 1772.

44. A client has been admitted to the hospital with a fractured pelvis sustained in a motor vehicle crash. The nurse monitors for complications and should assess the client closely for which finding in the early posttrauma period?
- 1 Pain
  - 2 Fever
  - 3 Hematuria
  - 4 Bradycardia

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** One complication of a pelvic fracture is damage to the kidneys and lower urinary tract. Therefore, the nurse should monitor for signs of this complication, which would include bloody urine. This client is also at risk for hypovolemic shock. Bone fragments can damage blood vessels, leading to hemorrhage into the abdominal cavity and the thigh area. Signs of hypovolemic shock include tachycardia and hypotension. Pain is an expected finding. Although infection is also a complication (indicated by a fever), it is not generally noted in the early posttrauma period.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *early*. Focus on the **subject**, complications following this type of injury. Noting the **strategic word** will assist in eliminating option 2. Next, focus on the anatomical location of the injury to direct you to the correct option from the remaining options. Review: the complications following **pelvic fracture**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Pelvic fractures usually occur as a result of motor vehicle crashes, falls, and crush injuries. Hemorrhage is a primary concern because the force from the impact can rupture blood vessels surrounding the pelvic ring. You will learn about pelvic fractures, the complications, and the nursing interventions in the care of the client when you study musculoskeletal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult Health* (2011), pp. 147-148; deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 773; Lewis et al (2011), p. 1605.

45. A client has just had a plaster cast removed from the right arm. The nurse assesses the skin to ensure intactness and then should perform which action?
- 1 Soak the arm in warm water for 1 hour
  - 2 Wash the skin gently and apply skin lotion
  - 3 Scrub the skin vigorously with soap and water
  - 4 Instruct the client that continuous skin soaking will be necessary for the next 24 hours

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The skin under a casted area may be discolored and crusted with dead skin layers. Once the skin is inspected for intactness, the nurse should gently wash the skin and apply a generous coating of lotion, gently massaging it into the skin. The client is instructed that it may take several days for the entire residue and debris to be removed from the skin. Lengthy or continuous soaks may cause excessive skin softening that could result in skin breakdown.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate option 3 first because of the word *vigorously*. Next eliminate options 1 and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and would lead to excessive skin softening that could result in skin breakdown. Also noting the word *gently* will direct

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

you to the correct option. Review: client instructions regarding skin care following removal of a **cast**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A plaster cast is a solid and stiff dressing formed with plaster of Paris around a limb or other body part to immobilize it. You will learn about casts and the nursing interventions in the care of the client when you study musculoskeletal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1158; Linton (2012), p. 968.

46. The home care nurse is assessing a client who began using peritoneal dialysis 1 week ago. The nurse should suspect the onset of peritonitis if which finding is noted on assessment?

- 1 Anorexia
- 2 Cloudy dialysate output
- 3 Mild abdominal discomfort
- 4 Oral temperature of 99.0° F

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Typical symptoms of peritonitis include fever, nausea, malaise, rebound abdominal tenderness, and cloudy dialysate output. The complaint of anorexia is too vague to indicate peritonitis. Some mild abdominal discomfort may occur initially with peritoneal dialysis. The very slight temperature elevation in option 4 is not the clearest indicator of infection. Peritonitis would cause cloudy dialysate output.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, peritonitis. Use medical terminology to recall that the suffix *-itis* indicates inflammation or infection. Eliminate option 1 first because it is a vague symptom. Next eliminate option 3 because of the word *mild*. From the remaining options, note that the temperature is only slightly elevated and recall that infection would cause white blood cells to be present in the dialysate output, which would yield cloudiness. Review: the signs of **peritonitis** in the client receiving **peritoneal dialysis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Peritoneal dialysis is a procedure used for clients with acute kidney injury or chronic kidney disease to remove toxins and other wastes that are normally removed by the kidneys from the body. It is a procedure that uses the peritoneum (membrane that lines the abdominal cavity) as the membrane to filter out these toxins and wastes. Fluid (dialysate) flows into the abdominal cavity, filters out these toxins and wastes, and flows out. One complication of peritoneal dialysis is peritonitis, an inflammation and infection of the peritoneum. One indication of peritonitis is cloudy output because output should be clear. You will learn about peritoneal dialysis and its complications in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study renal (kidney) disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 807-808; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 1566-1567; Linton (2012), pp. 919-920.

47. Following right eye cataract surgery, a client is taught to avoid strain on the operative eye. Which statement by the client indicates a **need for further teaching**?

- 1 "I should not rub my eye."
- 2 "I can lie on my right side to sleep at night."

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Following cataract surgery, the client needs to be instructed to lie on the nonoperative side to prevent swelling and pressure in the operated area. Options 1, 3, and 4 are correct measures to take following cataract surgery to reduce strain on the operated eye.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *need for further teaching*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and the need to select

- 3 "I need to take stool softeners to prevent straining."
- 4 "I should avoid bending over lower than my waist level."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

the option that is an incorrect client statement. Recalling that it is necessary to prevent pressure and strain on the operated site will assist in directing you to the correct option. Review: postoperative care to the client following **cataract surgery**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A cataract is an abnormal progressive clouding of the lens of the eye that leads to visual loss if untreated. Surgical removal of the lens is done only after vision is compromised. Lens implants may be inserted to restore vision. Following surgery, teaching focuses on proper use and administration of eye medications, protecting the eye, activity restrictions, and preventing infection. You will learn about cataract surgery in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study eye disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 600; Lewis et al (2011), p. 415.

48. The wife of a man who sustained an eye injury calls the emergency department and speaks to the nurse. The wife reports that her husband was hit in the eye area by a piece of board while building a shed in the backyard. The nurse should advise the wife to take which **immediate** action?
- 1 Call an ambulance.
  - 2 Apply ice to the affected eye.
  - 3 Irrigate the eye with cool water.
  - 4 Bring the husband to the emergency department.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Treatment for a contusion ideally begins at the time of injury and includes applying ice to the site. The husband should also receive a thorough eye examination to rule out the presence of other injuries, but this is not the immediate action. Irrigating the eye with cool water may be implemented for injuries that involve a splash of an irritant into the eye. It is not necessary to call an ambulance.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediate*. Eliminate options 1 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike**. From the remaining options, focusing on the type of injury sustained will direct you to the correct option. Review: initial treatment following an **eye contusion**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An eye contusion is an injury caused by a blow to the eye area. A contusion does not disrupt the integrity of the skin but causes swelling, pain, and bruising. Ice is immediately applied to limit swelling, pain, and bruising. You will learn about eye injuries in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study eye disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult Health* (2011), p. 160; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1071.

49. The nurse employed in an eye clinic checks a client's intraocular pressure and notes that the pressure is 16 mm Hg in the right eye and 18 mm Hg in the left eye. The nurse should tell the client that the pressure is indicative of which result?
- 1 Normal in both eyes
  - 2 Elevated in the left eye
  - 3 Elevated in the right eye
  - 4 Low in both eyes, requiring treatment to increase it

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Normal intraocular pressure ranges from 10 to 21 mm Hg. Therefore, the client's intraocular pressure is normal, and options 2, 3, and 4 are incorrect.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, normal intraocular pressure. Focus on the data presented in the question. Recalling that normal intraocular pressure ranges from 10 to 21 mm Hg will direct you to the correct option. Review: **intraocular pressure**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Intraocular pressure is the pressure within the eye and is regulated by the flow of aqueous

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

50. A stapedectomy is performed on a client with otosclerosis. The nurse prepares the client for discharge and should provide the client with which home care instruction?

- 1 Expect acute vertigo to occur.
- 2 Delay plans for air travel for at least 1 month.
- 3 Lie on the operative ear with the head of the bed flat.
- 4 You can sneeze or blow your nose as you usually do.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

51. The nurse is teaching the client taking medications by inhalation about the advantages of a spacer device. The nurse should tell the client that the spacer serves which purpose?

- 1 Disperses medication more deeply and uniformly
- 2 Reduces the frequency of medication use to only once per day
- 3 Requires coordinating timing between pressing the inhaler and inhaling
- 4 Totally eliminates the chance of developing a yeast infection in the mouth

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

humor through the trabecular meshwork. An increase in intraocular pressure is associated with a condition known as glaucoma. If glaucoma is untreated, complete and permanent blindness can occur. You will learn about glaucoma and the implications associated with an elevated intraocular pressure in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study eye disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 575; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1049.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Following stapedectomy, no air travel is allowed for 1 month. The acute onset of vertigo needs to be reported to the health care provider because this could be indicative of a complication. The client is instructed to lie on the nonoperative ear with the head of the bed elevated. The client should also avoid excessive exercise, straining, and activities that might lead to head trauma. If the client needs to blow the nose, it should be done gently, one nostril at a time, and the client should sneeze with the mouth open.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, client instructions following stapedectomy. Focus on the surgical procedure and its location to direct you to the correct option. Also, eliminate option 1 because of the words *acute vertigo*, option 3 because of the words *lie on the operative ear with the head of the bed flat*, and option 4 because of the words *as you usually do*. Review: postoperative care following **stapedectomy**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Otosclerosis is a condition in which ossification occurs in the ossicles of the middle ear (especially the stapes), leading to hearing loss. Stapedectomy is the removal of the fixed stapes. Insertion of a graft and prosthesis is done to restore hearing. You will learn about otosclerosis and stapedectomy in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study ear disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 617; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 426-427.

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** There are key advantages to the use of a spacer device for medications administered by inhalation. One is that the medication is dispersed more deeply and uniformly than without a spacer. Another advantage is that it reduces (not totally eliminates) the incidence of yeast infections because large medication droplets are not deposited on oral tissues. The use of a spacer may decrease either the number or the volume of the puffs taken but does not reduce the daily frequency for use. Finally, there is less need to coordinate the effort of inhalation with pressing on the canister of the inhaler.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate option 2 because of the **closed-ended word only**. Also option 2 is limited by description. Next eliminate option 4 because of the **closed-ended words** *totally eliminates*. From the remaining options visualize this device to assist

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Adult Health

in eliminating option 3. Review: the advantages of the use of the **spacer** with inhaled medications.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Some medications, particularly respiratory medications, are administered by the inhalation route. To accomplish administration by this route, special inhalation devices are used. A spacer device is a small piece of equipment that can be attached to the inhalation device to make the administration of the medication easier for the client. Teaching the client how to use these devices is an important nursing intervention. You will learn about these devices and how to use them in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory disorders.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 609; Potter et al (2013), p. 600.

52. A client diagnosed with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is hospitalized. The nurse develops a plan of care and determines that which intervention is the **priority**?
- 1 Providing emotional support to the client
  - 2 Instituting measures to prevent infection in the client
  - 3 Identifying the ways that AIDS can be contracted by others
  - 4 Discussing the ways that the client contracted the AIDS virus

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The client with AIDS has inadequate immune bodies and is at risk for infection. The priority nursing intervention would be to protect the client from infection. The nurse should also provide emotional support to the client, but this is not the priority from the options provided. Discussing the ways that the client contracted the AIDS virus and the ways others can contract AIDS are not appropriate priority interventions.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike**. Also use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to remember that physiological needs are the priority. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: the priority needs of a client with **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome** (AIDS).

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** AIDS is a syndrome that is caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), a retrovirus that attacks and kills CD4<sup>+</sup> lymphocytes (T helper cells). This results in a weakening of the immune system's ability to prevent infection. You will learn about AIDS in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study immune disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 220, 227; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 370.

53. A client who is recovering from a stroke (brain attack) has residual dysphagia. To assist in assessing the client's swallowing ability the nurse should ask the client to perform which action?
- 1 Swallow some water.
  - 2 Produce an audible cough.
  - 3 Suck on a piece of hard candy.
  - 4 Swallow a teaspoon of applesauce.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** To assess the client's readiness and ability to swallow, the nurse should assess the client's level of consciousness (client needs to be alert), check for a gag reflex (gag reflex must be present), have the client produce an audible cough (client must be able to produce an audible cough), and ask the client to produce a voluntary swallow (client must be able to do this). The nurse should not give the client a liquid or food item and should not ask the client to suck on a piece of hard candy or any other item because of the risk of aspiration.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 1, 3, and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike** and would place the client at risk for aspiration. Also, use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client with residual **dysphagia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A stroke (brain attack) is an abnormal condition of the brain that is caused by an occlusion from a thrombus, embolus, vasospasm, or hemorrhage. Dysphagia refers to difficulty with swallowing and can occur as a result of the stroke. It places the client at risk for aspiration. You will learn about a stroke (brain attack) and dysphagia in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1017; Lewis et al (2011), p. 1475; Potter et al (2013), p. 1010.

54. A client with chronic kidney disease returns to the nursing unit after receiving his second hemodialysis treatment; the nurse is monitoring the client closely for signs of disequilibrium syndrome. What is a sign of this syndrome?

- 1 Irritability
- 2 Tachycardia
- 3 Hypothermia
- 4 Mental confusion

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Adult Health

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Disequilibrium syndrome most often occurs in clients who are new to hemodialysis. It is characterized by headache, mental confusion, decreasing level of consciousness, nausea, vomiting, twitching, and possible seizure activity. It results from rapid removal of solutes from the body during hemodialysis and a higher residual concentration gradient in the brain because of the blood-brain barrier. Water goes into cerebral cells because of the osmotic gradient, causing brain swelling and onset of symptoms. It is prevented by dialyzing for shorter times or at reduced blood flow rates. The signs in options 1, 2, and 3 are not associated with disequilibrium syndrome.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, signs of disequilibrium syndrome. Focusing on the name of the syndrome will direct you to the correct option. This is the only option that addresses a neurological sign. Review: the signs of **disequilibrium syndrome**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Chronic kidney disease is a condition in which the kidneys are unable to excrete wastes, concentrate urine, and conserve electrolytes. A component of treatment is hemodialysis. Hemodialysis requires the use of a dialyzer that is connected to a shunt, fistula, or other device that allows access to the client's bloodstream. The client's blood is transported from the body through the dialyzer, which removes wastes and excess fluids from the blood. The cleaned blood is then returned to the client's body. Disequilibrium syndrome is one complication that can occur as a result of hemodialysis. You will learn about chronic kidney disease and disequilibrium syndrome in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study renal disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 805; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1563.

55. The nurse is providing home care instructions to a client with Parkinson disease about measures to control a right-sided hand tremor. What instruction should the nurse give to the client?
- 1 Sleep on the unaffected side.
  - 2 Use the left hand only to perform tasks.
  - 3 Use the right hand only to perform tasks.
  - 4 Squeeze a rubber ball with the right hand.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** The client with a tremor is instructed to use both hands to accomplish a task. The client is also instructed to hold change in a pocket or to squeeze a rubber ball with the affected hand. The client should sleep on the side that has the tremor to control it.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 2 and 3 first because of the **closed-ended word only**. From the remaining options visualize each and think about each effect in terms of controlling the tremor. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: client teaching points for **Parkinson disease**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Parkinson disease is a progressive neurological disorder that is caused by a depletion of the neurotransmitter dopamine in the brain tissue. It is characterized by resting tremor, pill rolling of the fingers, shuffling gait, masklike facies, forward flexion of the trunk, muscle rigidity and weakness, and loss of postural reflexes. You will learn about Parkinson disease in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 557; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1511-1512.

56. The nurse answers the call bell of a client who has an internal cervical radiation implant. The client states that she thinks that the implant fell out. The nurse checks the client and sees the implant lying in the bed. The nurse immediately uses a long-handled forceps to pick up the implant and places the implant into the lead container in the client's room. Which action should the nurse take next?
- 1 Ask another nurse to assist in reinserting the implant.
  - 2 Contact the radiation therapist and radiation safety officer.
  - 3 Call for a transport personnel to deliver the lead container to the radiation department.
  - 4 Call a security officer, and ask the officer to send someone to guard the client's room until the situation is resolved.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** A lead container and a pair of long-handled forceps should be kept in the client's room at all times during internal radiation therapy. If the implant becomes dislodged, the nurse should pick up the implant with long-handled forceps and place it in the lead container. The radiation therapist and radiation safety officer are notified immediately of the situation so that they can retrieve and secure the radiation source. The health care provider is also called after taking action to maintain the safety of the client and others. The nurse does not reinsert a radiation implant device. Options 3 and 4 are incorrect and can expose individuals to the radiation.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word next**. Option 1 can be eliminated first because inserting a radiation device is not a nursing activity. Recalling that the nurse needs to protect himself or herself and others from exposure to the radiation will help eliminate options 3 and 4. Also, these options are **comparable or alike**. Review: the measures related to a dislodged **radiation implant**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A cervical radiation implant is a device that is placed in the area of the cervix and emits radiation to the body area. It is a treatment measure for cervical cancer. Because exposure to radiation can be harmful, special precautions are taken to prevent exposure to other individuals. You will learn about cancer and its treatment and about radiation implants in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study oncologic disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 161; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 413.

57. The nurse is caring for a hospitalized client with a diagnosis of acute pancreatitis. The nurse should assist the client to which position that will decrease the abdominal pain?
- 1 Prone
  - 2 Supine with the legs straight
  - 3 Side-lying with the head of the bed flat
  - 4 Upright in a sitting position with the trunk flexed

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Correct positioning will assist in providing comfort to the client with acute pancreatitis. These positions include a side-lying position with the knees curled up to the chest and a pillow pressed against the abdomen or upright in a sitting position with the trunk flexed. Options 1, 2, and 3 are incorrect positions and will not alleviate discomfort.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the client's diagnosis, and evaluate each option in terms of the amount of stretching or flexing of the abdominal wall that the action will cause. Also note that options 1, 2, and 3 are **comparable or alike** in that they are flat positions. Review: the positions that will reduce pain in the client with **acute pancreatitis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Pancreatitis is an inflammatory condition of the pancreas and can be acute or chronic. It is characterized by severe epigastric or upper left quadrant abdominal pain radiating to the back, fever, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting. You will learn about pancreatitis in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 709; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1323.

58. The nurse provides home care instructions to a client diagnosed with viral hepatitis. The nurse determines that the client understands the instructions if the client makes which statement?
- 1 "I need to limit my intake of alcohol."
  - 2 "I need to remain in bed for the next 6 weeks."
  - 3 "I can take acetaminophen (Tylenol) for any discomfort."
  - 4 "I need to eat small frequent meals that are low in fat and protein."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Evaluation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Fatigue is a normal response to hepatic cellular damage. During the acute stage, rest is an essential intervention to reduce the liver's metabolic demands and increase its blood supply, but bed rest for 6 weeks is unnecessary. The client needs to avoid all alcohol consumption because of hepatotoxicity. The client should avoid taking all medications, including acetaminophen (which is hepatotoxic), unless prescribed by the health care provider. The client should consume small frequent meals that are low in fat and protein to reduce the workload of the liver.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, care of the client with viral hepatitis. Eliminate option 1 first, recalling that the client needs to avoid (not limit) alcohol intake. Next eliminate option 2 because of the words *next 6 weeks*. From the remaining options recalling that acetaminophen is hepatotoxic will assist in eliminating option 3. Review: instructions for the client with **viral hepatitis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Viral hepatitis is an inflammatory disease of the liver caused by one of the hepatitis viruses. It is characterized by jaundice, anorexia, abdominal and gastric discomfort, hepatomegaly, clay-colored stools, and tea-colored urine. The liver is usually able to regenerate its tissue, and rest is a key component of therapy. You will learn about viral hepatitis when you study gastrointestinal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 700; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1066, 1068.



59. A hospitalized client with chronic kidney disease has returned to the nursing unit after a hemodialysis treatment. The nurse should check predialysis and postdialysis documentation of which parameters to determine the effectiveness of the procedure?
- 1 Blood pressure and weight
  - 2 Weight and blood urea nitrogen
  - 3 Potassium level and creatinine levels
  - 4 Blood urea nitrogen and creatinine levels

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Evaluation

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Following hemodialysis the client's vital signs are monitored to determine whether the client is remaining hemodynamically stable and for comparison to predialysis measurements. The client's blood pressure and weight are expected to be reduced as a result of fluid removal. Laboratory studies are done as per protocol but are not necessarily done after the hemodialysis treatment has ended.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, determining the effectiveness of hemodialysis—and note that this is an evaluation-type question. Also remember that when options contain two parts, both parts need to be correct in order for the option to be the correct one. Knowing that weight is an important variable allows you to eliminate options 3 and 4. From the remaining options, recalling that vital signs reflect hemodynamic stability will direct you to the correct option. Review: the parameters that will determine the effectiveness of **hemodialysis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Chronic kidney disease is a condition in which the kidneys are unable to excrete wastes, concentrate urine, and conserve electrolytes. A component of treatment is hemodialysis. Hemodialysis requires the use of a dialyzer that is connected to a shunt, fistula, or other device that allows access to the client's bloodstream. The client's blood is transported from the body through the dialyzer, which removes wastes and excess fluids from the blood. The cleaned blood is then returned to the client's body. You will learn about chronic kidney disease and hemodialysis in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study renal disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 808; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1563; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1186-1187.

60. The nurse is developing a plan of care for a client who is experiencing homonymous hemianopsia following a stroke (brain attack). The nurse documents interventions that will promote a safe environment knowing that in this disorder the client experiences which symptom?
- 1 Has a visual loss in the same half of the visual field of each eye
  - 2 Has lost the ability to recognize familiar objects through the senses
  - 3 Is unable to carry out a skilled act, such as dressing, in the absence of paralysis
  - 4 Has paralysis of the sympathetic nerves of the eye causing ocular manifestations

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Adult Health

**ANSWER: 1**

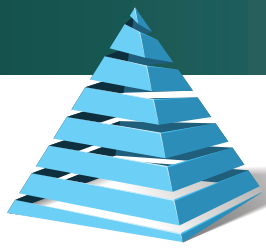
**Rationale:** Homonymous hemianopsia is a visual loss in the same half of the visual field of each eye so the client has only half of normal vision. Option 2 describes agnosia. Option 3 describes apraxia. Option 4 describes Horner syndrome.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, homonymous hemianopsia. Use medical terminology, noting that *hemi-* means half and *-op-* refers to the eye. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: care for the client with **homonymous hemianopsia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A stroke (brain attack) is an abnormal condition of the brain that is caused by an occlusion from a thrombus, embolus, vasospasm, or hemorrhage. Homonymous hemianopsia is a visual loss in the same half of the visual field of each eye, so the client has only half of normal vision. This disorder can occur as a result of the stroke and places the client at risk for injury. You will learn about a stroke (brain attack) and homonymous hemianopsia in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 532; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 1011-1012.



## CHAPTER 15

# Mental Health Questions

61. The nurse helps a client with a diagnosis of obsessive-compulsive disorder prepare for bed. One hour later, the client calls the nurse and says he is feeling anxious and asks the nurse to sit and talk for a while. The nurse should take which **most appropriate** action?
- 1 Sit and talk with the client.
  - 2 Ask the client if he would like an anti-anxiety medication.
  - 3 Ask an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to sit with the client.
  - 4 Tell the client that it is time for sleep and that they will talk tomorrow.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Caring  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The most appropriate nursing action is to sit and talk if the client is expressing anxiety. Antianxiety medication may be necessary, but this is not the most appropriate nursing action. A UAP may not be able to alleviate the client's anxiety. Option 4 is an inappropriate action and places the client's feelings on hold.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*, and use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Recalling that it is best to address the client's feelings assists in directing you to the correct option. Review: care of the client with **obsessive-compulsive disorder**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Obsessive-compulsive disorder is an anxiety disorder that is characterized by obsessions (ideas, emotions, or impulses that repetitively and insistently force themselves into consciousness) or compulsions (recurrent irresistible impulses to perform some act) that interfere with the individual's normal routine. Therapeutic communication techniques, which promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse, should be used when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and non-therapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and about obsessive-compulsive disorder in your mental health nursing course.

### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1046; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65, 305.

62. The nurse is performing an admission interview on a client being admitted to the mental health unit and discovers that the client experienced a severe emotional trauma 1 month ago and is now experiencing paralysis of the right arm. What is the **priority** nursing action?
- 1 Refer the client to group therapy.
  - 2 Encourage the client to talk about his feelings.

### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The priority action is to assess for any physiological cause of the paralysis. Although the client may be referred to group therapy, this is not the priority action. Although a component of the plan of care is to encourage the client to discuss feelings, this also is not the priority action. It is not appropriate to encourage the client to use the arm without ruling out a physiological cause of the paralysis.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to remember that physiological needs are the first priority. Also use the **steps of the nursing process**.

- 3 Encourage the client to move and use the arm.
- 4 Assess the client for organic causes of the paralysis.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

The correct option is the only one that addresses a physiological need and assessment/data collection, the first step in the nursing process. Review: **conversion disorder**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A conversion disorder is a somatoform disorder characterized by a loss or alteration of physical functioning without evidence of organic impairment. A conversion disorder can result after a traumatic experience. You will learn about conversion disorders in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), p. 207; Linton (2012), p. 1306.

63. The nurse is developing a plan of care for a client admitted to the mental health unit with a diagnosis of obsessive-compulsive disorder who is experiencing severe anxiety. What should the nurse identify as the **priority** intervention in the plan of care?
- 1 Monitor for repetitive behavior.
  - 2 Encourage active participation in care.
  - 3 Educate the client about self-care demands.
  - 4 Establish a trusting and therapeutic nurse–client relationship.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Caring  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The priority nursing action is to establish a trusting and therapeutic relationship with the client. The remaining options are appropriate components of the plan of care but are not the priority. A trusting nurse–client relationship needs to be established first.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **strategic word** *priority*, and note that the client is being admitted to the mental health unit. Recalling that a nurse–client relationship needs to be developed first, assists in directing you to the correct option. Review: care to the client with **obsessive-compulsive disorder**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Obsessive-compulsive disorder is an anxiety disorder that is characterized by obsessions (ideas, emotions, or impulses that repetitively and insistently force themselves into consciousness) or compulsions (recurrent irresistible impulses to perform some act) that interfere with the individual's normal routine. The first step in providing therapeutic care for the client is to establish a trusting and therapeutic relationship. If trust is established, the client is more likely to communicate with the nurse. You will learn about the techniques for establishing a trusting and therapeutic relationship with a client in your fundamentals of nursing course and about obsessive-compulsive disorder in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 1046-1047; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), p. 353.

64. The nurse is preparing to care for a client admitted to the mental health unit with a diagnosis of dementia and notes that the client has difficulty carrying out activities of daily living effectively. The nurse should plan for which outcome in caring for the client?
- 1 The client will feed self with cueing within 24 hours.
  - 2 The client will be oriented to place by the time of discharge.
  - 3 The client will be free of hallucinations by the time of discharge.

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Option 1 identifies an outcome directly related to the client's ability to care for self. Options 2, 3, and 4 are not related to carrying out activities of daily living.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the relationship between the **subject**, the client experiencing difficulty carrying out activities of daily living and the correct option. Noting that options 2 and 4 are **comparable or alike** will assist in eliminating these options. From the remaining options, use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**. The correct option addresses a physiological need. Review: care of the client with **dementia**.

- 4 The client will correctly identify objects in his or her room by the time of discharge.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Mental Health

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Dementia is a term that describes an organic mental disorder characterized by cognitive impairments that are generally of gradual onset and are irreversible. Activities of daily living are activities performed during the course of a normal day, such as bathing, dressing, and eating. An inability to perform activities of daily living can occur as a result of dementia, which you will learn about in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 1090-1091; Varcarolis, Halter (2010), pp. 390, 376-377.

65. A client experiencing delusions of being poisoned is admitted to the hospital. The client shows no evidence of dehydration and malnutrition at this time. The nurse prepares a plan of care for the client and should include which client need as the priority?

- 1 Self-esteem needs
- 2 Physiological needs
- 3 Safety and security needs
- 4 Love and belonging needs

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Mental Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** The maintenance of safety is an important consideration when working with clients who have delusions. No data in the question indicate that options 1, 2, and 4 require immediate attention.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority* and note the words *shows no evidence of dehydration and malnutrition*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**. Safety takes precedence if a physiological need does not exist. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client experiencing **delusions**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A delusion is a false belief that is firmly maintained by a client even though the belief is not shared by others. The nurse should not attempt to obtain a logical explanation about the delusion from the client. Only the client understands the logic behind the delusion, yet he or she is not able to express it until the delusion has reached conscious awareness. You will learn about delusions and how to deal with a client experiencing them in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1104; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 222-223.

66. An older woman is admitted to the acute psychiatric unit with a diagnosis of moderate depression. The client is unclean, her hair is uncombed, and she is inappropriately dressed. She is accompanied by her adult daughter who is very upset about her mother's lack of interest in her appearance. The nurse appropriately alleviates the daughter's concern by making which statement?

- 1 "Hygiene is not important to those who are depressed."
- 2 "Client self-esteem needs take priority over appearances."
- 3 "Group peer pressure on the unit will soon have your mother attending to her hygiene needs."

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Both the client and her family should know that the nurse will assist the client until the client can resume self-care activities. The client is experiencing psychomotor retardation and decreased energy at this time and requires assistance. Options 1, 2, and 3 will not alleviate the daughter's concern.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, alleviating the daughter's concern, and use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**. Only the correct option addresses the client's physiological needs. Review: care of the client with **depression**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Depression is a state of sadness or grief and can range from mild and moderate states to severe states. The potential for suicidal behavior should always be assessed in a client experiencing depression. You will learn about depression, its many causes, and the nursing care involved in your mental health nursing course.

- 4 “The nurses will assist your mother in meeting hygiene needs until she is able to resume self-care.”

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Caring  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

67. The nurse is preparing to care for a woman victimized by physical abuse. The nurse should plan to perform which action **first**?
- 1 Support the woman, and facilitate access to a safe environment.
  - 2 Talk to the woman about how and why the abuser became provoked.
  - 3 Reinforce that dealing with the psychological aspects is of the highest priority.
  - 4 Establish firm time lines for the woman to make necessary changes in her life situation.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment  
**Integrated Process:** Caring  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

68. A client is scheduled for electroconvulsive therapy (ECT). The client says to the nurse, “I am so afraid that it will hurt and will make me worse off than I am.” The nurse should make which **best** statement to the client?
- 1 “Can you tell me what you understand about the procedure?”
  - 2 “Your fears are a sign that you really should have this procedure.”
  - 3 “Try not to worry. This is a well-known and easy procedure for the doctor.”
  - 4 “Those are very normal fears, but please be assured that everything will be okay.”

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Caring  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 1144-1145; Keltner, Schewecke, Bostro (2011), p. 241.

### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The nurse must provide emotional support to the client and provide measures to ensure a safe environment. Option 2 fosters the notion that the client is at fault. In options 3 and 4, the nurse may be making unreasonable demands, which could cause further distress for the client.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to direct you to the correct option. Remember that if a physiological need does not exist in one of the options, then a safety need is the priority. Also, the correct option provides support to the client. Review: care of the client victimized by **physical abuse**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Physical abuse is a form of violence. In most states the nurse is required to report abuse to legal authorities if abuse is suspected or occurs in a child or older client. If abuse occurs, the priority is to treat any physical injuries sustained. Next it is important to provide support and a safe environment for the victim. You will learn about violence and abuse in your mental health nursing course.

### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1041; Varcarolis, Halter (2010), pp. 598, 600.

### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The correct option is a therapeutic communication technique that explores the client's feelings, determines the level of client understanding about the procedure, and displays caring. Option 2 demeans the client and does not encourage further sharing by the client. Option 3 diminishes the client's feelings by directing attention away from the client and to the doctor's importance. Option 4 does not address the client's fears and puts the client's feelings on hold.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *best*. Use **therapeutic communication techniques**, and remember to focus on the client's feelings and concerns. Option 1 is the only option that addresses the client's feelings, encourages client verbalization, and displays caring. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** ECT is a treatment in which a seizure is artificially induced in an anesthetized client by passing an electrical current through electrodes applied to the client's head. It is considered a safe and effective treatment for major depression. Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the

client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse should use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and about ECT in your mental health nursing course.

### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1057; Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 618-619; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65.

69. A client with schizophrenia requires seclusion. The nurse understands that the determination for this treatment is made in which situation?
- 1 For convenience of the health care staff
  - 2 When less restrictive methods are insufficient
  - 3 If a sedative is not effective in calming the client down
  - 4 As a form of punishment to deter the client from continuing the behavior

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process: Implementation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Restraints or seclusion require a written prescription from a health care provider and must be reviewed and renewed every 24 hours or per agency or state protocols. This treatment should be used only when less restrictive methods are insufficient (such as distraction or one-to-one supervision) and the client still presents a risk for harm to self or others. This treatment should not be used for the convenience of the health care staff. A sedative is also a form of restraint (chemical) and should not be used without a health care provider's prescription. This treatment should not be used as a form of punishment and can be considered a legal tort and violation of client rights if not used in the appropriate situation. Nursing measures include documenting the behavior leading to the restraint or seclusion; ensuring a prescription is in place for this treatment; ensuring the client in restraints or seclusion is protected from harm by having a staff member on one-to-one supervision within arm's length of the client; and assessing physical, safety, and comfort needs every 15 to 30 minutes, such as the need for food, fluids, range-of-motion exercises, and ambulation or the need to use the bathroom.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, indications for seclusion. Note that options 1 and 4 are **comparable or alike** and indicate violation of client rights; this will assist in eliminating these options. Noting that option 3 is also a form of restraint will assist in eliminating this option. Review: indications for **seclusion**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Seclusion is a treatment measure in which the client is placed alone in a specially designed room that protects the client and allows for close supervision. Seclusion is the last selected treatment measure in a process to maximize safety to the client and others. Physical restraints include any manual method or mechanical device, material, or equipment that inhibits free movement. Chemical restraints include the administration of medications for the specific purpose of inhibiting a specific behavior or movement. The important point to remember is that these methods should be used as a last resort, and they require a written prescription from a health care provider. You will learn about the use of restraints and seclusion in your fundamentals of nursing course and mental health and psychiatric nursing course.

### Reference

Varcarolis, Halter (2010), p. 524.

70. A mental health client is angry after an argument on the telephone with her son and tells the nurse about her conversation. Which statement by the nurse would be therapeutic?
- 1 "You seem quite upset."
  - 2 "All mothers have arguments with their children."
  - 3 "You need to focus your energy on building your strength and getting better."
  - 4 "That is not very kind of your son. Does he not realize that you are trying to recuperate from surgery?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** The correct option provides an opportunity for the client to further share and discuss feelings. Option 2 is a stereotypical comment. Options 3 and 4 seem to console the client, but they indicate that the nurse has taken "a side" in the argument, which is nontherapeutic.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Remember to address the client's concerns or feelings and elicit further information from the client. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 1144-1145; Keltner, Schewecke, Bostro (2011), p. 241.

71. A mental health nurse is performing an admission interview with a depressed client who has suicidal ideation. Following the interview, which nursing intervention should be carried out **first**?
- 1 Develop a plan of activities for the client.
  - 2 Provide the client with diversional activities.
  - 3 Isolate the client from other clients in the nursing unit.
  - 4 Communicate the client's risk for suicide to all team members.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** The first priority intervention for the suicidal individual is to communicate the risk for suicide to all team members. The plan of activities (options 1 and 2) would take second priority. Client isolation is inappropriate. The client should be placed on 1:1 supervision if he or she is suicidal.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Eliminate options 1 and 2 first because they are **comparable or alike** and relate to activities. From the remaining options the priority item is communication to other members of the health care team, with the ultimate aim to increase client safety. Review: care of the client with **suicidal ideation**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Suicidal ideation means that the client is having thoughts about self-inflicted death. All suicidal behavior is serious and requires the nurse's immediate attention and highest priority care. You will learn about suicide and the several interventions for the care of a client experiencing suicidal ideation in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1060; Varcarolis, Halter (2010), p. 557.

72. A client has received electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) for the treatment of major depression. The nurse should implement which activity **first** in the posttreatment area when the client awakens?
- 1 Discuss the treatment.
  - 2 Encourage the client to eat.

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** The nurse first monitors vital signs and then reviews the ECT treatment with the client. The nursing interventions outlined in options 1, 2, and 4 follow accordingly. In addition, the nurse would assess for the return of a gag reflex before encouraging the client to eat.

- 3 Monitor the client's vital signs.
- 4 Provide frequent reassurance to the client.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client receiving **electroconvulsive therapy**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Depression is a state of sadness or grief and can range from mild and moderate states to severe states. ECT is an effective treatment for major depression in which a seizure is artificially induced in an anesthetized client by passing an electrical current through electrodes applied to the client's head. Because the client has been anesthetized and experienced an artificially induced seizure, monitoring vital signs is a priority. You will learn about major depression and ECT in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1057; Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), p. 620.

73. The nurse is developing a plan of care for a client with mania and determines that the client is experiencing disturbed thoughts. Which activity related to disturbed thoughts should the nurse provide for the client **initially**?

- 1 Painting
- 2 Playing cards
- 3 Playing checkers
- 4 Playing a board game

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** When the client is manic, solitary activities requiring a short attention span or mild physical exertion activities, such as writing, painting, finger-painting, woodworking, or walks with the staff, are best initially. Solitary activities minimize stimuli, and mild physical activities release tension constructively. When less manic, the client may join one or two other clients in quiet nonstimulating activities. Competitive games should be avoided because they can stimulate aggression and cause increased psychomotor activity.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **strategic word** *initially*. Note that options 2, 3, and 4 are **comparable or alike** in that they all involve activities with another individual. The correct option is the only solitary activity that will minimize stimuli. Review: care of the **manic client** and the client with **disturbed thoughts**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Mania is a component of bipolar disorder and is characterized by an elevated, expansive, or irritable mood. The client lacks judgment in anticipating consequences and exhibits disturbed thought processes, pressured speech, flight of ideas, distractibility, inflated self-esteem, and hypersexuality. You will learn about caring for the client with mania in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), p. 619; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), p. 71.

74. A client who has been raped arrives at the emergency department. Which of these observations would be **most important** for the nurse to consider when planning the **immediate** care for the client?

- 1 The victim states that "she feels numb."
- 2 The victim states that she "feels like it did not happen."
- 3 The victim states that she knows the rapist well; in fact, they had been dating for several weeks.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The nurse's primary concern is to provide for safety. The priority statement by the victim is that the rapist will kill her. The victim who states that she *feels like it did not happen* or that she *feels numb* is most likely in the denial stage, which can be a helpful defense mechanism for the client. The fact that the rapist and the victim knew each other is a common phenomenon; in many situations of abuse, the victim does know the rapist.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most important* and *immediate*. Eliminate options 1 and 2 first because they are



- 4 The victim states that the rapist knows where she lives and that, "He will kill me if I tell anyone about the rape."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

**comparable or alike.** From the remaining options use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory.** The correct option shows concern for safety. Review: care of the **rape victim.**

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Rape is the forced act of sexual intercourse with another person without that person's consent. Safety of the client is a primary concern. In addition, nonjudgmental listening and psychological support are essential. Physical evidence may need to be obtained if the victim chooses to take legal action against the perpetrator. You will learn about the many important nursing interventions in the care of a client who has been raped in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Varcarolis, Halter (2010), p. 613; Morrison-Valfre (2009), pp. 291, 294.

75. A client says to the nurse, "Ever since my wife passed on, my life is empty and has no meaning." What is the appropriate nursing response?
- 1 "Your life has no meaning?"
  - 2 "Most people who lose a loved one feel empty."
  - 3 "What would your children think if they knew how you felt?"
  - 4 "Let's talk about the positive things that you have in your life."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation  
**Content Area:** Mental Health

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** In the correct option, the nurse uses the therapeutic technique of restating. In this technique, the nurse explores more thoroughly topics that are significant to the client. Option 2 generalizes and does not focus on the client. Option 3 focuses on the client's children rather than on the client's feelings. Option 4 avoids the client's feelings.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques.** Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike** and do not focus on the client's feelings. Next eliminate option 2 because it is a generalized statement and stereotypes the client. Option 1 uses the therapeutic technique of restating. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques.**

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 72-74; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro, (2011), pp. 62-65.

76. The nurse is having a conversation with a client hospitalized in a mental health unit. The client says to the nurse, "I work in a factory doing piece work, and I am very competitive with the people with whom I work." What is the appropriate nursing response?
- 1 "Do you find that your fellow employees are competitive also?"
  - 2 "When you are being paid by piece work then you need to be competitive."

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** Option 3 uses the therapeutic technique of paraphrasing. In paraphrasing, the nurse restates in different words what the client has said to confirm an understanding of what has been said. Option 1 focuses on fellow employees and not the client. In option 2, the nurse agrees with the client. In option 4, the nurse uses the word *why*, which can make the client feel defensive and often implies criticism.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques.** Eliminate option 1 first because it does not focus on the client. Next eliminate option 4 because the nurse uses the word *why*. From the

- 3 "In other words, you seem to be saying that you try to do better than your fellow employees."
- 4 "Why are you competitive? After all, you get paid based on the amount of work that you do, not your fellow employees."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

remaining options, eliminate option 2 because the nurse agrees with the client. Additionally, the correct option uses the therapeutic technique of paraphrasing. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65; Varcariolis, Halter (2010), p. 180.

77. A client receiving therapy at a mental health clinic says to the nurse, "When I have a stressful day at work and when my boss 'is on my case all day' I go home and take my frustrations out on my children." What is the appropriate response to the client?

- 1 "Let's talk about some other ways that you can handle your frustrations."
- 2 "Why do you do this? Can you think of another way to take out your frustrations?"
- 3 "Is there some place that you can go after work to relieve your frustrations before going home?"
- 4 "The only way to take out your frustrations is to join a health fitness center that provides equipment for weight-lifting and boxing."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The nursing response in option 1 provides the client the opportunity to problem-solve. Option 2 uses the word *why*, which can make the client feel defensive and often implies criticism. Option 3 avoids the fact that the client needs to deal with the subject, namely, taking her frustrations out on her children. Option 4 is incorrect because physical activity is not the only way to relieve frustrations. In addition, this may not be appropriate for this client.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Eliminate option 2 because of the word *why*. Next eliminate option 4 because of the **closed-ended word** *only*. From the remaining options, note that option 2 is **comparable or alike** to option 3 and that option 1 provides the client the opportunity to problem-solve. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65, 303; Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 89-90.

78. A female client who is hospitalized in the mental health unit for treatment of depression says to a female nurse, "Women always get put down. It is as if we are useless members of society." What is the appropriate nursing response?

- 1 "Tell me how you feel as a woman."
- 2 "Think about it. That is no longer true in today's society."

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** In option 1, the nurse uses the therapeutic technique of focusing and encourages the client to verbalize and expand on her feelings. In option 2, the nurse disagrees with the client. In option 3, the nurse provides an opinion. In option 4, the nurse agrees with the client and then takes a forceful stance with regard to how the client would deal with these feelings.

- 3 "I never let anyone make me feel as though I am useless!"
- 4 "Yes, that does happen to women but it does not mean that women have to stand for that kind of treatment."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Eliminate option 3 first because of the **closed-ended word** *never*. In addition, in this option the nurse provides an opinion, which is nontherapeutic. Next eliminate options 2 and 4. In option 2, the nurse disagrees with the client, and in option 4, the nurse agrees with the client. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Depression is a state of sadness or grief and can range from mild and moderate states to severe states. Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and about depression in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), p. 71; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65.

79. The nurse employed in a mental health unit is meeting with a client for the first time. Which nursing statement would be **most appropriate** to initiate the conversation?

- 1 "Are you feeling sad?"
- 2 "What would you like to discuss?"
- 3 "Have you ever been admitted to a mental health facility?"
- 4 "Have psychiatric medications ever been prescribed for you?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The nursing statement in option 2 is an open-ended question that encourages conversation because it requires more than a one-word answer. In options 1, 3, and 4, the nurse attempts to obtain information from the client; however, these statements do not encourage conversation in that the client can respond by a *yes* or *no* response.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words**, *most appropriate*. Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. Eliminate options 1, 3, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** and do not encourage conversation. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 72-74; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro, (2011), pp. 62-65.

80. The emergency department nurse suspects that a female client is a victim of physical abuse. The nurse should make which appropriate statement to the client?

- 1 "If your boyfriend is physically abusing you, you can get a restraining order."
- 2 "That bruise looks very sore. I do not know how a man can do that to a woman."

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Women must be asked in a caring and nonthreatening manner about violence in their lives. Options 1 and 3 are confrontational. Option 2 is a judgmental statement on the nurse's part. The nurse must avoid judgment of the victim or suspected victim's situation. It can take a great deal of time for a woman to admit that there is, in fact, abuse occurring, and the nurse must avoid becoming another controller in the woman's life. Only option 4 allows the client the option of rejecting or

- 3 "You have a huge bruise on your back. How often does your boyfriend hit you?"
- 4 "I sometimes see women who have been hurt by their boyfriends. Did anyone hit you?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

accepting further intervention because the nurse is making an indirect, general statement to the client.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**, and note that the client may be a victim of violence. Eliminate options 1 and 3 first because they are **comparable or alike** and are both confrontational statements. Next eliminate option 2 because it is a judgmental statement. Also note that option 4 is a general statement. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Physical abuse is a form of violence. If abuse occurs, the priority is to treat any physical injuries sustained. Next it is important to provide support and a safe environment for the victim. The nurse should use therapeutic communication techniques to communicate with the client. Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course. In addition, you will learn about violence and abuse in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1041; Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), p. 531; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65.

81. Which nursing statement(s) indicate the use of a therapeutic communication technique? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 "I would not worry about that."
- 2 "You'll do just fine. You'll see."
- 3 "What would you like to discuss?"
- 4 "Can you describe your feelings?"
- 5 "Can you tell me what the voices are saying?"
- 6 "Let's not talk about that now, and let's focus on some other issues."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Mental Health

**ANSWER: 3, 4, 5**

**Rationale:** The nursing statement "What would you like to discuss?" is therapeutic and an open-ended question that invites the client to share personal feelings. The nursing statements "Can you describe your feelings?" and "Can you tell me what the voices are saying?" are therapeutic and focused statements that are exploratory. The nursing statements, "I would not worry about that," and, "You'll do just fine. You'll see," are nontherapeutic and provide false reassurance. The statement, "Let's not talk about that now, and let's focus on some other issues," avoids a client's feelings and concerns.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Read each nursing statement and focus on the **subject**, use of **therapeutic communication techniques**. Recalling the therapeutic and nontherapeutic techniques will assist in answering the question. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Therapeutic communication techniques promote and encourage the client to communicate and share his or her feelings with the nurse. Nontherapeutic communication techniques block the communication process and are not methods that the nurse would use when caring for a client. You will learn about therapeutic and nontherapeutic communication techniques in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your mental health nursing course.

#### References

Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 72-74; Keltner, Schwecke, Bostro (2011), pp. 62-65.

82. The health care provider prescribes aripiprazole (Abilify) for a client with a diagnosis of schizophrenia. Which nursing intervention would be therapeutic?
- 1 Administer the medication only after meals.
  - 2 Inform the client to limit his alcohol intake to one drink each day.
  - 3 Inform the client that the medication may cause sedation and should be taken at bedtime.
  - 4 Instruct the client to increase his usual exercise pattern threefold to help with medication absorption.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Mental Health

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Aripiprazole is an antipsychotic agent that may be referred to as a dopamine system stabilizer (DSS). Because antipsychotics cause sedation, bedtime dosing helps promote sleep while decreasing daytime drowsiness. Aripiprazole may be administered with or without food and is well absorbed both in the presence or absence of food. It is not necessary for the client to increase his or her usual exercise pattern to assist in absorption of the medication. Alcohol is avoided, not limited.

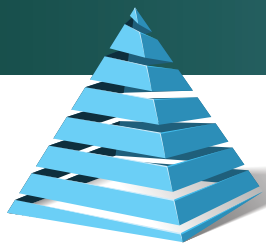
**Test-Taking Strategy:** Noting that the client has schizophrenia will assist in determining that the medication is an antipsychotic. Eliminate option 1 because of the **closed-ended word** *only*. Eliminate option 2 by recalling that alcohol intake is avoided, not limited. From the remaining options, eliminate option 4 because of the words *increase his usual exercise pattern threefold*. Review: **aripiprazole**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Schizophrenia is a psychotic disorder characterized by gross distortion of reality, disturbances of language and communication, withdrawal from social interactions, and disorganization and fragmentation of thoughts. Antipsychotic medication is administered to control the delusions and hallucinations that the client experiences. You will learn about schizophrenia and its treatment in your mental health nursing course.

**References**

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1107; Lehne (2013), pp. 351-352.

---



## CHAPTER 16

# Maternity Questions

83. The nurse is performing a postpartum fundal assessment and notes that the client's uterus feels soft and spongy. Which nursing action(s) are most appropriate initially? Select all that apply.

- 1 Massage the fundus gently.
- 2 Notify the health care provider.
- 3 Encourage the mother to ambulate.
- 4 Observe for increased vaginal bleeding or clots.
- 5 Document fundal position, consistency, and height.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

**ANSWER: 1, 4, 5**

**Rationale:** If the uterus feels soft and spongy (boggy), it should be massaged gently, observing for increased vaginal bleeding or clots. Option 3 is inappropriate at this time and could be harmful. The nurse should document fundal position, consistency, and height and the need to perform fundal massage, along with the client's response to the intervention. The health care provider is notified if uterine massage is not helpful.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate initially*. Note the relationship of the data in the question (soft and spongy) and the data in the correct options. Also recall that actions need to be taken if the uterus is soft and boggy. Review: nursing interventions related to **fundal assessment**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The postpartum period is the time following delivery of a newborn. During this time, the nurse needs to check the new mother's fundus for firmness. If the fundus is soft and boggy (and not firm as it should be), the nurse should gently massage the fundus. You will learn about the postpartum period and associated nursing interventions in your maternity nursing course when you study postpartum assessments.

### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 238-239; Lowdermilk et al (2012), pp. 493-494, 826.

84. A client arrives at the prenatal clinic for the first prenatal assessment. She tells the nurse that the first day of her last menstrual period (LMP) was August 19, 2014. Using Nägele's rule, the nurse determines the estimated date of delivery as which date?

- 1 May 12, 2015
- 2 May 26, 2015
- 3 June 12, 2015
- 4 June 26, 2015

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Accurate use of Nägele's rule requires that the woman have a regular 28-day menstrual cycle. Subtract 3 months from the first day of the LMP, add 7 days, and then add 1 year to that date if it is appropriate to change it to the next year. First day of the LMP is August 19, 2014; subtract 3 months: May 19, 2014; add 7 days: May 26, 2014; add 1 year: May 26, 2015.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, accurate use of this rule. Use Nägele's rule to answer this question, but use caution when following the steps to determine the estimated date of delivery. Read all options carefully, noting the dates and years in each before selecting an option. Review: **Nägele's rule**.

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Maternity

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Nägele's rule is a method of determining the date of delivery for a client who is pregnant. Determining the date of delivery requires knowing the date of the LMP and then using the rule to determine the delivery date. This is a simple way to determine the date, and memorizing the rule will assist you in determining a client's delivery date. You will learn about Nägele's rule and how to use the rule to determine the delivery date in your maternity nursing course when you study prenatal assessment procedures.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 48; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 330.

85. The nurse is monitoring a client who is receiving magnesium sulfate for preeclampsia and is assessing the client every 30 minutes. Which finding indicates a need to **immediately** contact the health care provider?

- 1 Urinary output of 20 mL
- 2 Deep tendon reflexes of 2+
- 3 Respirations of 10 breaths/minute
- 4 Fetal heart rate (FHR) of 116 beats/minute

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** Magnesium sulfate depresses the respiratory rate. If the rate is less than 12 breaths/minute, continuation of the medication needs to be reassessed. The acceptable criterion for urine output is at least 30 mL/hour. The amount of urine output identified in option 1 is adequate (20 mL of urine in 30 minutes). Deep tendon reflexes of 2+ are normal. The FHR is within normal limits for a resting fetus.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediately*. Select the option that indicates an abnormal finding that requires further intervention. Recalling the normal respiratory rate will direct you to option 3. Review: the findings in **preeclampsia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Preeclampsia is an abnormal condition of pregnancy characterized by the onset of acute hypertension after week 24 of pregnancy. The classic signs include hypertension, proteinuria (protein in the urine), and edema (swelling). One concern is that preeclampsia can progress to eclampsia (seizures). Preeclampsia is treated with magnesium sulfate to prevent its progression to eclampsia. The nurse needs to monitor closely the client receiving this medication because of its many adverse effects and the risk of toxicity. One primary concern is that magnesium sulfate depresses respirations; therefore, the nurse monitors the client's respiratory status closely. You will learn about this medication and important nursing interventions when it is administered in a pharmacology course or in your maternity nursing course when you study high-risk conditions in pregnancy.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 94; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 665.

86. The nurse receives report at the beginning of the shift about a client with an intrauterine fetal demise. On assessment of the client, the nurse expects to note which finding?

- 1 Intractable vomiting and dehydration
- 2 Elevated blood pressure, proteinuria, and edema
- 3 Uterine size greater than expected for gestational age

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Symptoms of a fetal demise include decreased fetal movement, unchanged or decreased fundal height, and absent fetal heart tones. In addition, many symptoms of the pregnancy may diminish, such as breast size and tenderness. Option 1 is associated with hyperemesis gravidarum. Option 2 is associated with preeclampsia. Option 3 is unrelated to intrauterine fetal demise.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, intrauterine fetal demise. Note the relationship between the **subject** and option 4. Recalling

- 4 Regression of pregnancy symptoms and absence of fetal heart tones

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Maternity

that fetal demise means fetal death will direct you to the correct option. Review the signs associated with **intrauterine fetal demise**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Fetal demise refers to the intrauterine death of a fetus. If this occurs, fetal movement and heart tones would be absent. Hyperemesis gravidarum is an abnormal condition of pregnancy characterized by protracted vomiting, weight loss, and fluid and electrolyte imbalance. Preeclampsia is an abnormal condition of pregnancy characterized by the onset of acute hypertension after week 24 of pregnancy. The classic signs include hypertension, proteinuria (protein in the urine), and edema (swelling). You will learn about these complications of pregnancy in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Murray, McKinney (2010), pp. 724-725, 727.

87. Immediately following the delivery of a newborn infant, the nurse prepares to assist in the delivery of the placenta. What is the appropriate action to deliver the placenta?
- 1 Pull on the umbilical cord.
  - 2 Instruct the mother to push during a uterine contraction.
  - 3 Place traction on the umbilical cord and pull on the placenta as it enters the vaginal canal.
  - 4 Separate the placenta from the uterine wall using the forceps, and then allow the placenta to deliver spontaneously.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** After the placenta separates, the mother is instructed to push during a uterine contraction. Pulling on the umbilical cord or placing traction on the umbilical cord may cause it to break, making the placenta harder to deliver. The placenta is not separated from the uterine wall using forceps. This may result in bleeding.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, actions to assist in the delivery of a placenta. Eliminate option 1 because of the word *pull* and option 3 because of the word *traction*. From the remaining options, eliminate option 4 by recalling that the placenta is attached to the uterine wall and unnatural separation will result in bleeding. Review: the procedure for **placental delivery**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The placenta is a fetal structure that provides nourishment to and removes wastes from the developing fetus. After the delivery of the baby, the placenta separates from the uterine wall and is delivered. You will learn about the purpose of the placenta and its delivery in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 146-147; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 471.

88. A client tells the nurse that she is really worried about knowing how to care for her first-born child. The nurse should identify which **priority** problem for this client?
- 1 Inability to cope
  - 2 Lack of knowledge
  - 3 Ineffective grieving
  - 4 Lowered self-esteem

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and  
 Maintenance

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Lack of knowledge indicates a lack of information or psychomotor skill concerning a skill, condition, or treatment. This problem best describes the situation presented in the question. Inability to cope implies that the person is unable to manage stressors adequately. Ineffective grieving implies prolonged unresolved grief leading to detrimental activities. Lowered self-esteem represents temporary negative feelings about self in response to an event.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. When a question asks to identify a priority client problem, focus on the information in the question. Option 2 will focus on the mother's concern about *knowing how to care for her first-born child*. Review: care of the first-time **mother**.



**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Planning

**Content Area:** Maternity

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Teaching is an important nursing responsibility. It is common for a new mother to be concerned about how to care for her newborn. The nurse needs to alleviate fears and concerns by providing the mother with opportunities to care for the newborn after delivery while hospitalized. You will learn about therapeutic measures to alleviate these concerns and fears and the important points to teach the mother about caring for her newborn in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Murray, McKinney (2010), p. 516; Christensen, Kockrow (2011), p. 860.

89. The nurse is monitoring the status of a client in labor who is experiencing hypotonic uterine dysfunction. The nurse interprets that which finding would **least likely** be consistent with this type of dysfunctional labor?

- 1 Contractions weaken during the active stage of labor.
- 2 Contractions become inefficient or stop during the active stage of labor.
- 3 The client initially makes normal progress into the active stage of labor, and then contractions weaken.
- 4 The client is having painful and frequent contractions that are ineffective in causing cervical dilation or effacement to progress.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Maternity

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** In hypotonic uterine dysfunction the client initially makes normal progress into the active stage of labor and then contractions weaken, become inefficient, or stop. Option 4 is characteristic of hypertonic uterine dysfunction.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *least likely*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you need to identify the option that is not characteristic of hypotonic uterine dysfunction. Noting that options 1, 2, and 3 are **comparable or alike** and noting the word *hypotonic* in the question will direct you to the correct option. Review: manifestations of **hypotonic uterine dysfunction**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A contraction is a rhythmic tightening of the musculature of the upper uterus that begins as mild tightening and progresses to strong tightening late in labor. Contractions decrease the size of the uterus and push the fetus through the birth canal. Normal labor contractions are coordinated, involuntary, and intermittent. You will learn about contractions and the labor process in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 185-186; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 792.

90. A client has just experienced a precipitate labor. The nurse notes that the mother is lying quietly in bed and is avoiding physical contact with her newborn infant. What is the **most appropriate** nursing action?

- 1 Request a psychiatric consult.
- 2 Provide support to the mother.
- 3 Contact the health care provider.
- 4 Encourage the mother to breast-feed the infant.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Caring

**Content Area:** Maternity

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Precipitate labor is defined as labor that lasts less than 3 hours from the onset of contractions to the time of birth. After a precipitate labor, the mother may need help to process what has happened and time to assimilate it all. The mother may be exhausted, in pain, stunned by the rapid nature of the delivery, or simply following cultural norms. Providing support to the mother is the most appropriate and therapeutic action by the nurse. Options 1 and 3 do not enhance the therapeutic relationship. Option 4 is an appropriate nursing intervention, but the question does not indicate whether the mother is going to be breast-feeding.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*. Eliminate options 1 and 3 first because they are **comparable or alike**. From the remaining options, note that no data indicate that the mother is going to breast-feed. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client following **precipitate labor**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The total duration of normal labor differs for women who have never given birth and for those who have previously given birth by the vaginal route. Normal labor consists of four stages. In the first stage, which normally lasts 6 to 10 hours (but can be longer), effacement and dilation occur. The second stage involves expulsion of the fetus and normally lasts 20 to 60 minutes. Stage three involves separation of the placenta and usually takes 5 to 30 minutes. Stage four, which lasts 1 to 4 hours after delivery, is the time for physical recovery and newborn bonding. You will learn about the normal labor process and the stages of labor in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 834-835; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 794.

91. A pregnant client experienced a uterine rupture with subsequent fetal death. After ensuring that the client is physiologically stable, the nurse should use which approach as the first step to support the client psychologically?
- 1 Avoid talking about the dead fetus.
  - 2 Assess how the client perceived the event.
  - 3 Ask the client and husband about plans for future pregnancies.
  - 4 Suggest that family members see and hold the dead infant if they wish.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Caring

**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Because of anesthesia, anxiety, and the experience of a sudden catastrophic event, the client may well have experienced a decreased ability to take in and process information. The nurse should first assess the client's perception of the event before deciding how to intervene. Options 1 and 3 are not helpful because they are not therapeutic. Option 1 avoids the subject, and option 3 deals with subjects the client may not be ready to face. Option 4 may be helpful but not as a first step.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use the **steps of the nursing process**, remembering that assessment/data collection comes first. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the **pregnant client**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Uterine rupture results when a tear in the wall of the uterus occurs because the uterine wall cannot stand the pressure placed against it from the growing fetus. Uterine rupture is a rare condition associated with previous uterine surgery, such as a cesarean birth or surgery to remove fibroids. If the placenta is involved, the fetus is often dead. You will learn about the complications of pregnancy and uterine rupture in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 195-196; Murray, McKinney (2010), pp. 723-724.

92. A pregnant client with a suspected diagnosis of placenta previa arrives at the health care clinic for an examination. The nurse prepares the client for the examination and tells the client that which procedure will be deferred until the diagnosis is confirmed?
- 1 Abdominal ultrasound
  - 2 Vital sign measurement
  - 3 Urine testing for glucose
  - 4 Vaginal speculum examination

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The placenta is implanted low in the uterus in placenta previa, and a vaginal speculum examination could cause disruption of the placenta and initiate severe hemorrhage. The abdominal ultrasound is used to confirm the diagnosis of placenta previa. There is no reason to defer urine testing or vital sign measurement.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, care of the client with placenta previa. Note the word *deferred*, and focus on the client's suspected diagnosis. Recalling that in this condition the placenta is implanted low in the uterus and that the client is at risk for hemorrhage will direct you to the correct option. Review: nursing care of the client with **placenta previa**.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The placenta is a fetal structure that provides nourishment to and removes wastes from the developing fetus. It is normally implanted in the upper uterine area. In placenta previa, the placenta is implanted low in the uterus near the cervix. Disruption of the placenta can cause severe hemorrhage and compromise fetal status. Therefore any activity or procedure that could disrupt the placenta is avoided. You will learn about placenta previa and the risks associated with it in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 89-90; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 682.

93. The nurse is preparing to perform an assessment on a client with placenta previa and should plan to assess which item first?
- 1 The client's temperature
  - 2 The fetal heart rate (FHR)
  - 3 The client's compliance with activity limitations
  - 4 The client's understanding of the treatment for placenta previa

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** A primary concern with placenta previa is fetal injury related to potentially decreased placental perfusion. Although all the options may be assessed, assessing the FHR is the priority.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first* and that options 3 and 4 are **comparable or alike** and therefore can be eliminated. Also use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to option 2. Review: care of the client with **placenta previa**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Placenta previa is an abnormal condition in which the placenta is implanted low in the uterus near the cervix. A primary concern when a client has placenta previa is disruption of the placenta, leading to severe hemorrhage and a compromised fetal status. Both the mother and fetus are monitored closely. Any activity or procedure that could disrupt the placenta, such as a vaginal examination, is avoided. You will learn about placenta previa and the risks associated with it in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 89-90; Lowdermilk (2012), p. 682.

94. The nurse is preparing to perform fundal massage on a client with uterine atony. How should the nurse perform this procedure?
- 1 Place one hand just above the symphysis pubis and push on the uterus in a vertical direction.
  - 2 Place one hand just below the symphysis pubis and massage the fundus in a circular motion.
  - 3 Place one hand just below the symphysis pubis and massage the fundus in a horizontal motion.
  - 4 Place one hand just above the symphysis pubis and gently but firmly massage the fundus in a circular motion.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** When performing fundal massage, one hand is placed just above the symphysis pubis to support the lower uterine segment while the fundus is gently but firmly massaged in a circular motion. Pushing on an uncontracted uterus could invert the uterus and cause massive hemorrhage.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, fundal massage. Eliminate option 1 first because of the word *pushing* and recalling that pushing on an uncontracted uterus could invert the uterus and cause massive hemorrhage. Next visualize the anatomy of the uterus. Eliminate options 2 and 3 because the hand is not placed below the symphysis pubis. Review: the procedure for **fundal massage**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Uterine atony refers to a lack of uterine muscle tone and can result in bleeding. Bleeding occurs because the uterine muscle fibers fail to contract firmly around the blood vessels when the placenta separates. A soft or “boggy” feel on locating the uterine fundus is one manifestation of uterine atony.

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Maternity

Fundal massage is performed to contract the uterus when uterine atony is present. You will learn about uterine atony, its manifestations, and uterine massage in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011) pp. 238-239; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 493.

95. A woman is seen in the prenatal clinic with morning sickness. The nurse should provide which instruction to the client regarding dietary measures?
- 1 Eat five or six small meals per day.
  - 2 Gas-forming foods should be eaten only during the afternoon hours.
  - 3 A high-protein and high-fat snack should be eaten before getting out of bed.
  - 4 Fried foods should be eaten only during the afternoon and early evening hours.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Morning sickness is common during the first trimester of pregnancy and is associated with increased levels of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) and changes in carbohydrate metabolism. It most often occurs on arising, although a few women experience it throughout the day. Several self-care measures can be implemented to prevent or alleviate morning sickness. These include avoiding an empty or overloaded stomach; not smoking; eating a dry carbohydrate food item such as a dry cracker or toast before getting out of bed; eating five or six small meals per day; and avoiding fried, odorous, greasy, gas-forming, or spicy foods.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, morning sickness. Eliminate options 2 and 4 first because of the **closed-ended word only**. From the remaining options eliminate option 3 because of the words *high-fat*. Review: measures to prevent or alleviate **morning sickness**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Morning sickness is nausea and vomiting that occurs during pregnancy. It is called morning sickness because the symptoms are usually more acute in the morning (although it can occur at any time of the day). This is a common discomfort of pregnancy and is usually temporary. You will learn about morning sickness and the measures to alleviate it in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 622, 790; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 354.

96. A client in the third trimester of pregnancy seen in the clinic is experiencing urinary frequency. Which self-care measure should the nurse provide to the client?
- 1 Perform Kegel exercises.
  - 2 Avoid fluid intake after 6:00 PM.
  - 3 Avoid emptying the bladder frequently.
  - 4 Sip on small amounts of fluids during the day restricting intake to 1000 mL.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Urinary frequency may occur in the first trimester and then again late in the third trimester because of the pressure placed on the bladder by the enlarged uterus. Self-care measures for urinary frequency include emptying the bladder frequently (every 2 hours), drinking at least 2000 mL of fluid per day, limiting fluid intake before bedtime (not avoiding fluid intake), performing Kegel exercises to strengthen the perineal muscles, and wearing a perineal pad. Options 2, 3, and 4 are incorrect and could lead to urinary stasis (option 3) or fluid volume deficit (options 2 and 4).

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 2 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike** and could lead to fluid volume deficit. Eliminate option 3 next because it does not make sense to avoid emptying the bladder frequently. This action could lead to urinary stasis and cause discomfort. Review: measures that will assist with the discomfort of **urinary frequency**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Urinary frequency is a common discomfort of pregnancy and usually occurs during the first trimester of pregnancy and near term. This is a temporary condition and Kegel exercises help maintain bladder control. Kegel exercises involve contracting muscles around the vagina, holding tightly for 10 seconds, and then relaxing for 10 seconds. Thirty contraction-relaxation cycles should be done each day. You will learn about urinary frequency as a common discomfort of pregnancy and about Kegel exercises in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 49, 208; Lowdermilk et al (2012), pp. 300, 354.

97. A client seen in the prenatal clinic is experiencing ankle edema. The nurse assesses the client and notes that the edema is nonpitting, the client's blood pressure is within normal limits, and proteinuria is not present. The nurse should provide which home care instruction to this client?

- 1 Restrict fluid intake.
- 2 Avoid exercising until the edema subsides.
- 3 Rest periodically with the legs and hips elevated.
- 4 Stop wearing the support stockings prescribed by the obstetrician.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** Ankle edema is common in the third trimester of pregnancy and is caused by decreased venous return from the feet because of gravity. It is a minor discomfort, and as long as the edema is nonpitting and hypertension and proteinuria are not present, it is not a cause for concern. Self-care measures include resting periodically with the legs and hips elevated, wearing supportive stockings or hose, drinking ample amounts of fluid, partaking in moderate exercise, and avoiding standing in one position or place for long periods.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, measures to relieve edema. Eliminate option 1 first because of the word *restrict*. Restricting fluids can be detrimental to the fetus. Next eliminate option 4 because the nurse should not tell a client to ignore the obstetrician's prescription. From the remaining options, use principles related to the effects of gravity to direct you to the correct option. Review: the measures to alleviate ankle **edema**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Edema refers to swelling from the accumulation of excess fluid in body tissues. Edema can occur during pregnancy because the weight of the uterus compresses the veins of the pelvis, delaying venous return. Edema of the feet and ankles is most noticeable at the end of the day. Dependent edema is insignificant, but if edema of the face or hands occurs, the client should be further assessed for developing complications of pregnancy. You will learn about dependent edema that occurs during pregnancy in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 66; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 355.

98. The nurse provides instructions to a prenatal client with heartburn about measures to alleviate the discomfort. Which statement by the client indicates a **need for further instruction**?

- 1 "I need to lie down after eating."
- 2 "I need to eat small, frequent meals."
- 3 "I need to avoid fatty or spicy foods."
- 4 "I need to drink approximately 2000 mL of fluid per day."

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Heartburn is associated with regurgitation of gastric acid contents into the esophagus. Self-care measures for heartburn include eating small, frequent meals; remaining upright for 30 minutes after eating; avoiding fatty or spicy foods; and drinking approximately 2000 mL of fluid per day.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *need for further instruction*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and the need to select the option that indicates an incorrect client statement. Recalling that heartburn is associated with regurgitation of gastric

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Maternity

99. The nurse is performing an assessment on a client who is at 38 weeks' gestation and notes that the fetal heart rate (FHR) is 174 beats/minute. Based on this finding, what is the **most appropriate** nursing action?
- 1 Document the finding.
  - 2 Check the mother's heart rate.
  - 3 Notify the health care provider.
  - 4 Tell the client that the FHR is normal.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

100. The nurse is assessing a client in the fourth stage of labor and notes that the uterine fundus is firmly contracted and is midline at the level of the umbilicus. Based on this finding, what is the **most appropriate** nursing action?
- 1 Record the findings.
  - 2 Massage the fundus.
  - 3 Assist the mother to void.
  - 4 Contact the health care provider.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

acid contents into the esophagus will direct you to the correct option. Review: measures to relieve or prevent **heartburn**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Heartburn is described as an acute burning sensation in the epigastric and sternal regions. During pregnancy it normally occurs as a result of diminished gastric motility, displacement of the stomach by the enlarging uterus, and relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter. You will learn about heartburn as a discomfort of pregnancy and the measures to prevent or alleviate it in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 66; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 354.

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** The FHR should be 110 to 160 beats/minute at term. Since the FHR is elevated from the normal range, the nurse should notify the health care provider. The FHR should be documented, but option 3 is the most appropriate action. Options 2 and 4 are inappropriate actions based on the data in the question.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate*. Focus on the FHR noted in the question. Recalling that the normal FHR should be 110 to 160 beats/minute at term will direct you to the correct option. Remember that an abnormal finding noted in the pregnant client needs to be reported to the health care provider. Review: the normal **fetal heart rate**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** FHR monitoring is an important part of maternal assessment during pregnancy. The nurse usually uses a Doppler device to auscultate the FHR, which creates an electronic sound based on movements. You will learn about the procedures for monitoring the FHR in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 822; Lowdermilk et al (2012), pp. 425, 430.

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** In the postpartum period the nurse assesses for uterine atony and checks the consistency and location of the uterine fundus. The uterine fundus should be firmly contracted, at or near the level of the umbilicus, and midline. Therefore the nurse should record the findings. Because the finding is normal, options 2, 3, and 4 are not necessary. The nurse should massage the uterine fundus if it was soft and boggy. A full bladder may cause a displaced fundus and one that is above the level of the umbilicus. The health care provider should be contacted if the client experienced excessive bleeding.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most appropriate* and focus on the data in the question. Recalling the normal location and consistency of the fundus will direct you to the correct option. Review: the expected **postpartum findings**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Involution is a retrogressive change in the uterus to its nonpregnant size. In the fourth stage

of labor (1 to 4 hours following delivery), the nurse monitors the location of the uterine fundus to determine whether involution is progressing normally. Immediately after delivery the fundus can be palpated midway between the symphysis pubis and the umbilicus. Within a few hours the fundus rises to the level of the umbilicus and should remain at this level for 24 hours. After 24 hours the fundus descends by approximately 1 cm/day. You will learn about involution and assessment of the location of the uterine fundus in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 842; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 478.

101. The home care nurse is visiting a postpartum client. The nurse reviews the information in the client's medical record and performs an assessment on the client. The nurse should suspect endometritis if which finding is noted?
- 1 Breast engorgement
  - 2 Fever beginning 3 days postpartum
  - 3 Slightly elevated white blood cell count
  - 4 Lochia rubra on the second day postpartum

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Fever on the third or fourth day postpartum should raise concerns about possible endometritis until proven otherwise. The woman with endometritis normally presents with a temperature over 100.4° F. Breast engorgement is a normal response and is not associated with endometritis. The white blood cell count of a postpartum woman is normally increased; thus this method of detecting infection is not of great value in the postpartum period. Lochia rubra on the second day postpartum is a normal finding.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, suspected endometritis. Use medical terminology to recall that *-itis* indicates inflammation or infection. This will assist in eliminating options 1 and 4. From the remaining options, noting the word *slightly* in option 3 will assist in eliminating this option. Also note that options 1, 3, and 4 are **comparable or alike** in that they are normal postpartum findings. Review: the signs of **endometritis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Endometritis is an inflammation of the endometrium or decidua and is usually caused by a bacterial infection. It occurs most frequently after childbirth or abortion and is associated with the use of an intrauterine device. Conservative treatment includes rest, antibiotics, pain medication, and adequate fluid intake. You will learn about endometritis in your maternity nursing course when you study postpartum disorders.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 241-242; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 834.

102. A client in the second trimester of pregnancy is admitted to the maternity unit with a diagnosis of abruptio placentae. The nurse expects to note which clinical manifestation associated with this disorder?
- 1 Nontender uterus
  - 2 Uterine hypertonicity
  - 3 Painless vaginal bleeding
  - 4 Soft, relaxed uterus with normal tone

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** In abruptio placentae, abdominal pain, uterine tenderness, and uterine hypertonicity are present. Uterine tenderness accompanies placental abruption, especially with a central abruption in which blood becomes trapped behind the placenta. The abdomen will feel hard and boardlike on palpation as the blood penetrates the myometrium and causes uterine irritability. Excessive uterine activity with poor relaxation between contractions is present. Observation of the fetal monitoring often reveals increased uterine resting tone, caused by failure of the uterus to relax in an attempt to constrict blood vessels and control bleeding. Painless, bright red vaginal bleeding; a soft, relaxed uterus with normal tone; and a nontender uterus are signs of placenta previa.

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Maternity

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 1 and 3 first because they are **comparable or alike**. From the remaining options note that option 2 indicates a sign opposite to the sign in option 4. This provides a clue that one of these options is the correct one. Recalling the signs of abruptio placentae will direct you to the correct option. Review: signs of **abruptio placentae**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** In abruptio placentae the normally implanted placenta separates before the fetus is born. The major concerns for the mother are bleeding, shock, and clotting abnormalities. The major concerns for the fetus are blood loss, anoxia, preterm birth, and fetal death. Placenta previa is an abnormal condition in which the placenta is implanted low in the uterus near the cervix. A primary concern when a client has placenta previa is disruption of the placenta leading to severe hemorrhage and a compromised fetal status. You will learn about these complications of pregnancy in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 892-893; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 681.

103. The nurse is performing an assessment on a client with severe preeclampsia. Which sign would indicate an improvement in the client's condition?
- 1 Protein in the urine is trace.
  - 2 Blood urea nitrogen is 40 mg/dL.
  - 3 Blood pressure is 148/102 mm Hg.
  - 4 Client complains of abdominal pain.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Evaluation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Preeclampsia is considered mild when the diastolic blood pressure does not exceed 100 mm Hg; proteinuria is no more than 500 mg/day (trace to 1+), and symptoms such as headache, visual disturbances, or abdominal pain are absent. In addition, signs of kidney or liver involvement are absent. An elevated blood urea nitrogen level indicates the presence of kidney damage as a result of preeclampsia.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, an improvement in the client's condition, noting the words *severe preeclampsia* and *improvement in the client's condition*. Note the word *trace* in option 1. This is the only option that does not indicate severe preeclampsia. Review: the signs of mild and severe **preeclampsia** and the signs that indicate improvement.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Preeclampsia is an abnormal condition of pregnancy characterized by the onset of acute hypertension after week 24 of gestation. Manifestations include hypertension, proteinuria, and edema (swelling). If preeclampsia is untreated, it can lead to serious complications, such as premature separation of the placenta or eclampsia (seizures). You will learn about preeclampsia, its manifestations, and its treatment in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 896; Lowdermilk et al (2012), pp. 655, 660.

104. Artificial rupture of the membranes is done to induce labor in a client. Following this procedure, what is the **immediate** nursing action?
- 1 Cleans the client's perineal area
  - 2 Checks the fetal heart rate (FHR)
  - 3 Places the client in a comfortable position
  - 4 Tells the client that a wet feeling in the perineal area is normal and expected.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Artificial rupture of the membranes may be done to augment or induce labor or to facilitate placement of internal monitors when fetal status indicates the need for some form of direct assessment. Because the umbilical cord can prolapse when the membranes rupture, the FHR and fetal pattern should be monitored immediately and for several minutes following the procedure to ascertain fetal well-being. Although options 1, 3, and 4 are appropriate, they are not the priority concern. In addition, in the preprocedure period (rather than postprocedure



**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

period), the client should be told that a wet feeling in the perineal area is normal and expected.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediate*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Also use of the **steps of the nursing process** will direct you to that option because it is the only option that addresses assessment/data collection. Review: care of the client following **artificial rupture of the membranes**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Artificial rupture of the membranes is also known as amniotomy and is done to stimulate labor. In this procedure, performed by the health care provider or nurse-midwife, a disposable plastic hook is inserted through the cervix to the amniotic membranes and a hole is made to allow the amniotic fluid to drain. Major risks associated with amniotomy include prolapse of the umbilical cord, infection, and abruption placentae (abnormal separation of the placenta from the uterine wall). You will learn about the procedure for performing amniotomy in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 836; Leifer (2011), pp. 126-127; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 448.

105. A client in labor tells the nurse that she suddenly has a wet feeling in the vaginal area. The nurse quickly checks the client and notes a large amount of bright red blood. What is the **immediate** nursing action?
- 1 Notify the obstetrician.
  - 2 Insert an intravenous catheter.
  - 3 Prepare to perform a vaginal examination.
  - 4 Prepare the client for an emergency cesarean birth.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation  
**Content Area:** Maternity

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Vaginal bleeding (bright red, dark red, or in an amount in excess of that expected during normal cervical dilation) requires immediate notification of the obstetrician. This finding indicates an emergency situation and could have occurred as a result of placenta previa or placental separation. Although the nurse will prepare the client for an emergency cesarean delivery and insert an intravenous catheter, these are not the immediate actions. A vaginal examination is not performed on a pregnant client who is bleeding vaginally.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediate*, and focus on the data in the question. Noting the words *large amount of bright red blood* will direct you to the correct option. Remember that when an emergency situation is presented in the question, it is likely that the correct option will be to notify the health care provider. Review: care of the client in **labor**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Vaginal bleeding during pregnancy is always a concern. Two conditions that can cause vaginal bleeding are abruption placentae and placenta previa. In abruption placentae, the normally implanted placenta separates before the fetus is born. Placenta previa is an abnormal condition in which the placenta is implanted low in the uterus near the cervix. You will learn about the causes of bleeding during pregnancy and the immediate interventions if bleeding occurs in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 90; Murray, McKinney (2010), p. 628.

106. While caring for a client in labor, the nurse suspects an umbilical cord prolapse. What is the **immediate** nursing action?
- 1 Set up for an emergency cesarean delivery.
  - 2 Adjust the bed to Trendelenburg's position.
  - 3 Encourage the woman to push with each contraction.
  - 4 Calmly reassure the woman and her partner that all possible measures are being taken.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Maternity

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Adjusting the bed into Trendelenburg's position (mattress flat, foot of bed elevated) uses gravity to reverse the direction of the pressure, keeping the presenting part off the umbilical cord. In addition, the knee-chest or modified Sims' position can be used. Pushing with contractions is contraindicated because it will push the presenting part against the cord. Not all prolapsed cords require a cesarean delivery. The nurse should reassure the woman and her partner after placing the woman in Trendelenburg's position.

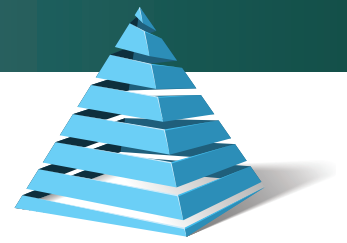
**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediate*, and visualize the situation. Eliminate option 4 first using **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** because it does not address a physiological need. From the remaining options, select the option that addresses the physiological safety of the primary client (the fetus). Also remember that in a prioritizing question, if repositioning is indicated in one of the options, that option may be the correct one. Review: immediate interventions for **umbilical cord prolapse**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A prolapsed umbilical cord refers to a condition in which the umbilical cord slips down after the amniotic membranes rupture, subjecting it to compression between the fetus and pelvis. This is a serious occurrence because it causes interruption in blood flow, and thus oxygenation, through the cord to the fetus and is potentially fatal. You will learn about prolapsed umbilical cord and the immediate interventions in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 194-195; Lowdermilk et al (2012), p. 819.

---



# Child Health Questions

107. The nurse at a playground witnesses a child fall off a swing. The nurse rushes to the child and suspects that he has a broken right leg. The nurse should take which **priority** action?
- 1 Immobilize the leg
  - 2 Call for an ambulance
  - 3 Remove the child's shoes
  - 4 Tell the child that everything will be fine

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** When a fracture is suspected, the area is immobilized and splinted before the victim is moved. Emergency help is called for, and the nurse should remain with the child and provide realistic reassurance. Shoes are not removed because this action can cause increased trauma. Telling the child that everything will be fine is nontherapeutic.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Focusing on the **subject**, a broken right leg, will direct you to the correct option. When a fracture is suspected, remember to immobilize and splint that area. Review: care of the victim with a **fracture**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A fracture is a break or disruption in a bone's continuity and generally occurs when traumatic or excessive force is placed on a bone. The signs and symptoms will vary depending on the location, type, and cause of injury but generally include pain at the site of injury, immobility or decreased range of motion, deformity, and edema. You will learn about fractures and the immediate interventions in your pediatrics nursing course when you study musculoskeletal disorders.

**References**

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1639; Leifer (2011), p. 564.

108. A newborn infant with a diagnosis of subdural hematoma is admitted to the newborn nursery. The nurse should perform which action to assess for the major symptom associated with subdural hematoma?
- 1 Monitor the urine for blood.
  - 2 Monitor the urinary output pattern.
  - 3 Test for contractures of the extremities.
  - 4 Test for equality of extremities when stimulating reflexes.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** A subdural hematoma can cause pressure on a specific area of the cerebral tissue. If the infant is actively bleeding, changes in the stimuli responses in the extremities on the opposite side of the body can occur. Options 1 and 2 are incorrect. Blood in the urine would indicate abdominal trauma and not be a result of the subdural hematoma. An infant, after delivery, would normally be incontinent of urine. Option 3 is incorrect because contractures would not occur this soon after delivery.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *major symptom*. Eliminate options 1 and 2 first because they are **comparable or alike**. Next focus on the infant's condition—subdural hematoma—and recall that this condition is a neurological disorder. Remember that the method of checking for complications and active bleeding into the cranial cavity would be a neurological assessment. Checking newborn reflexes is a

neurological assessment. Although contractures of extremities could occur as residual effects, they would not occur immediately; therefore, eliminate option 3. Review: the signs of **subdural hematoma**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A subdural hematoma is an accumulation of blood in the subdural space and is usually caused by an injury. It can be acute with rapid bleeding or subacute with the accumulation of blood occurring over a longer period. Because the accumulation of blood is in the cranial cavity, neurological assessment and monitoring for signs of increased intracranial pressure are priorities. You will learn about subdural hematomas in your medical-surgical nursing course and in your pediatrics (child health) nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 563; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 1527-1528.

**109.** The nurse is reviewing the record of an infant admitted to the newborn nursery. The nurse notes that the health care provider has documented bladder exstrophy. On assessment of the infant, the nurse expects to note which finding?

- 1 Undescended or hidden testes
- 2 Urinary bladder on the outside of the body
- 3 Opening of the urethral meatus on the ventral side of the glans penis
- 4 Opening of the urethral meatus below the normal placement on the glans penis

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Bladder exstrophy is a congenital anomaly characterized by the extrusion of the urinary bladder to the outside of the body through a defect in the lower abdominal wall. Option 1 describes cryptorchidism, option 3 describes epispadias, and option 4 describes hypospadias.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, assessment findings associated with bladder exstrophy. Note the relationship between the prefix in the name of the disorder, *ex-*, and the word *outside* in option 2. Review: **bladder exstrophy**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Bladder exstrophy is a congenital anomaly. In the newborn infant, the nurse would note the extrusion of the urinary bladder to the outside of the body. This occurs as a result of a defect in the lower abdominal wall. The nurse should institute measures as prescribed to protect the urinary bladder and prevent injury to the bladder mucosa. Surgical intervention will be planned to correct the condition. You will learn about this congenital anomaly in your maternity nursing course when you study newborn disorders.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 678; Perry et al (2010), p. 775.

**110.** The nurse notes that a child with Hirschsprung disease who is scheduled for surgery has inadequate fluid volume. The nurse should plan to implement which intervention to stabilize the child's hydration status before surgery?

- 1 Monitor daily weight.
- 2 Monitor intake and output.
- 3 Administer tap water enemas.
- 4 Administer intravenous fluids and electrolytes.

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** A child with inadequate fluid volume is stabilized with intravenous fluids and electrolytes before surgical management of the aganglionic portion of the bowel. Measurement of daily weight and intake and output assesses hydration status. Tap water enemas will alter the child's hydration status further.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, to stabilize the child's hydration status. Eliminate options 1 and 2 because they are assessments rather than interventions. Eliminate option 3 because it will further cause a decreased fluid volume. The correct

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning  
**Content Area:** Child Health

option addresses stabilization. Review: care of the child with **Hirschsprung disease**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Hirschsprung disease is also known as congenital aganglionosis or megacolon and is the result of an absence of ganglion cells in the rectum and, to varying degrees, upward in the colon. Constipation, signs of bowel obstruction, abdominal pain and distention, vomiting, and failure to thrive are manifestations. You will learn about Hirschsprung disease in your pediatrics nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 1024-1025; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1306.

111. The nurse provides home care instructions to the parents of a toddler newly diagnosed with hemophilia. Which statement by the parents indicates a **need for further instruction**?

- 1 "We need to pad crib rails and table corners."
- 2 "We need to obtain a medical identification bracelet for our child."
- 3 "If our child has any discomfort, it is acceptable to give him aspirin."
- 4 "We need to have our child use a soft-bristled, small toothbrush for dental hygiene."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Child Health

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** In the child with hemophilia, bleeding is a priority concern. Therefore, measures are implemented to prevent this occurrence. The environment should be made as safe as possible, and the parents are instructed to pad crib side rails and table corners to prevent injury. The child should wear a Medic-Alert bracelet for identification of the disorder. The parents are instructed about dental hygiene measures, such as using a soft-bristled, small toothbrush. Neither aspirin nor aspirin-containing compounds should be used, primarily because of their antiplatelet properties. Acetaminophen (Tylenol) can be used for discomfort if needed.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *a need for further instruction*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and the need to find the option that indicates an incorrect parental statement. Recalling that bleeding is the priority concern and that aspirin has antiplatelet properties will direct you to the correct option. Review: discharge teaching points for a child with **hemophilia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Hemophilia is a hereditary bleeding disorder characterized by a deficiency of one of the factors necessary for the coagulation of blood. The severity of the disorder varies with the extent of the deficiency. Nursing care focuses on preventing bleeding and providing a safe environment. You will learn about hemophilia in your pediatrics nursing course when you study hematological disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 995-996; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1444.

112. The nurse is preparing to care for a pediatric client with an intravenous solution infusing. The nurse should ensure that which item is in place to prevent fluid overload in this client?

- 1 Armboard
- 2 Infusion pump
- 3 Macro drip infusion set
- 4 Large-bore intravenous catheter

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The most effective means of preventing irregularities in volume infusion for the pediatric client is the use of an infusion pump. This prevents both overhydration and underhydration. An armboard may be helpful in certain instances to minimize movement of the extremity with the catheter, but it is not an effective means for regulating intravenous flow. A small-bore catheter and a microdrip infusion set, rather than a macrodrip set, are used in the pediatric client.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Child Health

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, to prevent fluid overload. The only item in the options that will accomplish this is an infusion pump. Use of an infusion pump will assist in preventing fluid overload. Review: care of the **pediatric client** receiving an **intravenous infusion**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** When a child (or adult) is receiving fluids by the intravenous route (through a vein), the nurse needs to monitor the client and infusion closely to ensure that the fluid is infusing at the prescribed rate. If the fluid infuses too rapidly, serious complications can occur from the excess fluid. An infusion pump, which controls the amount of fluid infusing, should be used to administer intravenous fluids to a pediatric client. An important point to remember, however, is that the infusion pump (as with any device or machine) can fail or work improperly, so the nurse needs to monitor the child closely during intravenous infusion, even if an infusion pump is used. You will learn about the administration of intravenous fluids to the child in your pediatrics nursing course.

#### References

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 1071-1072, 1076; Leifer (2011), pp. 506-507.

**113.** A mother tells the clinic nurse that she does not want her child to receive any immunizations because she has heard that they cause serious illnesses. The nurse should make which appropriate statement to the mother?

- 1 "Are you afraid your child is going to die from the injection?"
- 2 "Why are you afraid? Children are immunized every day without a problem."
- 3 "There will be a slight discomfort at the time of the injection, but that is all that will happen."
- 4 "I can see you are very concerned about your child. What do you think might happen after an immunization is given?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Child Health

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The correct option acknowledges the mother's concern, which provides an opportunity for the mother to respond to the nurse's open-ended question. Options 1, 2, and 3 are nontherapeutic. Option 1 attempts to verify an assumption not supported in the question. Option 2 can make the mother feel defensive, devalues the mother's feelings, and requires an explanation from the mother. Option 3 provides false reassurance.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Use **therapeutic communication techniques**. The correct option demonstrates empathy and helps the mother focus on specific fears so that the nurse can clarify information. Remember to focus on the client's feelings. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An immunization is a procedure in which resistance to an infectious disease is induced. A schedule of various types of immunizations needs to be followed to prevent infectious childhood diseases. In addition, all states require immunizations for children enrolled in licensed child care programs and school. You will learn about the administration of immunizations and the immunization schedule in your pediatrics nursing course when you study communicable diseases.

#### References

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 495-496, 505; Leifer (2011), pp. 736-737; Potter et al (2013), pp. 320-322.

114. A child with hemophilia is brought into the emergency department after being hit on the neck with a baseball. The nurse should **immediately** check the child for which finding?
- 1 Headache
  - 2 Slurred speech
  - 3 Airway obstruction
  - 4 Spontaneous hematuria

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Trauma to the neck may cause bleeding into the tissues of the neck, which may compromise the airway. Although headache and slurred speech are associated with head trauma, from the options provided, they are not the priorities in this situation. Hematuria is a symptom of hemophilia, although it is not associated with neck injury.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediately*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. Airway assessment is always a first priority. This directs you to the correct option. Review: care of the child with **hemophilia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Hemophilia is a hereditary bleeding disorder characterized by a deficiency of one of the factors necessary for the coagulation of blood. The severity of the disorder varies with the extent of the deficiency. Bleeding is always a concern if the child is injured. You will learn about hemophilia in your pediatrics nursing course when you study hematological disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 995-996; Perry et al (2010), pp. 1358, 1503-1504.

115. A 4-year-old child is admitted to the hospital for surgery. The nurse should ask the parents which **priority** question to identify the adequacy of support for the child's psychosocial needs?
- 1 "What are your child's favorite toys?"
  - 2 "What signs and symptoms has your child been having?"
  - 3 "Will a family member be able to stay with the child most of the time?"
  - 4 "How much do you know about the surgery and its expected outcome?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Psychosocial Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Separation from family is the most stressful aspect of hospitalization in young children. A primary goal is to prevent separation from family in children under the age of 5 years. Identifying support and the ability of family members to stay with the child takes priority over favorite toys or diversional activities. Options 2 and 4 relate to physiological needs.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Focus on the **subject**, adequacy of support and the child's psychosocial needs. Options 2 and 4 relate to physiological needs, so eliminate these options. From the remaining options, use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to select the security issue instead of the diversional activity. Review: psychosocial needs of a **toddler**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Hospitalization can be a stressful experience for the child, who can experience separation anxiety. How a child reacts to the experience depends on a number of factors, including age, cognitive development, preparation for the experience, coping skills, cultural influences, and previous experience with the health care system. You will learn about the stressors associated with hospitalization of the child in your pediatrics nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 961; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 965, 975-976.

116. The nurse is assessing a child who has just returned from surgery in a hip spica cast. Which outcome is the **priority**?
- 1 The hips are adducted.
  - 2 Circulation is adequate.
  - 3 The child is on the right side.
  - 4 The head of the bed is elevated.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Evaluation  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** The priority concern during the first few hours after a cast is applied is swelling, which may cause the cast to act as a tourniquet and constrict circulation. Therefore circulatory assessment is a high priority. The hip spica cast immobilizes the hip and knee. Turning the child side to side at least every 2 hours is important because it allows the body cast to dry evenly and prevents complications related to immobility; however, it is not a higher priority than checking circulation. Elevating the head of a bed of a child in a hip spica cast causes discomfort.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. The correct option addresses circulation. Review: care of the child in a **hip spica cast**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A hip spica cast is an orthopedic cast that is applied to immobilize part or all of the body trunk and part or all of the lower extremities. It is used to treat various fractures, such as fractures of the hip or femur, and to correct a hip deformity. It may be used to treat developmental dysplasia of the hip, a condition in which the head of the femur is improperly seated in the acetabulum of the pelvis. You will learn about a hip spica cast and other types of casts in your pediatrics nursing course when you study musculoskeletal disorders.

**References**

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 423; Leifer (2011), p. 333.

117. The parents of a newborn infant diagnosed with esophageal atresia ask the nurse to explain the diagnosis. What should the nurse tell the parents regarding this condition?
- 1 Gastric contents regurgitate back into the esophagus.
  - 2 The esophagus terminates before it reaches the stomach.
  - 3 A portion of the stomach protrudes through part of the diaphragm.
  - 4 Abdominal contents herniate through an opening of the diaphragm.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Esophageal atresia and tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF) are congenital malformations in which the esophagus terminates before it reaches the stomach and/or a fistula is present that forms an unnatural connection with the trachea. Option 1 describes gastroesophageal reflux. Option 3 describes a hiatal hernia. Option 4 describes a congenital diaphragmatic hernia.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject** and diagnosis, esophageal atresia. Note the relationship between the word *atresia* and the correct option. Review: the characteristics of **esophageal atresia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Esophageal atresia is a congenital malformation in which the esophagus terminates before it reaches the stomach. It can cause respiratory distress secondary to the aspiration of saliva and any oral fluids that may be given to the infant. Some manifestations of the disorder include excessive oral secretions, abdominal distention, and vomiting. Surgical repair will need to be done to correct the condition. You will learn about esophageal atresia in your pediatrics nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.

**References**

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 438-439; Leifer (2011), pp. 648-649.



118. A mother brings her child to the emergency department because he said that dirt flew into his eye during softball practice. The nurse should take which action **first**?
- 1 Assess vision
  - 2 Remove the dirt
  - 3 Place ice on the eye
  - 4 Irrigate the eye with sterile saline

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** If a surface foreign body injury occurs to the eye, the nurse should first assess visual acuity. The eye will then be assessed for corneal abrasions, followed by irrigating the eye with sterile normal saline to gently remove the particles. There is no reason to place ice on the eye. Placing ice on the eye should be done if the client sustained an eye contusion.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*, and use the **steps of the nursing process**. The correct option is the only option that relates to assessment/data collection. Options 2, 3, and 4 relate to implementation. Review: content related to initial treatment of various **eye injuries**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Interventions to treat an eye injury are based on the type of injury that occurred. If a contusion (blow) to the eye occurred, the nurse should immediately place ice on the eye. If a chemical substance splashed into the eye, the immediate intervention is to flush (irrigate) the eye. If dirt flew into the eye, the nurse should assess vision and check for the presence of the dirt substances and corneal abrasions before irrigating the eye. You will learn about interventions for treating various eye injuries in your pediatrics nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study eye disorders.

#### References

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1530; Leifer (2011), p. 554.

119. The nurse is assessing a child with increased intracranial pressure who has been exhibiting decorticate posturing. On assessment, the nurse notes extension of the upper and lower extremities with internal rotation of the upper arms, wrists, knees, and feet. How should the nurse interpret the child's condition?
- 1 Is unchanged
  - 2 Has improved
  - 3 Indicates decreased intracranial pressure
  - 4 Indicates a deterioration in neurological function

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** In decorticate posturing, the nurse would note flexion of the upper extremities and extension of the lower extremities. In decerebrate posturing the nurse would note extension of the upper and lower extremities with internal rotation of the upper arms, wrists, knees, and feet. The progression from decorticate to decerebrate posturing usually indicates deteriorating neurological function and warrants health care provider notification. Options 1, 2, and 3 are inaccurate interpretations.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 2 and 3 first because they are **comparable or alike**. From the remaining options, recalling the significance of decerebrate posturing will direct you to the correct option. Review: the significance of **posturing**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Posture is the position of the body and is determined and maintained by coordination of the muscles that move the limbs and a sense of balance. Abnormal postures occur in neurological disorders, such as head injuries, and in conditions that cause increased intracranial pressure. These types of posturing include decorticate, decerebrate, and flaccid. The presence of abnormal posturing needs to be reported to the health care provider. You will learn about posturing when you study neurological disorders in your pediatrics nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 1516-1517; Leifer (2011), pp. 553-554.

120. The nurse is reviewing the assessment findings and laboratory results of a child diagnosed with new-onset glomerulonephritis. Which finding should the nurse **most likely** expect to note?
- 1 Hypotension
  - 2 Tea-colored urine
  - 3 Low serum potassium
  - 4 Elevated creatinine levels

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Gross hematuria resulting in dark brown or smoky, tea-colored urine is a classic symptom of glomerulonephritis. Hypertension is also a common finding in glomerulonephritis. Blood urea nitrogen levels and creatinine levels are elevated only when there is an 80% decrease in glomerular filtration rate and renal insufficiency is severe. A high potassium level results from inadequate glomerular filtration.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note that the child is experiencing a renal disorder, and note the words *new-onset* and the **strategic words** *most likely*. Recalling that the creatinine level is elevated only when there is an 80% decrease in glomerular filtration rate will assist in eliminating option 4. Next eliminate options 1 and 3 knowing that hypertension rather than hypotension and hyperkalemia rather than hypokalemia will occur in this renal disorder. Review: the clinical manifestations associated with **glomerulonephritis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Glomerulonephritis is a kidney disorder characterized by an inflammatory injury in the glomerulus. It is characterized by proteinuria, hematuria, decreased urine production, and edema (swelling). Acute poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis is the most common type and occurs as an immune reaction to a group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infection of the throat. You will learn about glomerulonephritis when you study renal disorders in your pediatrics nursing course.

**References**

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 1028; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1151; Leifer (2011), p. 683.

121. A child newly diagnosed with type 1 diabetes mellitus who is receiving insulin suddenly experiences signs of a hypoglycemic reaction. Which item should the nurse give to the child **immediately**?
- 1 8 oz of skim milk
  - 2 ½ cup of diet cola
  - 3 1 teaspoon of honey
  - 4 1 teaspoon of sugar

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation  
**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Hypoglycemia is immediately treated with 15 g of carbohydrate. Glucose tablets or glucose gel may be administered. Other items used to treat hypoglycemia include 8 oz of skim milk, ½ cup of fruit juice, ½ cup of regular (nondiet) soft drink, 6 to 10 hard candies, 4 cubes or 4 teaspoons of sugar, 6 saltines, 3 graham crackers, or 1 tablespoon of honey or syrup. The items in options 2, 3, and 4 would not adequately treat hypoglycemia.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediately*. Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike**. From the remaining options, select option 1 because a diet cola does not contain the amount of carbohydrate needed to treat hypoglycemia. Review: the treatment measures for **hypoglycemia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Diabetes mellitus is a disorder of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism that is primarily the result of a deficiency or complete lack of insulin secretion by the beta cells of the pancreas or resistance to insulin. Hypoglycemia (a low blood glucose level) is a complication and is characterized by symptoms such as weakness, headache, hunger, and visual disturbances. It is immediately treated with 15 g of carbohydrate. It is important to recognize the signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia and how to treat it. You will learn about diabetes mellitus and

its complications in your pediatrics nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study endocrine disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 874; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1603.

**122.** The clinic nurse has provided instructions to the mother of a child with a urinary tract infection. Which statement(s) by the mother indicates a **need for further instruction**? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 "I should increase my child's fluid intake."
- 2 "I should not use bubble baths with my child."
- 3 "I should wipe my child from front to back after urination or a bowel movement."
- 4 "I should encourage my child to hold the urine and to urinate only 4 times each day."
- 5 "I should administer the antibiotics to my child until urinary tract infection symptoms disappear."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 4, 5**

**Rationale:** Fluid intake including water should be encouraged. Bubble baths are avoided secondary to possible urethral irritation. The parents should be taught to wipe the child from front to back after urination or a bowel movement to avoid moving bacteria from the anus to the urethra. The child should be encouraged to avoid holding urine and to urinate at least 4 times per day and should be told that the bladder should be emptied with each void to avoid residual urine. Additionally, the full course of prescribed antibiotics should be taken to prevent recurrence and emergence of resistant organisms.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *need for further instruction*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and the need to look for the incorrect statement. Careful reading of the options and applying principles related to prevention of urinary tract infections will direct you to options 4 and 5 as incorrect actions. Also, note the **closed-ended word**, *only*, in option 4. Review: client instructions related to a **urinary tract infection**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A urinary tract infection is an infection of one or more structures in the urinary system. The infection is usually characterized by urinary frequency, burning pain with urinating, fever, back pain, and possible blood or pus in the urine. A sterile urine specimen is collected to check for the bacteria causing the infection and to determine treatment. Several measures can be taken to prevent and treat a urinary tract infection. You will learn about urinary tract infections in your pediatrics nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study renal disorders.

#### References

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1148; Leifer (2011), pp. 681-682.

**123.** The nurse is monitoring a newborn of a mother with diabetes mellitus. The nurse understands that the newborn is at risk for which complication?

- 1 Hypercalcemia
- 2 Hyperglycemia
- 3 Hypobilirubinemia
- 4 Respiratory distress syndrome

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Child Health

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** The major neonatal complications of preexisting diabetes mellitus in the mother are hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, hyperbilirubinemia, and polycythemia. Congenital anomalies, macrosomia, birth trauma, perinatal asphyxia, respiratory distress syndrome, and cardiomyopathy are also problems that can occur in newborns of a diabetic mother.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, complication in the newborn of a mother with diabetes mellitus. Focusing on the mother's diagnosis will assist in eliminating option 2. From the remaining options, it is necessary to know these complications. Review: the complications associated with the newborn of the mother with **diabetes mellitus**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** It is important to know the effects of maternal diabetes on the newborn. Respiratory distress syndrome is an acute lung disease caused by a deficiency of pulmonary surfactant. Fetal hyperinsulinemia retards cortisol production, which is necessary for surfactant production. It is characterized by airless alveoli, inelastic lungs, a respiration rate greater than 60 breaths/minute, nasal flaring, retractions, grunting, and edema. You will learn about the effects of maternal diabetes on the newborn in your pediatrics nursing course and in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 918, 1003; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 347.

**124.** A 16-year-old client who underwent emergency surgery for a ruptured appendix refuses to allow the nurse to change the abdominal dressing, saying, "Go away. There is nothing wrong with this dressing." Which nursing response would be **best**?

- 1 "Please do not be upset with me. I am just doing my job."
- 2 "I promise to do this really quickly, and then I will leave you alone."
- 3 "You can refuse the dressing change at this time, but your friends cannot visit you until it is done."
- 4 "I will draw the curtain and expose only the area on your abdomen that is needed. Can I go ahead with that?"

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation

**Content Area:** Child Health

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The primary developmental need of the hospitalized adolescent is maintenance of privacy, modesty, and control. The correct option strives to meet these needs. Options 1 and 2 do not address the client's concerns, and option 3 contains a threat.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *best* and the words *16-year-old client*. Think about the developmental needs of the adolescent when answering this question. Also use **therapeutic communication techniques**. The correct option is the only one that focuses on client's feelings and needs. Review: **therapeutic communication techniques** and psychosocial needs of the **adolescent**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Adolescence is a time of transition from childhood to adulthood and is characterized by biological and psychological changes, including the appearance of secondary sex characteristics. The adolescent is very aware of the body changes that are taking place, and the nurse needs to respect the adolescent's need for body privacy. Many other growth and development changes also take place during the adolescent period, which you will learn about in your pediatrics nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 187, 201-201; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 740, 760.

**125.** The nurse is caring for a child who sustained a head injury from a fall. The nurse should perform which action(s) in the care of the child? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 Restrict oral fluid intake.
- 2 Elevate the head of the bed.
- 3 Perform neurological assessments.
- 4 Encourage coughing and deep breathing.
- 5 Place the child in a flat position during sleep.

#### ANSWER: 1, 2, 3

**Rationale:** A child with a head injury is at risk for increased intracranial pressure (ICP). Fluids may be restricted to reduce the chance of fluid overload and resultant increased ICP. Elevating the head of the bed decreases fluid retention in cerebral tissue and promotes drainage. Neurological assessments should be performed to monitor for increased ICP. Hypoxia and Valsalva maneuver associated with coughing both acutely elevate ICP. Additionally, the flat position can elevate ICP and should be avoided.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, nursing actions in the care of the child with a head injury. Recall that a head injury places the child at risk for increased ICP. From this point, identify the options

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation  
**Content Area:** Child Health

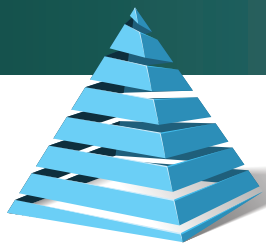
that would cause an increase in the ICP; this will assist in answering correctly. Review: care of the child who sustained a **head injury**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A head injury results from trauma to the head from any mechanical force to the scalp, skull, meninges, or brain. A primary concern when a child sustains a head injury is resultant pressure in the brain from swelling. This is known as increased ICP. If this occurs, structures within the cranium are compressed, which can result in serious neurological complications. You will learn about head injuries and increased ICP in your pediatrics nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### **References**

Leifer (2011), pp. 558-559; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), p. 1530.

---



## CHAPTER 18

# Pharmacology Questions

126. The nurse is instructing a client about quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril). The nurse should make which statement to the client?
- 1 To take the medication with food only
  - 2 To rise slowly from a lying to a sitting position
  - 3 To discontinue the medication if nausea occurs
  - 4 That a therapeutic effect will be seen immediately

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril) is an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor used in the treatment of hypertension. The client should be instructed to rise slowly from a lying to a sitting position and to permit the legs to dangle from the bed momentarily before standing to reduce the hypotensive effect. The medication may be given without regard to food. The client should be instructed to drink a noncaffeinated carbonated beverage and eat crackers or dry toast if nauseated. A full therapeutic effect may occur in 1 to 2 weeks.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate option 1 because of the **closed-ended word** *only* and option 4 because of the word *immediately*. Next focus on the name of the medication, and recall that most ACE inhibitor medication names end with the letters *-pril* and that these medications are used to treat hypertension. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: **quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Hypertension refers to an elevated blood pressure and is a known cardiovascular risk factor. ACE inhibitor medications are one class of medications used to treat hypertension. Because medication used to treat hypertension lowers the blood pressure, lightheadedness and dizziness can occur. Therefore, it is important for the nurse to teach the client safety measures. You will learn about ACE inhibitors in your pharmacology course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 993; Lehne (2013), p. 512.

127. The nurse notes that a client is receiving ganciclovir sodium (Cytovene). The nurse suspects that the client is receiving this medication for the treatment of which disorder?
- 1 Pancreatitis
  - 2 Urolithiasis
  - 3 Nephrotic syndrome
  - 4 Cytomegalovirus retinitis

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Ganciclovir sodium (Cytovene) is an antiviral medication used to treat cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis in immunocompromised clients and CMV gastrointestinal infections and pneumonitis; it is also used to prevent CMV disease in transplant clients. It is not used to treat pancreatitis, urolithiasis, or nephrotic syndrome.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, the intended effect of ganciclovir sodium. Focus on the name of the medication. Recalling that most antiviral medications names contain the letters *vir* will direct you to the correct option. Review: **ganciclovir sodium (Cytovene)**.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Cytomegalovirus retinitis is an infection of the retina caused by a herpes type of virus. Pancreatitis is an inflammatory condition of the pancreas that can be acute or chronic. Urolithiasis refers to the presence of calculi (stones) in the urinary system. Nephrotic syndrome is an abnormal condition of the kidney characterized by marked proteinuria, hypoalbuminemia, and edema. You will learn about cytomegalovirus retinitis, pancreatitis, and urolithiasis in your medical-surgical nursing course and about nephrotic syndrome in your pediatric nursing course.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), pp. 526-527; Lehne (2013), pp. 1169, 1206-1207.

128. The nurse is teaching a client how to mix Humulin R and Humulin N insulin in the same syringe. Which instruction should be included?

- 1 Draw up Humulin R first into the syringe.
- 2 Take all air out of the bottle before mixing.
- 3 Shake the Humulin N bottle before mixing.
- 4 Keep both bottles stored in the refrigerator for 1 month.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Before mixing different types of insulin, the bottle should be rotated for at least 1 minute between both hands. This resuspends the insulin and helps warm the medication. The nurse should not shake the bottles. Shaking causes foaming and bubbles to form, which may trap particles of insulin and alter the dosage. Insulin may be maintained at room temperature. Additional bottles of insulin should be stored in the refrigerator for future use. Humulin R is drawn up before Humulin N. Air does not need to be removed from the insulin bottle.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, the procedure for mixing Humulin R and Humulin N in the same syringe. Visualize the procedure as you carefully read each option. When answering questions that relate to mixing insulin remember the letters *RN*—draw Humulin *R* into the syringe before Humulin *N*. Review: the procedures for administering **insulin**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Insulin is a medication used to treat diabetes mellitus, a disorder of fat, carbohydrate, and protein metabolism. Humulin R is short-acting insulin, and Humulin N is an intermediate-acting insulin. When both types of insulin are prescribed they can be mixed together in one syringe so that only one injection is necessary. There is a specific procedure for mixing these types of insulin, which you will learn when you learn about injections in your fundamentals course and when you study pharmacology.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 864; Lewis et al (2011), p. 1227.

129. A client has been taking lansoprazole (Prevacid). The nurse should monitor the client for the relief of which symptom?

- 1 Diarrhea
- 2 Heartburn
- 3 Flatulence
- 4 Constipation

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Evaluation  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Lansoprazole (Prevacid) is a gastric pump inhibitor (proton pump inhibitor). Its intended effect is relief of gastric irritation pain, often referred to as heartburn. The medication does not improve diarrhea, flatulence, or constipation.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, intended effects of lansoprazole (Prevacid). Focus on the words *relief of*. Note the name of the medication, and recall that most proton pump inhibitor medication names end with the letters *-zole*. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: **lansoprazole (Prevacid)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Heartburn is a painful burning sensation in the esophagus. It is usually caused by the reflux of gastric acid into the esophagus. Proton pump inhibitors are one type of medication used to treat heartburn. You will learn about heartburn when you study gastrointestinal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course and about proton pump inhibitors when you study pharmacology.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 647; Lehne (2013), p. 999.

130. A client is taking amiloride hydrochloride (Midamor) daily. The nurse should tell the client to take the dose at what time?
- 1 At bedtime
  - 2 On an empty stomach
  - 3 Between lunch and dinner
  - 4 In the morning with breakfast

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Amiloride hydrochloride (Midamor) is a potassium-retaining diuretic used to treat edema or hypertension. A daily dose should be taken in the morning to avoid nocturia. The dose should be taken with food to increase bioavailability.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 1, 2, and 3 because they are **comparable or alike** in that they all indicate taking the medication dose without food. Review: **amiloride hydrochloride (Midamor)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Edema is the abnormal accumulation of fluid in body tissues. Hypertension refers to an elevated blood pressure and is a known cardiovascular risk factor. Potassium-retaining diuretics are one class of medications used to treat edema or hypertension. Only a few medications are potassium-retaining, and amiloride is one of them. A concern with potassium-retaining diuretics is that the client retains potassium, which can lead to hyperkalemia (a high potassium level). Therefore, the nurse monitors the client for signs of hyperkalemia. You will learn about potassium-retaining diuretics when you study pharmacology.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 696; Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 102.

131. The nurse is caring for a client with a diagnosis of rheumatoid arthritis who is receiving aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid, ASA) 5g orally daily. The nurse recognizes which finding as an adverse effect related to the medication?
- 1 Tinnitus
  - 2 Joint pain
  - 3 Urinary retention
  - 4 Difficulty voiding

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Aspirin is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug. Adverse effects include gastrointestinal bleeding or gastric mucosal lesions, ringing in the ears (tinnitus), or generalized pruritus. Headache, dizziness, flushing, tachycardia, hyperventilation, sweating, and thirst are also adverse effects. Options 2, 3, and 4 are not adverse effects. In addition, aspirin is administered to the client with rheumatoid arthritis to relieve joint pain.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, an adverse effect of aspirin. Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike**. Next eliminate option 2 because aspirin is administered to relieve joint pain. Last, remembering that aspirin can cause gastrointestinal disturbances and ototoxicity will direct you to the correct option. Review: **aspirin**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Arthritis is an inflammatory condition of the joints characterized by pain, swelling, heat, redness, and limitation of movement. It can affect the client's ability to perform activities of daily living and result in debilitation. Arthritis



can occur in childhood or adulthood. Large doses of aspirin may be administered to alleviate the joint pain. However, aspirin can cause gastrointestinal bleeding, ringing in the ears (tinnitus), or generalized pruritus. You will learn about the effects of aspirin when you study pharmacology, and you will learn about arthritis in your pediatric and medical-surgical nursing courses.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 85; Lehne (2013), p. 907.

132. The nurse is preparing a plan of care for a client who is receiving meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol) for pain. The nurse should include in the plan to monitor for which adverse effect of this medication?

- 1 Nausea
- 2 Sedation
- 3 Flushed face
- 4 Skeletal muscle flaccidity

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Frequent side effects of this medication include sedation, decreased blood pressure, diaphoresis, flushed face, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, and constipation. Adverse effects include respiratory depression; skeletal muscle flaccidity; cold and clammy skin; cyanosis; and extreme somnolence progressing to convulsions, stupor, and coma.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, an adverse effect, and recall that meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol) is an opioid analgesic. Recalling that an adverse effect is more severe than a side effect and is always an undesirable effect will direct you to the correct option. Review: the adverse effects of **meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol) is an opioid analgesic that is used to alleviate pain that occurs in many types of disorders. Because it is an opioid analgesic it will cause skeletal muscle flaccidity, which can place the client at risk for injury. Another critical adverse effect of opioid analgesics is that they cause respiratory depression so assessment of respiratory status is an important part of your nursing interventions. You will learn about meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol) and other opioid analgesics in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult health* (2011), p. 255; Hodgson, Kizior (2013), pp. 734-735.

133. Theophylline (Theo-24) is prescribed for a client with bronchial asthma. The nurse provides dietary instructions to the client and should tell the client to avoid consuming which item?

- 1 Iced tea
- 2 Lemonade
- 3 Orange juice
- 4 Tomato juice

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The client is instructed to avoid the use of products that contain caffeine, such as cola, coffee, tea, and chocolate because caffeine could lead to an increased incidence of cardiovascular and central nervous system side/adverse effects of the medication. The items in options 2, 3, and 4 are acceptable to consume.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Recall that medication names that end with the letters *-line* are xanthine bronchodilators and that these medications can cause cardiovascular and central nervous system side/adverse effects. Also, eliminate options 2, 3, and 4 because they are **comparable or alike** in that they are fruit drinks. Review: the items to be avoided by a client taking a **xanthine bronchodilator**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Theophylline (Theo-24) is a xanthine bronchodilator that dilates bronchial airways and pulmonary blood vessels and is used to treat respiratory disorders, such as bronchial asthma, bronchitis, emphysema, chronic obstructive pulmonary

disease, or bronchospasm. An important point to remember is that these medications can cause cardiovascular and central nervous system side/adverse effects, particularly if taken with caffeine-containing products. Therefore, an important teaching point is to tell the client to avoid caffeine-containing products. In addition, another important intervention is to monitor the client for changes in the cardiovascular or central nervous system. You will learn about theophylline (Theo-24) in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory disorders.

### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 1132; Lehne (2013), pp. 967, 976.

**134.** The nurse is providing instructions to a client about lithium carbonate that has been prescribed for acute mania. The nurse should provide which information to the client?

- 1 Foods that contain salt need to be avoided.
- 2 Medication blood levels need to be checked yearly.
- 3 Vomiting and diarrhea are expected effects of the medication.
- 4 Blurred vision needs to be reported to the health care provider.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Because therapeutic and toxic dosage ranges are so close, lithium blood levels must be monitored closely (every 3 or 4 days at the initiation of therapy and then every 1 to 2 months). The client should be instructed to notify the health care provider if excessive diarrhea, vomiting, blurred vision, or other signs of toxicity occur. A normal diet and normal salt and fluid intake (1500 to 3000 mL per day of fluid) should be maintained because lithium decreases sodium reabsorption in the renal tubules, which could cause sodium depletion. A low sodium intake causes an increase in lithium retention and could lead to toxicity.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, client instructions regarding lithium carbonate. Recall the action of this medication and that toxicity is a concern with its use. This will direct you to the correct option. Also eliminate options 1, 2, and 3 because of the words *avoided*, *yearly*, and *are expected*, respectively, in these options. Review: the client teaching points related to the administration of **lithium carbonate**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Lithium carbonate is an anti-manic and antidepressant medication used to treat the manic phase of bipolar disease, which is a manic-depressive disorder. A primary concern when administering this medication is the risk for toxicity. Therefore, monitoring blood levels for toxicity is important. For long-term control, a therapeutic serum lithium level ranges between 0.5 and 1.3 mEq/L. The client is taught about the importance of monitoring follow-up blood levels, diet and fluid requirements, and the signs and symptoms of toxicity. You will learn about lithium carbonate in a pharmacology course or in your psychiatric/mental health nursing course.

### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1051; Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 700.

**135.** Allopurinol (Zyloprim) has been prescribed for a client with gout, and the nurse provides instructions to the client about the medication. The nurse should tell the client that this medication has been prescribed to perform which therapeutic action?

- 1 Relieve pain
- 2 Maintain dilute urine

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Allopurinol (Zyloprim) is used in the treatment of gout to decrease uric acid production. Options 1, 2, and 4 are not actions of the medication. Clients taking allopurinol are encouraged to drink at least 10 to 12 eight-oz glasses of water per day to aid in uric acid excretion. Although the urine may become dilute as a result of increased fluid intake, dilute urine is not an action of the medication. This medication does not relieve pain.

- 3 Reduce the uric acid level in the body
- 4 Reduce the need to consume large amounts of fluid

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the therapeutic action of allopurinol. Note that the question identifies the client's diagnosis. Recalling the pathophysiology associated with gout will direct you to option 3. Review: the action of **allopurinol (Zyloprim)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Gout is a disease associated with an inborn error of metabolism that increases the production or interferes with excretion of uric acid. The excess uric acid is converted to urate crystals and deposits in joints and other tissues. The great toe is a common site for the accumulation of urate crystals. This condition can cause exceedingly painful swelling of the joint. Medication to decrease uric acid production is an important component of treatment. You will learn about allopurinol (Zyloprim) in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 755; Lehne (2013), p. 932.

- 136.** A client with bulimia nervosa was started on fluoxetine hydrochloride (Prozac) 10mg daily 3 days ago. The client calls the clinic and reports experiencing nausea after taking the medication. What should the nurse instruct the client to do?
- 1 Take the medication with milk.
  - 2 Contact the health care provider.
  - 3 Lie down for 30 minutes after taking the medication.
  - 4 Stop the medication until a different medication can be prescribed.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Fluoxetine hydrochloride (Prozac) is an antidepressant, antiobsessional agent, and antibulimic. The client who experiences gastrointestinal distress should be instructed to take the medication with food or milk. Although nausea may be a sign of toxicity (overdosage), this client has only been taking the medication for 3 days and overdosage is not likely to occur in this short period. Therefore, it is not necessary to contact the health care provider. Lying down for 30 minutes after taking the medication is not the best measure to alleviate the client's complaint. The nurse should not instruct a client to stop a medication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, client instructions regarding fluoxetine hydrochloride (Prozac). Eliminate option 4 using general guidelines related to medication administration. Focus on the information in the question and note that the client has been taking the medication for 3 days. This will assist in directing you to the correct option. Review: **fluoxetine hydrochloride (Prozac)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Bulimia nervosa is an eating disorder that is characterized by craving for food, often resulting in episodes of continuous eating followed by purging, depression, and self-deprivation. Treatment consists of measures to improve nourishment and therapy to overcome the underlying emotional conflicts leading to the disorder. You will learn about fluoxetine hydrochloride (Prozac) and bulimia nervosa in a pharmacology course or in your psychiatric/mental health course when you study eating disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1056; Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 493.

137. The nurse is caring for a client with a diagnosis of venous thrombosis in the left lower leg who is receiving heparin sodium by continuous intravenous (IV) infusion. The nurse should monitor the client for which adverse effect of this therapy?

- 1 Nausea
- 2 Dark urine
- 3 Left calf tenderness
- 4 Increased blood pressure

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** The client who receives heparin sodium is at risk for bleeding. The nurse monitors for signs of bleeding, which include bleeding from the gums, ecchymoses on the skin, red or dark urine, black or red stools, and body fluids that test positive for occult blood. Tenderness is likely to be noted in the area of the thrombosis. Nausea and increased blood pressure are not signs of an adverse effect of the medication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, an adverse effect. Focus on the name of the medication and the client's diagnosis. Recalling the manifestations of venous thrombosis will assist in eliminating option 3. Next, recalling that this medication is an anticoagulant will direct you to option 2 from the remaining options. Review: **heparin sodium**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Venous thrombosis is also known as phlebothrombosis and is an abnormal condition in which a clot forms within a vein. It is usually caused by hemostasis, hypercoagulability, or occlusion. A concern with this disorder is that the clot will break free from the vein and travel to the lungs causing a pulmonary embolus, which can be life threatening. Therefore, heparin sodium is administered to prevent further extension of the existing clot or new clot formation. You will learn about heparin sodium and venous thrombus in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 563; Lehne (2013), pp. 636, 658-659.

138. A postoperative client has a prescription to begin short-term therapy with enoxaparin (Lovenox). The nurse should explain to the client that this medication is being prescribed for which therapeutic action?

- 1 Prevent pain
- 2 Relieve back spasms
- 3 Increase energy levels
- 4 Reduce the risk of deep vein thrombosis

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Enoxaparin (Lovenox) is an anticoagulant that is administered to prevent deep vein thrombosis and thromboembolism in selected clients, such as postoperative clients following hip or knee replacement therapy. It is not used to prevent pain, relieve back spasms, or increase energy levels.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, an intended medication effect. Noting the word *postoperative* in the question will assist in eliminating options 2 and 3. From the remaining options, recalling that this medication is an anticoagulant will direct you to the correct option. Review: intended effects of **enoxaparin (Lovenox)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Deep vein thrombosis is a disorder involving a thrombus in one of the deep veins in the body. Thromboembolism is a condition in which a blood vessel is obstructed by a clot carried in the bloodstream from its site of formation. These are potentially life-threatening disorders, and treatment may include bed rest and the use of anticoagulant medications. Enoxaparin (Lovenox) is a medication that will prevent deep vein thrombosis and thromboembolism and is prescribed for clients at risk for the development of these disorders. You will learn about enoxaparin (Lovenox) in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 406; Lehne (2013), p. 640.

139. The clinic nurse notes that a client is taking metoprolol (Lopressor). The nurse should perform which assessment to determine medication effectiveness?
- 1 Take the client's temperature.
  - 2 Take the client's blood pressure.
  - 3 Check the client's peripheral pulses.
  - 4 Check the client's eyes for peripheral vision.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Metoprolol (Lopressor) is a  $\beta$ -blocker that is used to treat mild to moderate hypertension. Therefore, to determine medication effectiveness, the nurse should monitor the client's blood pressure. Options 1, 3, and 4 are unrelated to the medication effectiveness.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, assessment findings to determine medication effectiveness. Recalling that medication names that end with the letters *-lol* are  $\beta$ -blockers and that  $\beta$ -blockers are used to treat hypertension will direct you to the correct option. Review: intended effects of **metoprolol (Lopressor)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Metoprolol (Lopressor) is a medication that is primarily used to treat hypertension. A priority nursing intervention when a medication with antihypertensive effects is administered is to monitor the client's blood pressure. Additional important interventions include client teaching related to safety because of the hypotensive effects of the medication. One important point to teach the client is to rise slowly from a lying to sitting position and to permit the legs to dangle from the bed momentarily before standing. You will learn about metoprolol (Lopressor) in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 402; Lehne (2013), p. 176.

140. Betaxolol (Betoptic S) eye drops have been prescribed for a client for the treatment of glaucoma. The nurse should tell the client that it is important to return to the clinic for assessment of the presence of which condition?
- 1 Hypotension
  - 2 Hyperglycemia
  - 3 The presence of Trousseau sign
  - 4 The presence of redness and warmth in the calf area

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Betaxolol (Betoptic) is an antiglaucoma medication and a  $\beta$ -blocker. Systemic effects of the medication include hypotension manifested as dizziness, nausea, diaphoresis, headache, fatigue, constipation, and diarrhea. Nursing interventions include monitoring the blood pressure for hypotension and assessing the pulse for strength, weakness, irregularities, and bradycardia. This medication may mask the symptoms of hypoglycemia and prolong the hypoglycemic effect in the client taking insulin or oral hypoglycemics. The presence of Trousseau sign is unrelated to the use of this medication. A positive Trousseau sign indicates a calcium imbalance. Redness and warmth in the calf area may be indicative of deep vein thrombosis; however, this assessment is not specifically related to this medication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Remember that  $\beta$ -blocker medication names end with the letters *-lol*, and recall that  $\beta$ -blockers are used to treat hypertension. Also use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Review: **betaxolol (Betoptic)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Glaucoma is an abnormal eye disorder characterized by elevated pressure within the eye. It is caused by the obstruction of the outflow of aqueous humor. If untreated, it will result in complete and permanent blindness. Medication therapy is extremely important to keep the intraocular pressure within the normal range of 10 to 21 mm Hg, and the

client needs to be instructed about the importance of the medication. You will learn about betaxolol (Betoptic) and eye disorders in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study eye disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult health* (2011), p. 625; Lehne (2013), p. 176.

141. Bupropion (Wellbutrin) is prescribed for a client to treat an anxiety disorder. The nurse should tell the client that which is a common side effect of the medication?

- 1 Diarrhea
- 2 Dry mouth
- 3 Sleepiness
- 4 Slowed pulse rate

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Bupropion (Wellbutrin) is an antianxiety medication. Common side effects include agitation, headache, dry mouth, constipation, gastrointestinal upset, dizziness, tremors, insomnia, blurred vision, and tachycardia. Options 1, 3, and 4 are not side effects of this medication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a common side effect. Noting the words *to treat an anxiety disorder* will assist in determining that the medication is an antianxiety medication. Recall that dry mouth can occur with the use of some antianxiety medications. Review: the side effects of **bupropion (Wellbutrin)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Anxiety is the anticipation of danger or dread accompanied by restlessness, tension, tachycardia, and breathing difficulty. In an anxiety disorder the primary characteristic is anxiety ranging from mild to severe states. Antianxiety medications are usually a component of therapy for anxiety disorders. You will learn about antianxiety medications and anxiety disorders in a pharmacology course or in your psychiatric/mental health nursing course when you study anxiety disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 1152; Lehne (2013), p. 371.

142. The nurse is caring for a client with systemic candidiasis who is receiving amphotericin B intravenously (IV). The nurse should perform which action during administration of the medication to monitor for an adverse effect?

- 1 Monitor urinary output.
- 2 Check peripheral pulses.
- 3 Monitor for hypothermia.
- 4 Check the neurological status.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Amphotericin B is an antifungal medication and can cause toxicity, which during administration can produce symptoms such as chills, fever, headache, vomiting, and impaired renal function. The medication is also very irritating to the IV site, commonly causing thrombophlebitis. The nurse administering this medication watches for signs of these problems. Options 2, 3, and 4 are not specifically related to the administration of this medication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, an adverse effect. Recalling that nephrotoxicity can occur with the use of this medication will direct you to the correct option. Review: the adverse effects **amphotericin B**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Candidiasis is an infection caused by a species of *Candida*, usually *Candida albicans*. It usually occurs in a local area, such as the oral cavity, but can also occur in other areas. Treatment includes oral and topical administration of antifungal infections if candidiasis occurs locally. If it becomes a systemic infection, IV antifungal medications are prescribed. One adverse effect

of antifungal medications administered intravenously is nephrotoxicity (destruction to the kidney cells). You will learn about antifungal medications and candidiasis in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study infectious disorders.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 61; Lehne (2013), p. 1148.

**143.** The nurse is reviewing the laboratory results of a client receiving intravenous (IV) chemotherapy. The nurse should initiate neutropenic precautions if which laboratory result is noted?

- 1 Clotting time of 10 minutes
- 2 Ammonia level of 10 mcg/dL
- 3 Platelet count of 100,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>
- 4 White blood cell (WBC) count of 2000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The normal WBC count is 4500 to 11,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>. When the WBC count drops, neutropenic precautions need to be implemented. These include protective isolation measures to protect the client from infection. Bleeding precautions need to be initiated when the platelet count drops. Bleeding precautions include avoiding all trauma, such as rectal temperatures or injections. The normal clotting time is 8 to 15 minutes. The normal ammonia value is 10 to 80 mcg/dL. The normal platelet count is 150,000 to 450,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 1 and 2 first because they are **comparable or alike** and identify normal laboratory values. To select between the remaining options, note that the client is receiving chemotherapy and focus on the words *neutropenic precautions*. Correlate a low WBC count with the need for neutropenic precautions and a low platelet count with the need for bleeding precautions. Review: the interventions associated with caring for the client receiving **chemotherapy**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Neutropenia is an abnormal decrease in the number of neutrophils in the blood. This can occur in conditions such as acute leukemia, infection, and chronic splenomegaly and in the client receiving chemotherapy because chemotherapy destroys normal cells in addition to cancer cells. When neutropenia occurs, the client is at risk for developing an infection and the nurse needs to implement measures to protect the client from infection, such as strict handwashing, wearing protective clothing when caring for the client, and keeping fresh fruits and flowers and standing water out of the client's room because these items harbor bacteria. The nurse should also restrict visits with the client from anyone who is ill. You will learn about chemotherapy and neutropenic precautions in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study oncologic disorders.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult health* (2011), pp. 791, 794-795; Lehne (2013), pp. 1265-1266; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 690-691.

**144.** The nurse is providing instructions to a client who is taking codeine sulfate. What instruction should the nurse provide to the client?

- 1 Decrease fluid intake.
- 2 Change positions slowly.
- 3 Maintain a low-fiber diet.
- 4 Limit the intake of alcoholic beverages.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Codeine sulfate is an opioid analgesic. The medication can cause constipation, and the client is instructed to increase fluid intake and maintain a high-fiber diet. Alcohol intake is avoided, not limited. The medication can cause drowsiness, lightheadedness, and hypotension; and the client is instructed to change positions slowly to prevent orthostatic hypotension.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, client instructions related to codeine sulfate. Eliminate option 4 first using general pharmacology guidelines and recalling that alcohol is avoided not limited. From the remaining options, recalling that codeine sulfate can cause constipation will eliminate options 1 and 3. Review: nursing measures related to the administration of **codeine sulfate**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Codeine sulfate is an opioid analgesic that is used primarily to treat pain. Opioid analgesics can cause many side effects, including drowsiness, lightheadedness, and hypotension. Therefore, client safety is a concern with the use of opioid analgesics. Because of this concern, nursing interventions with the use of opioid analgesics focus on implementing measures that protect the client from injury and teaching the client measures to prevent injury. You will learn about codeine sulfate in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study pain management.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 269; Lehne (2013), p. 298.

145. A client is receiving diazepam (Valium) to treat painful muscle spasms. The nurse should monitor the client for which frequent side effect of the medication?

- 1 Ataxia
- 2 Diarrhea
- 3 Nervousness
- 4 Hypertension

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Diazepam (Valium) is a centrally acting skeletal muscle relaxant. Incoordination (ataxia), fatigue, and drowsiness are frequent side effects. Occasional side effects include slurred speech, orthostatic hypotension, headache, hypoactivity, constipation, nausea, and blurred vision.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, a frequent side effect of diazepam. Note the name of the medication, *diazepam*. Recalling that some benzodiazepine medication names end with the letters *-pam* will assist in answering the question. Also noting that the medication is used for muscle spasms will direct you to think that this medication relaxes muscles. The correct option is the only option that directly relates to this medication action. Review: the action and side effects of **diazepam (Valium)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Muscle spasms are involuntary contractions or twitching that occurs in a muscle. These can be quite painful for the client, and one component of therapy is to treat the spasms with a centrally acting skeletal muscle relaxant. Because the medication is centrally acting, it can cause incoordination. This places the client at risk for injury, so nursing interventions focus on implementing measures to protect the client from injury. You will learn about diazepam (Valium) in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study musculoskeletal disorders.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 339; Lehne (2013), pp. 254-255.



146. The nurse is preparing to administer medications to a hospitalized client and notes that the client takes levothyroxine (Synthroid) daily. The nurse suspects that the client has a history of which condition?

- 1 Hypotension
- 2 Hypertension
- 3 Hypothyroidism
- 4 Hyperthyroidism

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Levothyroxine (Synthroid) is a synthetic thyroid hormone used to treat hypothyroidism. It is not used to treat hypotension, hypertension, or hyperthyroidism.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, nursing considerations for the client taking levothyroxine. Focus on the name of the medication. Recalling that most thyroid medications contain the letters *thy* in their name will assist in eliminating options 1 and 2. From the remaining options, eliminate option 4 because it would be harmful to administer thyroid to a client who is in a hyperthyroid state. Review: **levothyroxine (Synthroid)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Hypothyroidism is a condition characterized by decreased activity of the thyroid gland, resulting in slowing of the body's metabolic processes. Treatment includes thyroid replacement therapy with thyroid medication. You will learn about levothyroxine (Synthroid) when you study pharmacology and will learn about hypothyroidism when you study endocrine disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 687; Lehne (2013), pp. 747-748.

147. The nurse checks the serum digoxin level for a client who is taking digoxin (Lanoxin) and notes that the result is 1.5 ng/mL. Which action should the nurse take based on this laboratory result?

- 1 Notify the health care provider.
- 2 Withhold the next scheduled dose of digoxin.
- 3 Place the report in the client's medical record.
- 4 Obtain another serum digoxin level to verify the results.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** The normal therapeutic range for digoxin is from 0.5 to 2 ng/mL. A value of 1.5 ng/mL is within therapeutic range; therefore, the nurse should place the report in the client's medical record. Options 1, 2, and 4 are unnecessary actions.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the normal serum digoxin level. Note the words *result is 1.5 ng/mL*. Recalling that the normal therapeutic range for digoxin is from 0.5 to 2 ng/mL will direct you to the correct option. Review: the therapeutic serum **digoxin** level.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Digoxin is a cardiac glycoside used to manage and treat heart failure, control atrial fibrillation, and treat and prevent atrial tachycardia. A concern with the medication is that it can cause toxicity, and an important nursing responsibility is to monitor for signs of toxicity. Before administering this medication, the nurse checks the client's apical heart rate; if the rate is below 60 beats/min, the nurse withholds the medication, collects additional client data, and contacts the health care provider for further prescriptions. Some manifestations of digoxin toxicity include gastrointestinal disturbances and ocular disturbances. You will learn about digoxin (Lanoxin) when you study pharmacology and when you study cardiovascular disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 348; Lehne (2013), pp. 566-567.

148. A client with acute kidney injury has been treated with sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) by mouth. The nurse should evaluate this therapy as **most effective** if which value was noted on follow-up laboratory testing?
- 1 Calcium 9.8 mg/dL
  - 2 Sodium 142 mEq/L
  - 3 Potassium 4.9 mEq/L
  - 4 Phosphorus 3.9 mg/dL

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Evaluation  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Of all the electrolyte imbalances that accompany acute kidney injury, hyperkalemia is the most dangerous because it can lead to cardiac dysrhythmias and death. If the potassium level rises too high, sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) may be administered to cause excretion of potassium through the gastrointestinal tract. Each electrolyte level noted in the options falls within the normal reference range for that electrolyte. The potassium level, however, is measured following administration of this medication to note the extent of its effectiveness.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **strategic words**, *most effective*. Note the name of the medication, and use medical terminology (*Kayexalate*=K[*potassium*]ex[*excrete*]). Note the relationship between the medication name and the correct option. Review: **polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Acute kidney injury is the inability of the kidneys to excrete wastes, concentrate urine, and maintain electrolyte balance. Acute kidney injury is characterized by the rapid accumulation of wastes in the blood. Many electrolyte imbalances can occur in acute kidney injury because the kidneys are unable to maintain electrolyte balance. Sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) is an antihyperkalemic medication used to treat high potassium levels. You will learn about sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate) in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study kidney disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 804; Lehne (2013), pp. 490-491.

149. The nurse notes that the health care provider has prescribed sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) for a client. The nurse checks the nursing history form in the client's medical record for documentation of an allergy to which item?
- 1 Shellfish
  - 2 Strawberries
  - 3 Sulfonamides
  - 4 Acetaminophen (Tylenol)

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** The client who has been prescribed sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) should be checked for a history of allergy to either sulfonamides or salicylates because the chemical compositions of sulfasalazine and these medications are similar. The other options are incorrect and are unrelated to the administration of this medication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, history of allergy. Note the relationship of *sulfasalazine* in the question and *sulfonamides* in the correct option. Review: **sulfasalazine (Azulfidine)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) is sulfonamide and an anti-inflammatory medication that is used to treat a variety of conditions. An important point to remember about this medication is that it is important to ask the client about allergies to sulfonamides or salicylates, such as aspirin, before administration. In addition, before administering any medication, it is always important to ask the client about allergies. You will learn about this medication in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 666; Hodgson, Kizior (2013), pp. 1084, 1092-1093.

150. A client with a diagnosis of sepsis is receiving tobramycin (Tobrex). The nurse realizes that the client is responding favorably to the medication therapy if which laboratory result is noted?
- 1 Sodium of 145 mEq/L and chloride of 106 mEq/L
  - 2 Sodium of 140 mEq/L and potassium of 3.9 mEq/L
  - 3 White blood cell count of 8000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> and creatinine level of 0.9 mg/dL
  - 4 White blood cell count of 15,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup> and a blood urea nitrogen of 38 mg/dL

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Evaluation

**Content Area:** Pharmacology

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Tobramycin is an antibiotic (aminoglycoside) that causes nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity. The medication is effective if the white blood cell count drops back into the normal range and the kidney function remains normal. Option 4 indicates an abnormal white blood cell count, and options 1 and 2 are unrelated to the use of this medication.

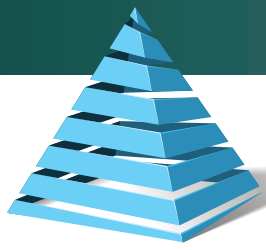
**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the therapeutic effect of tobramycin (Tobrex). Noting the client's diagnosis will assist in determining that this medication is an antibiotic. This will assist in eliminating options 1 and 2. To select correctly from the remaining options, focus on the words *the client is responding favorably*. The correct option is the option that identifies normal laboratory values. Review: **tobramycin** and normal **laboratory values**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Sepsis refers to a systemic infection that can occur as a result of a localized or other type of infection in the body. This serious infection needs to be treated aggressively with antibiotics, and usually blood cultures are done to determine the antibiotic of choice. Tobramycin (Tobrex) is an antibiotic (aminoglycoside) that may be used to treat sepsis. As with many antibiotics, it causes nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity. The normal WBC count ranges from 4500 to 11,000 cells/mm<sup>3</sup>. The normal creatinine level ranges from 0.6 to 1.3 mg/dL. The normal blood urea nitrogen ranges from 8 to 25 mg/dL. The normal potassium level ranges from 3.5 to 5.0 mEq/L. The normal sodium level ranges from 135 to 145 mEq/L. The normal chloride level ranges from 98 to 107 mEq/L. You will learn about antibiotics in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study infections and immune disorders.

**References**

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 1155; Lehne (2013), pp. 1101-1102.

---



## CHAPTER 19

# Delegating/Prioritizing Questions

151. A client is being admitted to the neurological unit from the emergency department with a diagnosis of a cervical (C4) spinal cord injury. Which assessment should the nurse perform **first** when admitting the client to the nursing unit?
- 1 Listen to breath sounds.
  - 2 Check peripheral pulses.
  - 3 Check for muscle flaccidity.
  - 4 Assess extremity muscle strength.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** Because compromise of respiration is a leading cause of death in cervical cord injury, respiratory assessment is the highest priority. Assessment of peripheral pulses and muscle strength can be done after adequate oxygenation is ensured.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike**. Next use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Remember that a cord injury, particularly at the level of C4, can affect respiratory status. Breath sounds will be diminished if respiratory muscles are weakened or paralyzed. Review: priority care of the client with a C4 **spinal cord injury**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A spinal cord injury is caused by a traumatic disruption of the spinal cord occurring from a car crash or another type of violent impact. It is often associated with extensive musculoskeletal injury. Where the injury occurred in the spinal cord (level of injury) determines the effect on the client. A major concern with a cervical spinal cord injury is respiratory status. You will learn about spinal cord injuries and the important nursing interventions in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 511; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 969.

152. The nurse notes redness, warmth, and a purulent drainage at the insertion site of a central venous catheter in a client receiving total parenteral nutrition (TPN). The nurse should take which **priority** action?
- 1 Change the intravenous tubing.
  - 2 Notify the health care provider.
  - 3 Slow the rate of infusion of the TPN.
  - 4 Call the pharmacy for a new bag of TPN solution.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation  
**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Redness, warmth, and purulent drainage are signs of an infection. Infections of a central venous catheter site can lead to septicemia; therefore, the health care provider needs to be notified. Although the nurse may change the intravenous tubing and hang a new bag of TPN solution, these are not priority actions. The nurse should not adjust the rate of an intravenous solution without a specific prescription to do so. In addition, this action is unrelated to the client's complication.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Also note the words *redness, warmth, and a purulent drainage*, and recall that these signs indicate infection. Recalling that infections of a central venous catheter site can lead to septicemia (a life-threatening condition) will direct you to the correct option. Review: nursing interventions related to complications associated with total **parenteral nutrition**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Total parenteral nutrition involves the administration of nutrients by a route other than orally and is usually administered intravenously. It is administered by means of an intravenous catheter through a central vein, such as the subclavian vein. The tip of the catheter normally rests in the superior vena cava. This type of catheter is known as a central venous catheter, and meticulous nursing care is required in the care of the catheter and catheter site to prevent infection. You will learn about TPN and central venous catheters in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 54, 57; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 211, 232; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 939-940.

**153.** A client is brought to the emergency department by emergency medical services after having seriously lacerated both wrists. The nurse should perform which action **first**?

- 1 Assess and treat the wound sites.
- 2 Perform a psychosocial assessment.
- 3 Contact the crisis intervention team.
- 4 Encourage the client to talk about his feelings.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** The initial action when a client has attempted suicide is to assess and treat any injuries. Although options 2, 3, and 4 may be appropriate at some point, the initial action should be to treat the wounds.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to prioritize. Physiological needs come first. The correct option is the only one that addresses a physiological need. Options 2, 3, and 4 address psychosocial needs. Review: initial care to the client who has attempted **suicide**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Suicide is the intentional taking of one's own life. A suicide attempt is an act taken by a client to intentionally take one's own life. If a client has attempted suicide, it is extremely important to assess the injuries as a result of the suicide attempt. Other very important interventions include one-to-one supervision of the client and other therapy. You will learn about the concepts related to suicide and the important nursing interventions for a client at risk for self-harm in your psychiatric/mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1060; Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 513-514.

**154.** The nurse develops a plan of care for a client receiving a chemotherapy treatment with intravenous bleomycin sulfate. The nurse should document which **priority** intervention in the plan?

- 1 Monitor for dyspnea.
- 2 Monitor for alopecia.
- 3 Monitor for anorexia.
- 4 Monitor for a change in bowel patterns.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Bleomycin sulfate, an antineoplastic medication, can cause interstitial pneumonitis that can progress to pulmonary fibrosis. The nurse needs to monitor for dyspnea and monitor lung sounds for adventitious sounds that indicate pulmonary toxicity. Pulmonary function studies along with hematological, hepatic, and renal function tests need to be monitored. Also, the nurse needs to notify the health care provider immediately if pulmonary toxicity occurs. Alopecia (hair loss) can occur, but monitoring for it is not a priority intervention. Monitoring for anorexia and bowel pattern changes are important but are not the priority.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority* and use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. Select the option that relates to airway. Review: the interventions associated with caring for the client receiving **bleomycin sulfate**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Chemotherapy is the use of medications in the treatment of cancer that kill cancer cells. A concern with the use of chemotherapy is that it also affects and destroys normal cells. This is what causes the side and adverse effects of the medications. Many chemotherapeutic agents cause nausea, vomiting, and alopecia (hair loss), among other effects. Also some chemotherapeutic medications affect specific cells in certain organs. Bleomycin sulfate is one of these medications and can cause interstitial pneumonitis that can progress to pulmonary fibrosis. Pneumonitis refers to inflammation of the lungs, and pulmonary fibrosis refers to the formation of scar tissue in the connective tissue of the lungs. You will learn about bleomycin sulfate and other chemotherapeutic medications in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study oncologic disorders.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 139; Lehne (2013), p. 1283.

155. Quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril) is prescribed as an adjunctive therapy in the treatment of heart failure. After administering the first dose, the nurse should specifically monitor which parameter as the **priority**?
- 1 Respirations
  - 2 Urine output
  - 3 Lung sounds
  - 4 Blood pressure

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril) is an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor. It is used in the treatment of hypertension and as adjunctive therapy in the treatment of heart failure. Excessive hypotension (“first-dose syncope”) can occur in clients with heart failure or in clients who are severely salt or volume depleted. Although respirations, urine output, and lung sounds should be monitored, the nurse should most closely monitor the client's blood pressure.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the name of the medication, and note the **strategic word** *priority*. This tells you that all options may be correct and that you must prioritize. Recall that most ACE inhibitor names end with the letters *-pril* and that these medications are used to treat hypertension. Review: the side, adverse, and toxic effects of **quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril)**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Quinapril hydrochloride (Accupril) is a medication that is primarily used to treat hypertension and manage heart failure. This medication is classified as an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor and antihypertensive. A priority nursing intervention when a medication with anti-hypertensive effects is administered is to monitor the client's blood pressure. Additional important interventions include client teaching related to safety because of the hypotensive effects of the medication. One important point to teach the client is to rise slowly from a lying to sitting position and to permit the legs to dangle from the bed momentarily before standing. You will learn about this medication in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 992; Lehne (2013), pp. 512-513.

156. The nurse is preparing a plan of care for a postoperative client who is receiving morphine sulfate by continuous intravenous infusion for pain. The nurse should include monitoring of which item as a **priority** nursing action in the plan of care?
- 1 Constipation
  - 2 Urine output
  - 3 Temperature
  - 4 Blood pressure

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Morphine sulfate suppresses respirations and decreases the client's blood pressure; therefore, monitoring for both decreased respirations and decreased blood pressure are priority nursing actions. Although monitoring of options 1, 2, and 3 may be a component of the plan of care for this client, option 4 identifies the priority nursing action.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Monitoring blood pressure determines the circulatory status of the client. Review: the effects of **morphine sulfate**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Morphine sulfate is an opioid analgesic that is used to alleviate pain in a client. It is used to treat pain that occurs in many types of disorders and is frequently used to alleviate pain in the postoperative client or the client with cancer. Because it is an opioid analgesic it will cause a decrease in vital signs, specifically respirations and blood pressure. Monitoring vital signs, specifically respirations and blood pressure, is a critical nursing intervention. You will learn about morphine sulfate and other opioid analgesics in a pharmacology course or in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Hodgson, Kizior (2013), p. 794; Lehne (2013), pp. 297-299.

157. A postoperative client who underwent pelvic surgery suddenly develops dyspnea and tachypnea. The nurse suspects that the client has a pulmonary embolism and should prepare to take which action **first**?
- 1 Insert a urinary (Foley) catheter.
  - 2 Administer low-flow oxygen through a nasal cannula.
  - 3 Obtain an intravenous (IV) infusion pump to administer heparin.
  - 4 Increase the rate of the IV fluids infusing to prevent hypotension.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Pulmonary embolism is a life-threatening emergency. Maintenance of cardiopulmonary stability is the first priority. The nurse should prepare to administer low-flow oxygen by nasal cannula first. Hypotension is treated with fluids as prescribed. IV anticoagulation may be initiated. Some clients may require endotracheal intubation to maintain an adequate  $P_{aO_2}$ . A perfusion scan among other tests may be performed, and the electrocardiogram (ECG) is monitored for the presence of dysrhythmias. In addition, a urinary catheter may be inserted. However, the first nursing action is to administer oxygen.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use of the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—will direct you to the correct option. Review: the immediate nursing actions when **pulmonary embolism** occurs.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Pulmonary embolism is characterized by the blockage of a pulmonary artery by fat, air, tumor tissue, or a thrombus that usually arises from a peripheral vein. It is characterized by dyspnea, tachycardia, anxiety, sudden chest pain, shock, and cyanosis. It is a life-threatening condition and requires immediate and aggressive treatment. Airway, however, is the priority. You will learn about pulmonary embolism in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory and cardiovascular disorders.

#### References:

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 312; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 665.

**158.** A client returns to the nursing unit from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) following a transurethral resection of the prostate. The nurse should perform which action **first**?

- 1 Check the client's respirations.
- 2 Check the color of the client's urine.
- 3 Check the urinary (Foley) catheter for patency.
- 4 Read the nursing notes written by the PACU nurse.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** The first action of the nurse is to assess the patency of the airway, and the nurse should observe the client and assess the breathing pattern and respirations. If the airway is not patent and the client is not breathing, immediate measures must be taken for the survival of the client. The nurse then assesses cardiovascular function, the condition of the surgical site, the tubes or drains for patency and drainage, and function of the central nervous system. The PACU nurse normally provides a verbal report. Even so, reading the nursing notes would not be the first action.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. This will direct you to the correct option. Airway patency and respirations are the priorities. Review: priority nursing assessments in the **postoperative client**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A transurethral resection of the prostate is a surgical procedure in which a cystoscope (an instrument used for examining and treating lesions of the urinary tract) is passed through the urethra to resect (remove tissue from) the prostate. An important point to remember is that airway is always the priority in the care of a client. You will learn about this surgical procedure when you study renal disorders in your medical-surgical nursing course, and you will learn about perioperative care in your fundamentals of nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 83-84; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 286-288.

**159.** A child with a diagnosis of pertussis (whooping cough) is being admitted to the pediatric unit. As soon as the child arrives on the unit, which action should the nurse perform **first**?

- 1 Weigh the child.
- 2 Take the child's temperature.
- 3 Place the child on a pulse oximeter.
- 4 Administer the prescribed antibiotic.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** To adequately determine if the child is getting enough oxygen, the child is placed on a pulse oximeter. The pulse oximeter will then provide ongoing information on the child's oxygen level. The child is also immediately placed on a cardiorespiratory monitor to provide early identification of periods of apnea and bradycardia. The nurse should then perform an assessment, including taking the child's temperature and weight and asking the parents about the child. An antibiotic may be prescribed, but the child's airway status needs to be assessed first.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Focus on the child's diagnosis, and use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the child with **pertussis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Pertussis is an acute, highly contagious respiratory disease that occurs primarily in infants and children and is characterized by coughing and a loud whooping inspiration. Pulse oximetry uses a cliplike device that measures the amount of saturated hemoglobin in the tissue capillaries and thus the percentage of oxygen saturation in the blood. An important point to remember is that airway is always the priority in the care of a client. You will learn about pertussis in your pediatrics nursing



course when you study respiratory disorders, and you will learn about measuring oxygenation using pulse oximetry in your fundamentals of nursing course.

### References

Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 1191-1193; Leifer (2011), p. 729.

160. The nurse is preparing to perform oral suctioning on a client who has coughed, resulting in secretions in the mouth, and is unable to expectorate the secretions adequately. The nurse determines that there is a health care provider's prescription for the procedure and explains the procedure to the client. Which actions should the nurse take to perform this procedure?

Select all that apply.

- 1 Washes hands
- 2 Applies a face shield
- 3 Removes the client's oxygen mask
- 4 Tells the client not to cough or breath during the procedure
- 5 Applies a clean disposable glove to the dominant hand and attaches the suction catheter to the connecting tubing
- 6 Inserts the catheter into the client's mouth and moves the catheter around the mouth, pharynx, and gum line until secretions are cleared

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER:** 1, 2, 3, 5, 6

**Rationale:** The nurse always washes the hands before performing any procedure, applies a face shield because suctioning may cause splashing of body fluids, and then dons a clean glove. A clean rather than a sterile glove can be used in this procedure because the oral cavity is not sterile. The nurse then completes preparation by attaching the suction catheter to the connecting suction tubing. The nurse removes the oxygen mask just before implementing the procedure so that the client is oxygenated as much as possible (remember that suctioning can deplete oxygen). The catheter is then inserted into the client's mouth until secretions are cleared. If the client is not tolerating the procedure, then the catheter is removed and the oxygen mask is reapplied. The nurse next encourages the client to cough because coughing moves secretions from the lower to upper airways into the mouth. At this point, suctioning is repeated if necessary. The oxygen mask is then reapplied.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the procedure for oral suctioning. The best strategy to use to answer this question is to first focus on the data in the question and then to visualize the procedure. Read each option carefully and remember that coughing is important to move secretions from the airways to the mouth. Review: the procedure for **oral suctioning**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Suctioning is a procedure that is used to remove accumulated secretions from the oral cavity or respiratory tract when the client is unable to effectively cough them out. It is a sterile procedure when done to remove secretions from the respiratory tract and is a nonsterile procedure when suctioning secretions from the oral cavity. It requires specific actions to prevent trauma to the mucosa of the oral cavity or respiratory tract and to prevent hypoxia. You will learn about the procedure for suctioning in your fundamentals of nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study respiratory disorders.

### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 589-590; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 574; Potter et al (2013), pp. 856-858.

161. The nurse hears the alarm sound on the telemetry monitor, quickly looks at the monitor, and notes that a client is in ventricular tachycardia. The nurse rushes to the client's room, and on reaching the client's bedside, the nurse should perform which action **first**?

- 1 Opens the airway
- 2 Delivers two effective breaths
- 3 Begins chest compressions
- 4 Determines unresponsiveness

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Determining unresponsiveness is the first action to take. When a client is in ventricular tachycardia, there is a significant decrease in cardiac output. However, assessing for unresponsiveness ensures that the client is affected by the decreased cardiac output. If the client is unresponsive the nurse proceeds through CAB—compressions, airway, breathing—of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), remembering that the nurse should assess before taking an action.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, actions to take in performing CPR. Use the steps of basic life support to answer the question. Remember that determining unresponsiveness is the first action, followed by CAB—compressions, airway, and breathing. Also remember that assessment comes before implementation. Review: the priority nursing actions if a client experiences **ventricular tachycardia**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Ventricular tachycardia means that the ventricles are beating at a rate greater than 100 beats/min. If the client experiencing ventricular tachycardia is unresponsive, CPR may need to be initiated because ventricular tachycardia can progress to ventricular fibrillation, another life-threatening situation. You will learn about cardiac dysrhythmias and their treatment in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiac disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 384, 438, 440; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 728-729; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 830-831.

162. The nurse is assessing a client with a diagnosis of bulimia nervosa who has problems with nutrition. The nurse should obtain information from the client about which finding **first**?

- 1 Lack of control
- 2 Previous and current coping skills
- 3 Feelings about self and body weight
- 4 Eating patterns, food preferences, concerns about eating

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** The nurse should first identify the client's eating patterns, food preferences, and concerns about eating when assessing a client with bulimia nervosa to determine a baseline for further planning and because this information relates to the client's physiological needs. The nurse should also obtain information about lack of control, previous and current coping skills, and the client's feelings about self and body weight, but this information is secondary to eating patterns and food preferences.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** to prioritize. The correct option is the only option that relates to a physiological need. Review: care for the client with **bulimia nervosa**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Bulimia nervosa is a disorder characterized by a craving for food and continuous eating followed by purging. It is also known as binge eating. The condition can lead to severe nutritional deficiencies, self-deprivation, and depression. You will learn about bulimia when you study eating disorders in a medical-surgical nursing course or in a psychiatric/mental health nursing course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1061; Fortinash, Holoday-Worret (2012), pp. 425, 428.

163. The community health nurse is assisting residents involved in a hurricane and flood. Many of the older residents are emotionally despondent and refuse to evacuate their homes. With regard to rescue and relocation of the older residents, the nurse should plan to perform which action **first**?
- 1 Contact families.
  - 2 Attend to emotional needs.
  - 3 Attend to nutritional and basic needs.
  - 4 Arrange for transportation to shelters.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Planning

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Attending to people's basic needs of food, shelter, and clothing is the priority. Options 1, 2, and 4 may or may not be needed at a later time.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*, and use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**. The correct option addresses basic physiological needs. Options 1, 2, and 4 address psychosocial needs and may be appropriate at a later time. Review: the nurse's role in the event of a **disaster**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A disaster is any human-made or natural event that causes destruction and devastation that require assistance from others. In regard to a health care agency, a disaster can be external or internal. External disasters include those that occur outside the agency, and internal disasters include those that occur inside the agency. A disaster preparedness plan is a formal plan of action for coordinating the response of a health care agency's staff in the event of a disaster in the health care agency or surrounding community. You will learn about disasters and a disaster preparedness plan in many of your nursing courses, including fundamentals, medical-surgical, leadership and management, and community.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 1003, 1006; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), pp. 163-164.

164. An antepartum client at 32 weeks' gestation positioned herself supine on the examination table to await the obstetrician. The nurse enters the examination room, and the client says, "I'm feeling a little lightheaded and sick to my stomach." The nurse recognizes that the client may be experiencing vena cava syndrome (hypotensive syndrome) and should take which **immediate** action?
- 1 Give the client an emesis basin.
  - 2 Place a cool cloth on the client's forehead.
  - 3 Call the obstetrician to see the client immediately.
  - 4 Place a folded towel or sheet under the client's right hip.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Lying supine (on the back) applies additional gravity pressure on the abdominal blood vessels (iliac vessels, inferior vena cava, and ascending aorta), increasing compression and impeding blood flow and cardiac output. This results in hypotension, dizziness, nausea, pallor, clammy (cool, damp) skin, and sweating. Raising one hip higher than the other reduces the pressure on the vena cava, restoring the circulation and relieving the symptoms. Although an emesis basin and a cool cloth placed on the forehead may be helpful, these are not the immediate actions. It is not necessary to call the obstetrician immediately unless the client's complaints are unrelieved following repositioning.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *immediate*. Focus on the information in the question and the goals of care. In other words, think about what complications that you want to prevent. Remember that if a question requires you to prioritize and one of the options relates to positioning a client, that option may be the correct one. Review: care of the client experiencing **vena cava syndrome**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Vena cava syndrome, also known as supine hypotension, is a condition in which a fall in blood pressure occurs when a pregnant woman is lying on her back. It is caused by impaired venous return that results from pressure of the large uterus on the vena cava. Therefore, raising one hip higher than the other reduces the pressure on the vena

cava, restoring the circulation and relieving the symptoms. You will learn about vena cava syndrome in your maternity nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), pp. 52-53; Lowdermilk et al (2012), pp. 341, 354.

**165.** A client is hospitalized with chest pain, and myocardial infarction is suspected. The client tells the nurse that the chest pain has returned, and the nurse administers one 0.4-mg nitroglycerin tablet sublingually as prescribed. What should the nurse do **next** before administering another sublingual nitroglycerin tablet if the pain is not relieved?

- 1 Notify the health care provider
- 2 Place the client in a flat position
- 3 Check the client's blood pressure
- 4 Encourage the client to deep breathe

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** In the hospitalized client, nitroglycerin tablets are usually administered 1 every 5 minutes, not exceeding three tablets, for chest pain as long as the client maintains a systolic blood pressure of 100 mm Hg or above (client's prescriptions are always followed). The nurse should check the client's blood pressure before administering a second nitroglycerin tablet. The health care provider is notified if the chest pain is not relieved after administering 3 tablets. If there is a sudden drop in blood pressure, the client is placed in a flat position and the health care provider is notified. Deep breathing will not relieve the chest pain that occurs as a result of myocardial infarction.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *next*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. This will direct you to the correct option. Checking the blood pressure is a means of assessing the client's circulatory status. Review: care of the client experiencing **chest pain**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A myocardial infarction is also known as a heart attack and results in necrosis of cardiac muscle caused by an obstruction in a coronary artery. When a client experiences chest pain and a cardiac problem is suspected, nitroglycerin is administered. Nitroglycerin is a coronary vasodilator that acts by dilating the coronary vessels, and thus increased blood flow and oxygenation ensue. You will learn about myocardial infarction and nitroglycerin in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 836; Linton (2012), p. 679.

**166.** A client receiving a blood transfusion develops signs of a blood transfusion reaction. The nurse stops the transfusion and maintains the intravenous (IV) line with normal saline. Which action should the nurse take **next**?

- 1 Document the occurrence.
- 2 Check the client's vital signs.
- 3 Send the blood bag and tubing to the blood bank for examination.
- 4 Check the client's urine output, and obtain a urine specimen for analysis.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** If a transfusion reaction is suspected, the transfusion is stopped and then normal saline is infused pending further health care provider prescriptions. This maintains a patent IV access line and aids in maintaining the client's intravascular volume. The nurse should next check the client's vital signs and notify the health care provider and the blood bank about the reaction. The nurse should obtain a urine specimen for analysis to check for hemolysis of red blood cells. The nurse then sends the blood bag and tubing to the blood bank for examination and documents the occurrence on the transfusion report and in the client's chart.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** The best strategy to use to answer this question is to visualize the occurrence. Stopping the blood is the first action, and because the IV line needs to remain patent, normal saline solution needs to be infused. Next use the **ABCs—airway,**

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**breathing, and circulation**—to determine that the client's vital signs need to be monitored. Then monitoring urine output and obtaining a urine specimen is done. Documentation is done last because all interventions, including that the nurse sent the blood bag and tubing to the blood bank for examination, need to be documented. Review: interventions if a **transfusion reaction** occurs.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A blood transfusion involves the administration of whole blood or a component of blood, such as packed red blood cells. It is prescribed to replace blood lost as a result of trauma, surgery, or disease. A major concern associated with the administration of blood is a blood transfusion reaction, and the nurse monitors the client very closely for this life-threatening complication. It is important to know the signs of a transfusion reaction and the nursing interventions if a transfusion reaction occurs. You will learn about the administration of blood transfusions and the associated complications in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study hematological disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 364; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 707-709.

**167.** A client with a diagnosis of sickle cell crisis is being admitted to the hospital. The nurse anticipates that which **priority** intervention will be prescribed?

- 1 Laboratory studies
- 2 Genetic counseling
- 3 Oxygen administration
- 4 Electrolyte replacement therapy

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Planning

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 3**

**Rationale:** Oxygen, intravenous fluids, pain medication, and red blood cell transfusions are the priority interventions for treating sickle cell crisis. Laboratory studies may also be prescribed but are not the priority in the care of the client. Genetic counseling is recommended but not during the acute phase of illness. Electrolyte replacement therapy may be necessary, but this treatment would be based on the results of laboratory studies.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Option 2 can be eliminated first using **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory** because this option addresses a psychosocial need not a physiological one. From the remaining options use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**—to direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client in **sickle cell crisis**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Sickle cell anemia is a severe, chronic, and incurable anemic condition characterized by abnormal hemoglobin (Hgb S) that results in distortion and fragility of the erythrocytes (sickled shape). Sickle cell crisis is an acute episodic condition that can occur when an individual has sickle cell anemia and results in the aggregation and clumping of the distorted erythrocytes, leading to occlusion and ischemia of tissue. You will learn about sickle cell crisis in your pediatric nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study hematological disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 353-354; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 874.

168. The nurse is planning the client assignments for the day. Which client should the nurse assign to the unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP)?
- 1 A client on strict bed rest
  - 2 A client scheduled for discharge to home
  - 3 A client scheduled for a cardiac catheterization
  - 4 A postoperative client who had an emergency appendectomy

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** The nurse is legally responsible for client assignments and must assign tasks based on the guidelines of nurse practice acts and the job descriptions of the employing agency. A client scheduled for discharge to home, a client scheduled for a cardiac catheterization, or a postoperative client who had an emergency appendectomy has both physiological and psychosocial needs that require care by a licensed nurse. The UAP has been trained to care for a client on bed rest. The nurse provides instructions to the UAP, but the tasks required are within the role description of a UAP.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, principles of assignment-making. Note that the question asks for the assignment to be delegated to the UAP. When asked questions related to delegation, think about the role description of the employee and the needs of the client. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: principles of **assignment-making**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Delegating and assignment-making are responsibilities of the nurse, and it is important that you assign tasks and activities that are appropriate based on the individual's educational experience, nurse practice acts, and the health care agency's policies and procedures. When you need to assign a task or activity to an unlicensed assistive personnel, think about the word *noninvasive*. Select the task or activity that is a noninvasive one. You will learn about delegating and assignment-making in your leadership and management course or in another nursing course that addresses these guidelines and principles.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 3-4; Potter et al (2013), pp. 281-283.

169. A hospitalized client with type 1 diabetes mellitus tells the nurse that she feels like she is having a hypoglycemic reaction. The nurse should take which action **first**?
- 1 Obtain a blood glucose reading.
  - 2 Give the client 4 oz of orange juice.
  - 3 Prepare to administer 50% dextrose intravenously.
  - 4 Prepare to administer subcutaneous glucagon hydrochloride.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** Management of hypoglycemia depends on the severity of the reaction. To reverse mild hypoglycemia, a 15-g simple carbohydrate is given and works quickly to increase blood glucose levels. However, a blood glucose test (with a glucose meter) should be performed first as soon as manifestations begin. If a meter is not available, it is safest to treat the hypoglycemia. Fifty-percent dextrose and glucagon hydrochloride are used to treat severe hypoglycemia particularly in the unconscious client.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*, and note that the client is hospitalized. Use the **steps of the nursing process**, and note that the correct option is the only option that addresses assessment/data collection. Review: care of the client experiencing a **hypoglycemic reaction**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Diabetes mellitus is a disorder of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism that is primarily the result of a deficiency or complete lack of insulin secretion by the beta cells of the pancreas or resistance to insulin. The client is treated with exogenous insulin, and both hypoglycemia (a low blood glucose level) and hyperglycemia (a high blood

glucose level) are complications. It is important to know the signs of each complication and how to treat them. It is also important to teach the client these signs and their treatment. If a low blood glucose level occurs, the client is treated with a 15-g simple carbohydrate to increase blood glucose levels. You will learn about diabetes mellitus and its complications in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study endocrine disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 874; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1241-1242.

170. A client is admitted to the emergency department with complaints of severe, radiating chest pain, and a myocardial infarction (heart attack) is suspected. The nurse immediately applies oxygen to the client and plans to take which action **next**?

- 1 Obtain a 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG).
- 2 Call radiology to prescribe a chest radiograph.
- 3 Call the laboratory to prescribe stat blood work.
- 4 Notify the coronary care unit to inform them that the client will need admission.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The initial action is to apply oxygen, because the client may be experiencing myocardial ischemia. Based on the options provided, an ECG will be done next because this test can provide evidence of cardiac damage and the location of myocardial ischemia. Vital signs are also measured and may be done just before obtaining the ECG or quickly thereafter. Nitroglycerin, a coronary artery vasodilator, may also be administered. The nurse should then obtain blood work because it can assist in determining the diagnosis and choice of treatment. Although the chest radiograph may show cardiac enlargement, it does not influence the immediate treatment. Notifying the coronary care unit to inform them that the client will need admission should be done once the diagnosis is confirmed and admission is deemed necessary.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *next*. Remember that the immediate goal of therapy is to prevent myocardial ischemia. Use knowledge regarding the procedures for determining treatment and visualize the situation to answer this question. Review: care of the client with **chest pain**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A myocardial infarction is also known as a heart attack and results in necrosis of cardiac muscle caused by an obstruction in a coronary artery. Chest pain is a significant characteristic of a heart attack. In fact, whenever a client complains of chest pain, the nurse should suspect the presence of a heart attack and act quickly until this diagnosis can be ruled out. You will learn about myocardial infarction and its immediate treatment in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 458-459; Lewis et al (2011), p. 782.

171. The nurse is caring for a client with a brain injury to the brainstem. The nurse should monitor which parameter as the **priority**?

- 1 Urine output
- 2 Electrolyte results
- 3 Peripheral vascular status
- 4 Respiratory rate and rhythm

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The respiratory center is located in the brainstem. Therefore, monitoring the respiratory status is a priority in a client with a brainstem injury; however, the nurse may also monitor urine output, electrolyte results, and peripheral vascular status.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word**, *priority*, and use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. Also, recalling the

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

anatomical location of the respiratory center will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the client with a **brain injury**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The brainstem is made up of several structures, including the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata. The vital centers of cardiac, respiratory, and vasomotor control are located in the medulla oblongata. If injury occurs to the brainstem, the nurse should monitor the respiratory status as a priority, followed by the cardiac status and vasomotor status. You will learn about brain and brainstem injuries and their complications in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders.

#### References

Lewis et al (2011), p. 1442; Linton (2012), p. 490.

**172.** A client is scheduled for a diagnostic procedure requiring the injection of a radiopaque dye. The nurse should check which **most important** information before the procedure?

- 1 Intake and output
- 2 Height and weight
- 3 Baseline vital signs
- 4 Allergy to iodine or shellfish

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Assessment/Data Collection

**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Procedures that involve the injection of a radiopaque dye require an informed consent. The risk for allergic reaction exists if the client has an allergy to iodine or shellfish. The risk of allergic reaction and possible anaphylaxis must be determined before the procedure. Although options 1, 2, and 3 identify information obtained before the procedure, these items are not the most important.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *most important*. Use the **ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation**. The risk for an allergic reaction and anaphylaxis is the correct option. Review: the complications associated with injection of a **radiopaque dye**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Many diagnostic tests may require injection of a radiopaque dye. This type of dye, which contains properties of iodine, is used for diagnosis to provide better visualization of body structures. Whenever a radiopaque dye is used, the nurse needs to assess the client for an allergy to both iodine and shellfish. You will learn about diagnostic tests and the important associated nursing responsibilities in preparing the client for these tests in your fundamentals of nursing course and in other nursing courses.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow (2011), p. 478; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1484.

**173.** The nurse is caring for a client in Buck's extension traction. The nurse should identify which client problem as the **priority**?

1. Expressed feelings of social isolation
2. Observed inability to distract oneself
3. Verbalized anger about the need for immobility
4. Observed skin redness around the edges of the boot appliance

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** Buck's extension traction is a type of skin traction in which weights are attached to the skin with the use of a boot or elastic bandage. A priority problem for the client in this type of traction is the potential for breaks in skin. The potential for alteration in neurovascular status is also a concern. Options 1, 2, and 3 may be problems for the client in Buck's extension traction, but redness around the edges of the boot appliance presents the greatest risk for skin breakdown.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**. The only option that indicates



**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

a physiological need is option 4. Options 1, 2, and 3 indicate psychosocial needs. Review: care to the client in **Buck's extension traction**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Traction may be used to treat fractures; it provides immobilization to hold the broken bone fragments in contact with each other or in very close approximation until healing takes place. The two types of traction are skin and skeletal. Skin traction is achieved by applying a boot, wrap, or a commercially prepared device directly to the skin, which is then attached to weights. Skeletal traction is attached directly to bone. You will learn about the various types of traction and the associated nursing care in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study musculoskeletal disorders.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1153; Lewis et al (2011), p. 1598; Linton, A. (2012), pp. 968-969.

174. The nurse is caring for a child with juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA). The nurse should identify which problem as the **priority**?
- 1 Complaints of acute pain
  - 2 Unsteadiness when ambulating
  - 3 Embarrassment about appearance
  - 4 Inability to perform self-hygienic measures

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Physiological Integrity  
**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Assessment/Data Collection  
**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** All the problems presented are appropriate for the child with JIA. The priority problem relates to complaints of acute pain. Acute pain needs to be managed before other problems can be addressed.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *priority*. Use **Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs theory**, remembering that physiological needs (option 1) receive highest priority. Option 2 addresses safety and would be the second priority. Option 3 addresses self-image needs. Option 4 is also a concern but is a lesser priority as compared with acute pain. Review: care of the child with **juvenile idiopathic arthritis** (JIA).

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Arthritis is an inflammatory condition of the joints characterized by pain, swelling, heat, redness, and limitation of movement. It can affect the client's ability to perform activities of daily living. It can also result in debilitation. It can occur in childhood or adulthood. You will learn about arthritis and its complications in your pediatric nursing course and in your medical-surgical nursing course.

#### References

Leifer (2011), p. 574; Hockenberry, Wilson (2011), pp. 1676-1677, 1680.

175. A client has been newly diagnosed with diabetes mellitus. The nurse should perform which action as the **first** step in teaching the client about the disorder?
1. Decide on the teaching approach.
  2. Plan for the evaluation of the session.
  3. Gather all available resource materials.
  4. Identify the client's knowledge and needs.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Determining what to teach a client begins with an assessment of the client's own knowledge and learning needs. Once these have been determined, the nurse can effectively plan a teaching approach, the actual content, and resource materials that may be needed. The evaluation is done after teaching is completed.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *first*. Use the **steps of the nursing process** to remember that assessment and data collection are the first step. Review: **teaching and learning** principles.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Health Promotion and Maintenance

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

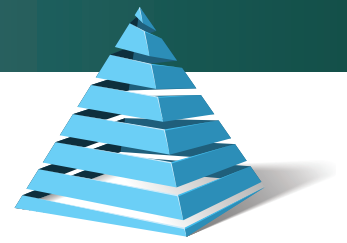
**Content Area:** Delegating/Prioritizing

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Diabetes mellitus is a disorder of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism that is primarily the result of a deficiency or complete lack of insulin secretion by the beta cells of the pancreas or resistance to insulin. Treatment includes diet, medication, and exercise. The client needs to be taught about the disorder and needs to understand how to care for self to maintain normal blood glucose levels and to prevent complications of the disease. Teaching is a very important role of the nurse for all clients, and teaching and learning principles are used to guide the nurse. You will learn about teaching and learning principles in your fundamentals of nursing course, and you will learn about diabetes mellitus in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study endocrine disorders.

#### **References**

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 867; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1240-1241.

---



# Leadership/Management Questions

176. The charge nurse is observing a new nursing graduate perform an ear irrigation to remove impacted cerumen from the client's ear. The charge nurse should intervene during the procedure if the new nursing graduate performs which action?

- 1 Washes her hands before performing the procedure
- 2 Positions the client with the affected side up following the irrigation
- 3 Warms the irrigating solution to a temperature that is close to body temperature
- 4 Directs a slow steady stream of irrigation solution toward the upper wall of the ear canal

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** During the irrigation, the client is positioned sitting with an ear basin under the ear. Irrigation solutions that are not close to the client's body temperature can be uncomfortable and may cause injury, nausea, and vertigo. A slow steady stream of solution should be directed toward the upper wall of the ear canal and not toward the tympanic membrane. Too much force and a flow directed toward the tympanic membrane could cause tympanic membrane rupture. Following the irrigation the client should lie on the affected side for a time to finish the drainage of the irrigating solution and to allow gravity to assist in the removal of the earwax and solution.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for an incorrect nursing action. Visualizing this procedure will assist in directing you to the correct option. Review: removal of **cerumen** from the ear.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An ear irrigation is the instillation of water or a saline solution into the ear and is usually done to remove excess cerumen from the ear. Ear irrigations are not done if a perforated tympanic membrane is suspected. It is important for the nurse to know the procedure for performing an ear irrigation to prevent complications of the procedure, such as rupture of the tympanic membrane. You will learn about the procedure for performing ear irrigations and the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 527-528; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1091.

177. The nurse is supervising an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) performing mouth care on an unconscious client. The nurse should intervene if the nurse noted the UAP performing which action(s)? **Select all that apply.**

**ANSWER: 2, 4**

**Rationale:** The client who is unconscious is at a great risk for aspiration. The client should have the head of the bed elevated because a flat supine position presents the risk of aspiration. The UAP should either place the client in a side-lying position or turn the client's head to the side. An emesis basin is placed underneath the mouth

- 1 Turning the client's head to one side
- 2 Placing the client in a flat supine position
- 3 Using small volumes of fluid to rinse the mouth
- 4 Using a gloved finger to open the client's mouth
- 5 Placing an emesis basin under the client's mouth

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

to collect the small volumes of fluids used to rinse the mouth. A bite stick or a padded tongue blade is used to open the mouth, not a gloved finger, to prevent injury to the caregiver.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for the option that is incorrect. Visualize this procedure, and remember that the nurse never places a finger into a client's mouth or places the client in a flat position. Review: the procedure for administering **mouth care** to the client who is unconscious.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Unconsciousness is a state of complete or partial unawareness or lack of response to stimuli. It can be caused by a variety of conditions, such as shock, hypoxia, or stroke (brain attack). The client who is unconscious requires complete care, including mouth care. Depending on the state of unawareness, the client may exhibit some responses to stimuli, such as bearing down with the teeth if an object is placed in the mouth. It is extremely important to remember that the flat position places the client at risk for aspiration and that you should never insert a finger into a client's mouth regardless of the state of consciousness. You will learn about the procedure for performing mouth care and the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 493, 1022; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 1435-1436.

178. The nurse is observing a student donning a pair of sterile gloves and preparing a sterile field. The nurse should intervene if the student performs which action(s)? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 Puts the right glove on and then the left glove
- 2 Dons the sterile gloves without washing the hands
- 3 Uses the inner wrapper of the gloves as a sterile field
- 4 Maintains the gloved hands below the level of the waist
- 5 Touches the gloves on the overbed table, removes them, and dons another sterile pair

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**ANSWER: 2, 4**

**Rationale:** Hands must always be washed (even though sterile gloves are used) to keep germs from spreading. The hands should be maintained above the level of the waist to keep them and the areas that need to remain sterile exposed to as few contaminated areas as possible. The inside wrapper provides an excellent area for usage because it is sterile. Gloves that touch anything unsterile must be considered contaminated, and a new package of gloves must be obtained and used. The order of placing gloves on is up to the individual as long as sterile technique is not broken.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for the option that identifies an incorrect action. Visualize each option keeping the principles of sterile technique in mind. Noting the words *without washing the hands* and *below the level of the waist* will direct you to the correct options. Review: **sterile technique** for donning gloves.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Sterile technique, also known as aseptic technique, is the use of special procedures to prevent contamination of the nurse, object, or area by microorganisms. A sterile field is an area that the nurse prepares that is considered free of microorganisms. Sterile technique and a sterile field are used to perform various procedures, such as changing a wound dressing. Handwashing is always done before any procedure even if the nurse plans to don gloves. You will learn about sterile technique, the procedure for donning sterile gloves and setting up a sterile

field, and the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 111, 1128; Potter et al (2013), pp. 436-437.

179. The nurse reviews the laboratory results of a client receiving chemotherapy and notes that the white blood cell count is extremely low. The nurse asks a nursing student assigned to care for the client to place the client on neutropenic precautions. The nurse determines the need to review the procedures for neutropenic precautions if the student nurse took which action?

- 1 The water pitcher was removed from the client's room.
- 2 Fresh cut flowers were removed from the client's room.
- 3 A box of face masks was placed at the entrance to the client's room.
- 4 Fresh pears and apples brought to the client by a family member were left in the client's room.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** In the immunocompromised client, a low-bacteria diet is necessary. This includes avoiding fresh fruits and vegetables. Thorough cooking of all food is also required. Anyone who enters the client's room should perform strict and thorough handwashing and wear a mask. Cut flowers or any standing water is removed from the room because it tends to harbor bacteria.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *the need to review*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for the action that is incorrect. Recall that neutropenic precautions are implemented when a client is at high risk for contracting an infection. Next, look for the action that places the client at risk for infection. This will direct you to the correct option. Review: interventions for the client on **neutropenic precautions**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Neutropenia is an abnormal decrease in the number of neutrophils in the blood that places the client at risk for infection. Therefore neutropenic precautions are instituted. This type of precautions focuses on protecting the client from infection, and any potential source of infection is avoided in the client's environment or in the care of the client. You will learn about neutropenic precautions and the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult Health* (2011), p. 795; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 420.

180. The nurse is observing a nursing student perform nasotracheal suctioning on an adult client. The nurse should intervene if the nursing student performs which action(s)? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 Sets the wall suction pressure at 140 mm Hg
- 2 Encourages the client to cough after suctioning
- 3 Inserts the suction catheter during client inhalation
- 4 Applies intermittent suction on the catheter during removal for up to 10 to 15 seconds
- 5. Inserts the catheter beyond the point at which the client elicits the gag reflex

#### ANSWER: 1, 5

**Rationale:** When suctioning an adult client, the wall suction should be set at 80 to 120 mm Hg (portable suction is set at 7 to 15 mm Hg). Elevated suction pressure settings can increase the risk of trauma to the mucosa and can induce greater hypoxia. The catheter should be inserted until the gag reflex is elicited, with suction being applied intermittently during withdrawal afterwards. The catheter should not be inserted beyond this point. Options 2, 3, and 4 are correct steps in performing this procedure.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for an incorrect action. Visualizing this procedure will assist in eliminating options 2, 3, and 4 because they are correct actions. Review: **suctioning** procedures.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Suctioning is a procedure that is used to remove accumulated secretions from the respiratory

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

181. The nurse is preparing to administer a medication to a client and notes that the dose prescribed is higher than the recommended dosage. The nurse calls the health care provider to clarify the prescription, and the health care provider instructs the nurse to administer the dose as prescribed. Which action should the nurse take?

- 1 Call the pharmacy.
- 2 Contact the nursing supervisor.
- 3 Call the medical director on call.
- 4 Administer the dose as prescribed.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

tract when the client is unable to effectively cough them out. It is a sterile procedure and requires specific actions to prevent trauma to the mucosa of the respiratory tract and to prevent hypoxia. You will learn about the procedure for suctioning and the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 272; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 574.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** If the health care provider writes a prescription that requires clarification, it is the nurse's responsibility to contact the health care provider for clarification. If there is no resolution regarding the prescription because the prescription remains as it was written after talking with the health care provider, or because the health care provider cannot be located, the nurse should then contact the nurse manager or supervisor for further clarification as to what the next step should be. Under no circumstances should the nurse proceed to carry out the prescription until clarification is obtained. Calling the pharmacy is a resource action that will confirm that the dose of medication prescribed is inappropriate, but this action will not resolve the problem facing the nurse. Option 3 is a premature action.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, nursing responsibilities related to prescriptions requiring clarification. Eliminate option 4 first because this is an unsafe action. Option 3 is a premature action and should be eliminated next. Eliminate option 1 next because this action will not resolve the problem. Also recall that the nurse should follow the organizational chain of command and seek assistance from the nursing supervisor. Review: nursing responsibilities related to health care providers' prescriptions and the associated **ethical and legal responsibilities**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The client's health care provider will document specific prescriptions regarding the client's care in the medical record, and the nurse needs to follow the prescriptions unless the nurse deems that a prescription may harm the client. If the prescription can cause harm to the client, the nurse needs to contact the health care provider to change the prescription. If the health care provider does not change the prescription or if the nurse is unable to locate the health care provider, the nurse should follow the chain of command in the health care organization. In this situation, the nurse should contact the nursing supervisor. Under no circumstances should a nurse implement a prescription that could cause harm to the client. You will learn about health care providers' prescriptions and the associated legal responsibilities in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 701; Linton (2012), p. 39; Potter et al (2013), pp. 582-583.

182. The charge nurse is observing a new nursing graduate insert an indwelling urinary (Foley) catheter. The charge nurse should intervene if the new nursing graduate begins to perform which action(s)? **Select all that apply.**

- 1 Lubricates the catheter before inserting it
- 2 Positions the client in a side-lying position
- 3 Inflates the balloon to test patency before inserting the catheter
- 4 Cleans the area around the urinary meatus before inserting the catheter
- 5 Inflates the balloon as soon as urine begins to flow through the catheter tubing

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**ANSWER: 2, 5**

**Rationale:** Before insertion of the catheter, the client should be positioned on the back with the posterior sides of the feet touching one another with the knees bent. This allows for optimal visualization and access to the urethral meatus. After urine begins to flow, the catheter is inserted 2.5 cm (1 inch) more. Doing so ensures that the balloon is in the bladder, not in the urethra. Options 1, 3, and 4 identify correct procedure.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*, which indicate a **negative event query** and tell you that you are looking for the options that identify an incorrect action(s) by the new nursing graduate. Visualizing this procedure and reading each option carefully will direct you to options 2 and 5. Review: the procedure for inserting an **indwelling urinary (Foley) catheter**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A Foley catheter is a rubber tube with a balloon tip that is filled with a sterile liquid after it is inserted in the bladder. It is connected to a bag that collects urine draining from the bladder. Sterile technique is used to insert this catheter. This type of catheter is used when continuous drainage of the bladder is needed, such as during a surgical procedure. You will learn about this type of catheter and the procedure for its insertion in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will learn about the role of the nurse as a supervisor and teacher in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 575-576; Potter et al (2013), p. 1076.

183. A hospitalized client tells his evening nurse that he has received pain medication at 10:00 AM and again at 2:00 PM and that the medication provided no relief from the pain. The client says to the nurse, "Whenever that daytime nurse takes care of me and gives me pain medication it never works! I am so glad that you are here so that I can get some relief from this pain." The nurse has observed this same occurrence with other clients who were cared for by this same daytime nurse and suspects that the daytime nurse is self-abusing drugs. The nurse should implement which action?

- 1 Report the information to the nursing supervisor
- 2 Talk with the daytime nurse who gave the medication to the client.
- 3 Call the impaired nurse organization and report the daytime nurse.
- 4 Report the information about the daytime nurse to the police department.

**ANSWER: 1**

**Rationale:** If the nurse suspects that another nurse is self-abusing drugs, the nurse needs to report the suspicion to the nursing supervisor. Factual information such as that described by the client and specific information related to the nurse's observations needs to be reported. The nurse should not confront the nurse who is suspected of self-abusing drugs because this may lead to a conflict or confrontation. The nurse should follow the organizational chain of communication of the institution to report the incident. The suspicion needs to be reported to the nursing supervisor, who will then report to the board of nursing. The board of nursing has jurisdiction over the practice of nursing and may develop plans for treatment and supervision.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike** and both relate to reporting the incident to agencies outside the hospital. From the remaining options, recall that agency channels of communication are used when reporting an incident. Also the action in option 2 can lead to a conflict. Review: nursing responsibilities related to **incident reporting**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Drug abuse is the use of drugs illegally. If a nurse is suspected of drug abuse and is taking drugs intended for use by the client, the suspecting nurse needs

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

to report such suspicion. Failure to provide a client with required and needed treatment is harmful to the client and is illegal. You will learn about drug abuse and the impaired nurse and associated nursing responsibilities in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 1067; Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 1172-1173; Potter et al (2013), p. 300.

**184.** The nurse determines that a client with a stroke (brain attack) is experiencing difficulty with fine motor coordination when performing activities of daily living. The nurse should suggest that the client be referred to which member of the health care team?

- 1 Physical therapist
- 2 Speech pathologist
- 3 Recreational therapist
- 4 Occupational therapist

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The occupational therapist provides assistance with developing methods that assist in managing difficulty with fine motor coordination when performing activities of daily living. Although a physical therapist may also address fine motor activities, the focus is primarily on gross motor skills and the development of muscle strength. Speech pathologists and recreational therapists do not address this aspect of care.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, fine motor coordination when performing activities of daily living. This will assist in eliminating options 2 and 3. From the remaining options, noting the words *activities of daily living* will direct you to the correct option. Review: **roles of health care team members**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A stroke (brain attack) is an abnormal condition of the brain that is characterized by occlusion by a clot, hemorrhage, or vasospasm that results in ischemia of the brain tissues. Paralysis, weakness, sensory changes, speech defects, or even death can occur. The client who experiences a stroke will require rehabilitative services that will assist the client to relearn activities to promote independence. You will learn about strokes in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study neurological disorders, and you will learn about the roles of various health care team members in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 91; Linton (2012), p. 9.

**185.** The nurse notes that an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) dons clean gloves but did not wash her hands before taking an oral temperature on a client. The nurse implements a teaching session for UAPs and should incorporate which principle?

- 1 Learning involves a change of behavior.
- 2 Learning is a cognitive, passive process.
- 3 UAPs need constant supervision when caring for clients.
- 4 Negative rewards reduce undesirable behavior and should be used when an error is seen.

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** The nurse assumes leadership for improving client care by implementing a teaching session that has the potential for changing behavior. Persons who change their behavior have internalized information and apply it to their actions. Options 3 and 4 use negative strategies to change behavior, and this is not usually successful. Option 2 views the learner as not being actively involved in the teaching and learning process.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Eliminate options 3 and 4 first because they are **comparable or alike** and do not provide a positive view of learners. Eliminate option 2 because learning should be an active not a passive process. Review: **teaching and learning principles**.



**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Handwashing is always done before and after every client contact even if the nurse intends to don gloves for client care. If the nurse observes an incorrect action by another health care team member, it is the nurse's responsibility to teach correct procedure to ensure client safety and a safe environment. Learning involves acquiring knowledge about a skill and changing behavior as a result of the training. Teaching is a responsibility of the nurse, and you will learn about this role and the teaching and learning process in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Lewis et al (2011), pp. 49-50; Potter et al (2013), pp. 425-427.

186. The health care provider has prescribed a cleansing enema for an adult client. The nurse provides directions to an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) who is trained and certified to administer enemas and should tell the UAP that the maximum volume of fluid that can be administered is which volume?

- 1 100 mL
- 2 300 mL
- 3 500 mL
- 4 1000 mL

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Cleansing enemas promote complete evacuation of feces from the colon. They act by stimulating peristalsis through the infusion of a large volume of solution or through local irritation of the colon's mucosa. For an adult client, 750 to 1000 mL is used. Therefore, the maximum volume of solution for an adult is 1000 mL.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the procedure for administering a cleansing enema. Note the words *maximum volume*, and note that the question addresses an adult client. Recalling the anatomy of the colon in an adult client and the procedure for administering a cleansing enema will direct you to the correct option. Review: the procedure for administering a **cleansing enema**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** An enema is the introduction of solution into the rectum for cleansing the bowel. Cleansing of the bowel may be prescribed to treat constipation or may be prescribed as a preprocedure treatment, such as before a diagnostic test or surgical procedure involving the colon. You will learn about the procedure for administering an enema in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 593; Potter et al (2013), p. 1112.

187. A client requires a partial bed bath. The nurse gives instructions to an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) about the partial bed bath and should tell the UAP to perform which action?

- 1 Just wash the client's hands and face.
- 2 Provide mouth care and perineal care only.
- 3 Let the client decide what she wants washed.
- 4 Be sure to bathe the client's body parts that would cause discomfort or odor if left unbathe.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** A partial bed bath involves bathing the body parts that would cause discomfort or odor if left unbathe. This may include the axillary areas, perineal areas, and any skin fold areas. Options 1, 2, and 3 do not completely address a partial bed bath.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *partial bed bath*. Eliminate option 1 because of the **closed-ended word** *just* and option 2 because of the **closed-ended word** *only*. From the remaining options, recalling the definition of a partial bed bath will direct you to the correct option. Review: the components of a **partial bed bath**.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Bathing a client is an important role of the nurse and is necessary for hygienic purposes and to prevent infection, maintain skin integrity, stimulate circulation, and provide comfort. Several types of baths may be given, including a bed bath, tub bath, shower, complete bath, or partial bath. You will learn about bathing a client in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 444; Perry, Potter, Elkin (2012), p. 217.

**188.** The charge nurse is observing a new nursing graduate insert a nasal trumpet airway to provide a route for suctioning the client. The nurse should intervene if the new nursing graduate performs which action?

- 1 Checks the nose for septal deviation
- 2 Uses a nasal trumpet that is slightly larger than the nares
- 3 Inserts the nasal trumpet gently following the contour of the nasopharyngeal passageway
- 4 Lubricates the nasal trumpet with a water-soluble lubricant jelly containing a local anesthetic

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** The nurse should select a nasal trumpet airway that is slightly smaller than the nares and slightly larger than the suction catheter to be used to suction the client. Options 1, 3, and 4 are correct actions for inserting a nasal trumpet airway.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and indicate that you are looking for the option that indicates an incorrect action by the new nursing graduate. Noting the words *slightly larger than the nares* and visualizing this procedure will direct you to the correct option. Review: the procedure for **suctioning**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A nasal trumpet is a tube that is inserted into one of the client's nostrils to provide assistance in maintaining the client's airway and to provide a route for suctioning secretions from the client. You will learn about a nasal trumpet and the procedure for its insertion and suctioning procedure in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 568-569; Potter et al (2013), p. 845.

**189.** The nurse is observing an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) measuring the blood pressure (BP) of a client. The nurse should intervene if which action were observed that would interfere with accurate measurement of the BP?

- 1 Positions the client's arm at heart level
- 2 Exposes the extremity fully by removing constricting clothing
- 3 Explains the procedure to the client and asks the client to rest for 5 minutes
- 4 Palpates the carotid artery and then places the cuff of the sphygmomanometer 1 inch above the brachial artery

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** When taking a BP, the brachial artery is palpated (not the carotid artery) and the cuff of the sphygmomanometer is positioned 1 inch above this site of pulsation. Options 1, 2, and 3 are correct actions when taking a BP.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you need to select the option that indicates an incorrect action by the UAP. Visualizing this procedure will assist in eliminating options 1, 2, and 3. Review: the principles related to **blood pressure** measurement.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Blood pressure is the amount of pressure exerted on the walls of the arteries and veins and the heart chambers by the circulating volume of blood. This pressure is measured by taking the client's BP. To ensure accuracy of the measurement, a specific procedure is followed. You will learn about the

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
 Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

190. The nurse is reviewing the preprocedure care for a client scheduled to have an echocardiogram following a myocardial infarction. The nurse determines that the student nurse understands the preprocedure instructions if the student nurse made which statement?

- 1 "The client needs to sign an informed consent."
- 2 "The procedure is painless and takes 30 to 60 minutes to complete."
- 3 "The client cannot eat or drink anything for 4 hours before the procedure."
- 4 "An allergy to iodine or shellfish is a contraindication to having the procedure."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

191. The nurse is reviewing the preprocedure care for a client who is scheduled for a cardiac catheterization with a nursing student. The nurse determines that the student **needs further instruction** while preparing the client if the nursing student made which statement?

- 1 "The procedure takes about 5 hours."
- 2 "The client may experience flushing feelings during the procedure."
- 3 "The blood vessels and flow of blood will be assessed with this procedure."
- 4 "There is minimal discomfort with catheter insertion because a local anesthetic is used."

procedure for taking the client's BP in your fundamentals of nursing course and about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 82-83; Lewis et al (2011), pp. 49-50, 754.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Echocardiography uses ultrasound to evaluate the heart's structure and motion. It is a noninvasive, risk-free, pain-free test that involves no special preparation. It is commonly done at the bedside or on an outpatient basis. The client must lie quietly for 30 to 60 minutes while the procedure is being performed. Options 1, 3, and 4 are not preprocedure preparations.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **subject**, client instructions related to echocardiogram. Focus on the diagnostic test being performed. Recalling that echocardiography uses ultrasound and that ultrasound is noninvasive will assist in eliminating options 1, 3, and 4. Review: client instructions related to **echocardiogram**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Diagnostic uses of an echocardiogram include the detection of atrial or other tumors, measurement of the heart chambers, and evaluation of valve and chamber function. You will learn about various diagnostic tests in your fundamentals of nursing course; an important point to remember is that an informed consent is needed if the test is invasive. Another important point is that the nurse must ensure that the client understands the test to be done and its purpose and teaches the client about the test. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a client teacher in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 379; Lewis et al (2011), p. 730.

#### ANSWER: 1

**Rationale:** A cardiac catheterization is a diagnostic test that assesses the coronary arteries and the flow of blood through them. The procedure is done in a darkened cardiac catheterization room in the radiology department. A local anesthetic is used so there is minimal discomfort with catheter insertion. The preprocedure preparation and the procedure may take approximately 1 to 3 hours, during which the client may feel various sensations, such as a feeling of warmth or flushing, with catheter passage and dye injection.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words**, *needs further instruction*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you need to select the incorrect statement by the nursing student. Recalling the purpose of the procedure will assist in eliminating option 3. Next, recalling that a dye is injected will assist in eliminating options 2 and 4. Also noting the words *5 hours* in option 1 will direct you to this option. Review: the procedure for a **cardiac catheterization**.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

192. The nurse has instructed an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) in the procedure for collecting a 24-hour urine specimen from a client. The nurse determines that the UAP understands the directions if the UAP makes which statement?
- 1 "I need to keep the specimen at room temperature."
  - 2 "I need to save the first urine specimen collected at the start time."
  - 3 "I need to discard the last voided specimen at the end of the collection time."
  - 4 "I need to ask the client to void, discard the specimen, and note the start time."

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

193. The nurse is teaching an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) how to measure a carotid pulse. The nurse should tell the UAP to measure the pulse on only one side of the client's neck for which **primary** reason?
- 1 Because the pulse rate will be easier to count
  - 2 To prevent dizziness and a drop in the heart rate
  - 3 So that the client will not feel a sense of choking

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Cardiac catheterization is a test performed to assess the status of the coronary arteries or the presence of congenital heart disease, stenosis, or valvular disease. Risks associated with the procedure include dysrhythmias, infection, and thrombosis and the nurse needs to monitor the client closely following the procedure. You will learn about cardiac catheterization in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a client teacher in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 380; Pagana, Pagana (2010), pp. 1063-1064.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** Because a 24-hour urine specimen is a timed quantitative determination, the test must be started with an empty bladder. Therefore the first urine is discarded. Fifteen minutes before the end of the collection time, the client should be asked to void and this specimen is added to the collection. The urine collection should be refrigerated or placed on ice to prevent changes in urine composition.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, the procedure for collecting a 24-hour urine specimen. Note that options 2 and 4 are opposite, which is an indication that one of them is likely to be the correct option. Recalling that the 24-hour urine specimen is a timed quantitative determination will assist in directing you to the correct option. Review: the procedure for collecting a **24-hour urine specimen**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Urine specimens may be collected to diagnose various conditions. These specimens may be prescribed to be collected as a random specimen, a sterile specimen, or a 24-hour urine collection. An important point to remember is that the procedure for its collection needs to be followed to ensure accurate results. You will learn about collecting urine specimens in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 497; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1479.

#### ANSWER: 2

**Rationale:** Applying pressure to both carotid arteries at the same time is contraindicated. Excess pressure to the baroreceptors in the carotid vessels could cause the heart rate and blood pressure to reflexively drop and cause syncope. In addition, the manual pressure could interfere with the flow of blood to the brain. The remaining options are unrelated to the reason for measuring the pulse on only one side of the client's neck.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic word** *primary*. Note that option 2 describes the greatest danger to the client. Review: the function and location of **baroreceptors** in the carotid vessels.

- 4 Because it will provide a more accurate determination of the quality of the pulse

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Applying

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** The carotid artery is located in the neck region and is one of the major arteries supplying blood to the head. It is one of the pulse points in the body that can be palpated to check a client's pulse. You will learn about palpation of this artery in your fundamentals of nursing course or in a physical assessment course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

**References**

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 71-73; Potter et al (2013), pp. 452-453.

194. The nurse is supervising a nursing student who is performing a pulse oximetry measurement on a client with peripheral vascular disease. The nurse determines that the nursing student is performing the procedure accurately if the student places the oximetry probe on which anatomical area? Refer to figures 1-4.

1



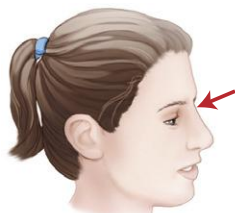
2



3



4



**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** If the client has peripheral vascular disease, the pulse oximetry probe would be placed on the earlobe or bridge of the nose because peripheral vasoconstriction or inadequate blood flow to the peripheral areas of the body will interfere with the oxygen saturation measurement. It is also important to note that the probe should not be attached to a finger, ear, or bridge of the nose if the area is edematous or the skin integrity is compromised, or if the area is hypothermic. Additionally, the sensor should not be placed on the same extremity as an electronic blood pressure cuff because blood flow is temporarily interrupted when the cuff inflates. Placing the probe on the anatomical areas noted in options 1, 2, and 3 will not provide an accurate measurement of the oxygen saturation.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the client's diagnosis—peripheral vascular disease—and recall the pathophysiology associated with the disease. Note that options 1, 2, and 3 are **comparable or alike** in that they indicate using a peripheral body area. Review: the procedure for **pulse oximetry** measurement.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Peripheral vascular disease is an abnormal condition that affects the blood vessels leading to decreased blood to the body part. Pulse oximetry uses a cliplike device that measures the amount of saturated hemoglobin in the tissue capillaries and thus the percentage of oxygen saturation in the blood. You will learn about peripheral vascular disease in your medical-surgical nursing course when you study cardiovascular disorders and about measuring oxygenation using pulse oximetry in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

**References**

Lewis et al (2011), p. 513; Potter et al (2013), p. 479.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Evaluating  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment

**Integrated Process:** Teaching and Learning  
**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

195. The nursing student is preparing a client who will have spinal anesthesia for surgery. The nurse in charge asks the nursing student to identify which **highest priority** preoperative data to report to the nurse on the next shift who will care for the client postoperatively?
- 1 Pulse rate of 78 beats/min
  - 2 Voided 300 mL preoperatively
  - 3 Blood pressure of 126/78 mm Hg
  - 4 Presence of weakness in the left lower extremity

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment  
**Integrated Process:** Communication and Documentation  
**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

**ANSWER: 4**

**Rationale:** It is important to document and report any preoperative weakness or impaired movement of a lower extremity in the client who is to have spinal anesthesia because it causes temporary paralysis of the lower extremities. When the client's function returns, the preoperative weakness or impairment will not be misinterpreted as a complication of anesthesia. Options 1, 2, and 3 may be documented and reported, but they are not the highest priority.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the **strategic words** *highest priority*. Note the relationship between the words *spinal anesthesia* and the correct option. Also note that the data in options 1, 2, and 3 are normal findings. Review: care of the **preoperative client**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Spinal anesthesia is done by an injection into the subarachnoid cerebrospinal fluid space. It produces a state of lack of sensation in the lower part of the body. An important nursing responsibility in the postoperative period is to monitor for the return of sensation in the lower body. If sensation does not return or is altered in any way, the surgeon is notified. You will learn about spinal anesthesia in your fundamentals of nursing course and about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Adult health* (2011), p. 40; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 289.

196. A client comes to the hospital emergency department with complaints of severe right lower abdominal pain characteristic of appendicitis. The client does not have any health insurance. The nurse understands that legally the hospital has which obligation?
- 1 Refer the client to the nearest public hospital.
  - 2 Provide uncompensated care in emergency situations.
  - 3 Have a health care provider see the client before admission.
  - 4 Respect the family's requests to admit their family member to the hospital.

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding  
**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
 Environment

**ANSWER: 2**

**Rationale:** Federal law and many state laws require that hospitals must provide emergency care. The client can be transferred only after the client has been medically screened and stabilized. The client must give consent for the transfer, and there must be a facility that will accept the client. Options 1, 3, and 4 do not fully address the legal requirements for emergency care.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, legal implications in the care of the client without insurance. Note the words *does not have any health insurance* and the word *legally*. Noting that the situation presented is an emergency will direct you to the correct option, which addresses the legal scope of providing emergency care. Review: the legal issues related to providing **emergency care**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** You will learn about various types of health insurance plans and the issues associated with health insurance in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course. An important point to remember is that the client is the priority. If an emergency condition exists,

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

197. The nurse tells an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) that a client recovering from a myocardial infarction requires a complete bed bath. During the bath, the nurse should intervene if the nurse observed the UAP performing which action?

- 1 Washing the client's chest
- 2 Giving the client a back rub
- 3 Asking the client to wash his legs
- 4 Washing the client's perineal area

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

198. The nurse is observing a nursing student auscultating the breath sounds of a client. The nurse should intervene if the nursing student performs which action?

- 1 Used the diaphragm of the stethoscope
- 2 Placed the stethoscope directly on the client's skin
- 3 Asked the client to breathe slowly and deeply through the mouth
- 4 Asked the client to lie flat on the right side and then on the left side

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
Environment

the health care agency must provide care regardless of the client's insurance status. Appendicitis is an acute inflammation of the appendix that if left untreated can lead to perforation and peritonitis, which is life threatening. You will learn about appendicitis in your pediatrics course and your medical-surgical nursing course when you study gastrointestinal disorders.

#### References

Linton (2012), pp. 256-257; Potter et al (2013), p. 298.

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** A complete bed bath is for clients who are totally dependent and require total hygiene care. Total care may be necessary for a client recovering from a myocardial infarction to conserve the client's energy and reduce oxygen requirements. The nurse should intervene if the nurse observed the UAP asking the client to wash his legs. Options 1, 2, and 4 are components of providing a complete bed bath.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you need to select the option that identifies an incorrect action by the UAP. Focusing on the words *complete bed bath* will direct you to the correct option because in this option the nurse asks the client to participate in the bathing process. Review: the procedure for giving a **complete bed bath**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Bathing a client is an important role of the nurse and is necessary for hygienic purposes and to prevent infection, maintain skin integrity, stimulate circulation, and provide comfort. Several types of baths may be given, including a bed bath, tub bath, shower, complete bath, or partial bath. You will learn about bathing a client in your fundamentals of nursing course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), pp. 441-443; Potter et al (2013), pp. 783-784.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** The client ideally should sit up and breathe slowly and deeply through the mouth. The diaphragm of the stethoscope, which is warmed before use, is placed directly on the client's skin, not over a gown or clothing.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for the option that gives an incorrect action by the nursing student. Noting the words *lie flat* will direct you to the correct option. Review: the procedure for auscultating **breath sounds**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A breath sound is the sound of air passing in and out of the lungs as heard with a stethoscope. Normal breath sounds include vesicular, bronchovesicular, and bronchial sounds. Auscultating breath sounds is a part of a nursing

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/  
Implementation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

199. The nurse is observing an unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) talking to a client who is hearing impaired. The nurse should intervene if the UAP performs which action during communication with the client?
- 1 Speaks in a normal tone
  - 2 Speaks clearly to the client
  - 3 Faces the client when speaking
  - 4 Speaks directly into the impaired ear

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Analyzing

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care  
Environment

**Integrated Process:** Communication and  
Documentation

**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

assessment, and you will learn about this procedure and evaluating breath sounds in your fundamental of nursing course or in a physical assessment course. You will also learn about the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

Potter et al (2013), pp. 525-526; Christensen, Kockrow: *Foundations* (2011), p. 78.

#### ANSWER: 4

**Rationale:** When communicating with a hearing impaired client, the nurse should speak in a normal tone to the client and should not shout. The nurse should talk directly to the client while facing the client and speak clearly. If the client does not seem to understand what is said, the nurse should express the statement differently. Moving closer to the client and toward the better ear may facilitate communication, but the nurse should avoid talking directly into the impaired ear.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Note the words *nurse should intervene*. These words indicate a **negative event query** and that you are looking for the option that gives an incorrect action by the UAP. Noting the words *directly into the impaired ear* will direct you to the correct option. Review: care of the **hearing impaired client**.

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** Special communication techniques are needed when caring for a hearing impaired client. Some of these include facing the client when speaking; enunciating words slowly, clearly, and in a normal voice; avoiding placing the hands over the mouth when speaking so that the client can lip-read; and avoiding speaking into the impaired ear. It is important for the nurse to know these techniques because the nurse needs to use them to communicate with the hearing impaired client to prevent social isolation. In addition, teaching and supervising others are roles of the nurse, and the nurse needs to intervene if he or she observes incorrect communication techniques performed by another health care team member. You will learn about communication techniques for clients with hearing impairment and the role of the nurse as a teacher and supervisor in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

#### References

deWit, Kumagai (2013), p. 587; Ignatavicius, Workman (2013), p. 1103.

200. The nurse administers a fatal dose of morphine sulfate to a client. During the subsequent investigation of error, it is determined that the nurse did not check the client's respiratory rate before administering the medication. Failure to adequately assess the client is addressed under which function of the nurse practice act?
- 1 Defining the specific educational requirements for licensure in the state

#### ANSWER: 3

**Rationale:** In this situation, acceptable standards of care were not met (the nurse failed to adequately check the client before administering a medication). Option 3 refers specifically to the situation described in the question, whereas options 1, 2, and 4 do not.

**Test-Taking Strategy:** Focus on the **subject**, nursing implications and legal implications for medication errors. Note the relationship between the words *failure to adequately assess the client* in the question and *standards of care are not met* in the correct option. Review: the legal implications related to **medication errors**.



- 2 Describing the scope of practice of licensed and unlicensed care providers
- 3 Identifying the process for disciplinary action if standards of care are not met
- 4 Recommending specific terms of incarceration for nurses who violate the law

**Level of Cognitive Ability:** Understanding

**Client Needs:** Safe and Effective Care Environment

**Integrated Process:** Nursing Process/Assessment/Data Collection

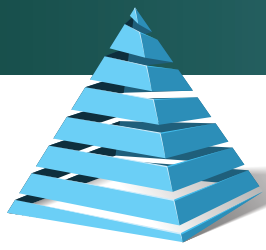
**Content Area:** Leadership/Management

---

**Tip for the Beginning Nursing Student:** A nurse practice act is a statute enacted by the legislation of a state. Nurse practice acts may vary from state to state but generally include educational requirements of the nurse, distinguishing between nursing practice and medical practice, and defining the scope of practice for the nurse. Additional issues that may be covered in the act include grounds for disciplinary action and the rights of the nurse if disciplinary action is taken. All nurses are responsible for knowing the provisions of the act in the state in which they work. You will learn about the nurse practice act in your fundamentals of nursing course or in your leadership/management course.

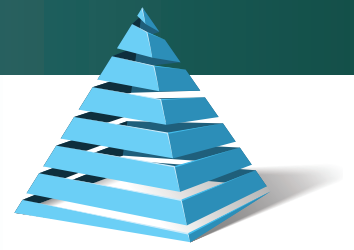
**References**

deWit, Kumagai (2013), pp. 1137-1138; Potter et al (2013), p. 6.



## References

- Christensen B, Kockrow E: *Adult health nursing*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2011, Mosby.
- Christensen B, Kockrow E: *Foundations of adult health nursing*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2010, Mosby.
- deWit D, Kumagai C: *Medical-surgical nursing: Concepts & practice*, ed 2, St. Louis, 2013, Saunders.
- Fortinash K, Holoday-Worret P: *Psychiatric mental health nursing*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2012, Mosby.
- Giger J, Davidhizar R: *Transcultural nursing assessment & intervention*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2013, Mosby.
- Grodner M, Long-Roth S, Walkingshaw B: *Foundations and clinical applications of nutrition: A nursing approach*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2012, Mosby.
- Harkreader H, Hogan MA: *Fundamentals of nursing: Caring and clinical judgment*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2007, Saunders.
- Hockenberry M, Wilson D: *Nursing care of infants and children*, ed 9, St. Louis, 2011, Mosby.
- Hodgson B, Kizior R: *Saunders nursing drug handbook 2012*, Philadelphia, 2013, Saunders.
- Ignatavicius D, Workman M: *Medical surgical nursing: Patient-centered collaborative care*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, Saunders.
- Jarvis C: *Physical examination & health assessment*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.
- Kee J, Marshall S: *Clinical calculations: With applications to general and specialty areas*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2009, Saunders.
- Keltner N, Schwecke L, Bostro C: *Psychiatric nursing*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2011, Mosby.
- Lehne R: *Pharmacology for nursing care*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2013, Saunders.
- Leifer G: *Introduction to maternity and pediatric nursing*, ed 6, Philadelphia, 2011, Saunders.
- Lewis S, Dirksen S, Heitkemper M, Bucher L, Camera I: *Medical-surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems*, ed 8, St. Louis, 2011, Mosby.
- Lilley L, Rainforth Collins S, Harrington S, Snyder J: *Pharmacology and the nursing process*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2011, Mosby.
- Linton A, Maebius N: *Introduction to medical-surgical nursing*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.
- Lowdermilk DL, Perry S, Cashion K, Alden KR: *Maternity and women's health care*, ed 10, St. Louis, 2012, Mosby.
- Morrison-Valfre M: *Foundations of mental health care*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2009, Mosby.
- Mosby's Dictionary of Medicine, Nursing, and Health Professions*, ed 8, St. Louis, 2013, Mosby.
- Murray SS, McKinney ES: *Foundations of maternal-newborn and women's health nursing*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2010, Saunders.
- National Council of State Boards of Nursing, editors: 2011 NCLEX-PN® detailed test plan, National Council of State Boards of Nursing, Chicago, 2011, Author.
- National Council of State Boards of Nursing Web site: [www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org).
- National Council of State Boards of Nursing, Inc: *Proposed 2013 NCLEX-RN® Test Plan: National Council Licensure Examination for Registered Nurses*. (Effective Date: April 2013).
- National Council of State Boards of Nursing: *Annual Meeting Business Book*, 2012. Web site: [www.ncsbn.org](http://www.ncsbn.org).
- Nix S: *Williams' basic nutrition and diet therapy*, ed 13, St. Louis, 2009, Mosby.
- Pagana K, Pagana T: *Mosby's diagnostic and laboratory test reference*, ed 11, St. Louis, 2013, Mosby.
- Perry A, Potter P, Elkin M: *Nursing interventions & clinical skills*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2012, Mosby.
- Perry A, Potter P: *Clinical nursing skills & techniques*, ed 8, St. Louis, 2010, Mosby.
- Perry S, Hockenberry M, Lowdermilk D, Wilson D: *Maternal child nursing care*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2010, Elsevier.
- Potter P, Perry A, Stockert P, Hall A: *Fundamentals of nursing*, ed 8, St. Louis, 2013, Mosby.
- Price D, Gwin J: *Pediatric nursing: An introductory text*, ed 10, Philadelphia, 2008, Saunders.
- Schlenker E, Long S: *Williams' essentials of nutrition & diet therapy*, ed 10, St. Louis, 2011, Mosby.
- Silvestri L: *Saunders comprehensive review for the NCLEX-RN® examination*, St. Louis, Saunders.
- Silvestri L: *Saunders Q&A review for the NCLEX-RN® examination*, St. Louis, Saunders.
- Silvestri L: *Saunders comprehensive review for the NCLEX-PN® examination*, St. Louis, Saunders.
- Skidmore-Roth L: *Mosby's handbook of herbs & natural supplements*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2010, Mosby.
- Skidmore-Roth L: *Mosby's 2012 nursing drug reference*, ed 25, St. Louis, 2012, Mosby.
- Varcarolis E, Halter M: *Foundations of psychiatric mental health nursing: A clinical approach*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2010, Saunders.
- Wong D, Perry S, Hockenberry M, Lowdermilk D, Wilson D: *Maternal-child nursing care*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2010, Mosby.



# Index

## A

ABCs, 33  
definition and prioritizing with, 66–67  
sample questions using, 66b  
Academic life-guide. *See* Calendar  
Acronym  
creation of, 14  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIS) and, 14b  
for remembering content, 13–14  
RN versus NPH insulin, 14b  
Active listening, 89t  
 $\beta$ -Adrenergic blocker, 108  
Adult health question(s), 147–165  
Adverse effect, of medication  
definition of, 105  
questions about, 103–106  
Advice, giving, 90t  
African American  
communication style, eye contact and touch, 91t  
sample question for, 99b  
dietary considerations for, 92t  
Agency policy  
clinicals and, 78  
sample questions for, 79b  
Alertness, studying when, 10  
Alike option, elimination of, 116–117  
sample questions for, 116b  
Alternate item format question, 29–41  
definition of, 30  
directions for, 31  
types of, 30–31, 30b  
Amish, end-of-life care practices by, 94t  
Analysis question, 72, 72b  
example of, 72b  
Anaphylaxis, 105  
Ancillary book, 6–7  
Androgen, 108  
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor, 108  
Antidiuretic hormone, 108  
Antihistamine, side effects of, 104

Antilipemic medication, 108  
Antiviral medication, 108  
Anxiety. *See also* Test anxiety  
relief from, 19  
Approval, 90t  
Arterial blood gas, normal ranges of, 118t  
Asian American  
communication style, eye contact and touch, 91t  
sample question for, 98b  
dietary considerations for, 92t  
Assessment/data collection  
in nursing process, 71–72  
sample questions for, 71b  
words indicating, 71b  
Assignment making  
definition of, 78, 78b  
delegation and, 81  
principles and guidelines for, 80–81  
questions about, 79–81  
sample questions for, 78b, 80b  
multiple choice, 83b  
multiple response, 82b  
test questions and  
points to remember, 78–79  
Attitude. *See* Positive attitude  
Audio/video question, 30–31  
example of, 40b  
strategies for, 39–40, 39b

## B

Benzodiazepine, 108  
Breathing exercise(s)  
for test anxiety, 18, 19b  
during exam, 20  
Broad openings, 89t  
Buddhism  
dietary preferences of, 92t  
end-of-life care practices by, 94t  
sample questions about, 93b

Page numbers followed by *b*, *t*, and *f* indicate boxes, tables, and figures, respectively.

- C**
- Calcium, normal ranges of, 118*t*
  - Calcium channel blocker, 108
  - Calendar
    - importance of, 8
    - studying, scheduling time for, 9
  - Call the health care provider
    - sample questions for, 62*b*
    - selection of, 62–64
  - Carbohydrate-consistent diet, 125*t*
  - Carbonic anhydrase inhibitor, 109
  - Cardiac diet, 125*t*
  - Cardiac marker, normal ranges of, 118*t*
  - Case event
    - of question, 42
    - visualizing information in, 121
      - sample questions for, 121*b*
  - Catholic
    - dietary preferences of, 92*t*
    - end-of-life care practices by, 94*t*
  - Changing subject, 90*t*
  - Chart/exhibit question, 30–31
    - example of, 37*b*
    - strategies for, 36–37, 37*b*
  - Child health question(s), 191–201
  - Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints
    - dietary preferences of, 92*t*
    - end-of-life care practices by, 94*t*
  - Class note(s)
    - for exam preparation, 6
    - taking good, 6
  - Clear liquid diet, 125*t*
  - Client positioning, 122–124
    - guidelines for, 123–124, 123*b*
    - sample questions for, 124*b*
  - Client's feelings, minimizing and placing on hold, 90*t*
  - Clinical
    - preparing for, 4*b*, 21
    - time management and, 8
  - Clinical problem-solving process. *See* Nursing process
  - Closed-ended question, 90*t*
  - Closed-ended word(s)
    - eliminating options with, 113–114
      - sample questions for, 114*b*
    - types of, 113
  - Coagulation study, normal ranges of, 118*t*
  - Communication. *See also* Nontherapeutic communication technique; Therapeutic communication technique
    - concepts of, 87
    - cultural characteristics and, 90
    - definition of, 87
    - guidelines for, 89*b*
    - nurse-client relationship and, 87
  - Communication model, 88*f*
  - Communication question(s)
    - cultural differences and, 88
    - examples of, 95*b*
    - guidelines for answering, 88–89
      - therapeutic/nontherapeutic techniques, 88
    - on NCLEX exam, 87
    - types of, 90*b*
  - Comparable option, elimination of, 116–117
    - sample questions for, 116*b*
  - Corticosteroid, 109
  - Critical thinking skill(s), 14–15
  - Cultural characteristics
    - importance of, 90
    - types of, 90
  - Culture
    - communication and
      - questions about, 88
      - style, eye contact and touch, 91*t*
    - dietary considerations by, 92*t*
    - religious beliefs by, 92
    - sample questions about, 93*b*
- D**
- Data collection/assessment
    - in nursing process, 71–72
      - sample questions for, 71*b*
      - words indicating, 71*b*
  - Decerebrate posturing, 14*b*
  - Decorticate posturing, 14*b*
  - Deep breathing, 18
  - Delegation
    - assignment making and, 81
    - definition of, 77–78
    - to nursing student, 80
    - principles and guidelines for, 80–81
      - questions about, 79–81
    - questions about, 216–230
    - sample questions for, 78*b*
    - test questions and, 77
      - points to remember, 78–79
  - Diet. *See also* Nutrition; Therapeutic diet
    - cultural considerations for, 92*t*
    - religious beliefs and, 92, 92*t*
    - types and considerations for
      - therapeutic, 125*t*
      - vegetarian and semi-vegetarian, 129*t*
  - Digoxin, therapeutic blood level range for, 105
  - Disagreeing, 90*t*
  - Disapproving, 90*t*
  - Disaster
    - definition and types of, 129
    - questions about, 129–130
    - triaging victims at, 130*b*

**E**

Eastern Orthodox, dietary preferences of, 92t  
Eating healthy, study habits and, 10–11  
Electrolyte study, normal ranges of, 118t  
Elevation, of client, 123  
Elimination, process of  
  example of, 49b  
  use of, 48–49  
End-of-life care, religious beliefs and, 94  
Energy level  
  self-assessment of, 25  
  study habits and, 10–11  
Erythrocyte study, normal ranges of, 118t  
Estrogen, 109  
Evaluation question  
  example of, 75b  
  focus of, 75  
Exam. *See* NCLEX exam; Nursing examination; Test anxiety  
Excessive questions, asking, 90t  
Exercise  
  importance of, 19  
  self-assessment of, 25  
  study habits and, 10–11  
Exhibit/chart question, 30–31  
  example of, 37b  
  strategies for, 36–37, 37b  
External disaster, 129

**F**

False reassurance, 90t  
Fat-restricted diet, 125t  
Figure/illustration question, 30–31  
  example of, 36b  
  ingredients of, 45b  
  strategies for, 35–36, 35b  
Fill-in-the-blank question, 30–31  
  example of, 32b  
  ingredients of, 43b  
  strategies for, 31–32, 31b  
Flash card(s), 6, 13–14  
Flexitarian diet, 129t  
Focusing, 89t  
Fowler's position, 123  
Full liquid diet, 125t  
Fundamental skills question(s), 131–146  
Furosemide (Lasix), 106

**G**

Gastrointestinal study, normal ranges of, 118t  
Generic medication, 106  
Glucocorticoid, 109  
Glucose study, normal ranges of, 118t  
Gluten-free diet, 125t  
Graphic item option question, 30–31  
  example of, 38b  
  strategies for, 37–39, 37b

**H**

Habit. *See also* Study habit  
  definition of, 9  
  developing good, 9  
Health  
  self-assessment of, 25  
  study habits and, 10–11  
Health care provider. *See* Call the health care provider  
High-calcium diet, 125t  
High-calorie, high-protein diet, 125t  
High-iron diet, 125t  
High-residue, high-fiber diet, 125t  
Hinduism  
  dietary preferences of, 92t  
  end-of-life care practices by, 94t  
Hispanic American  
  communication style, eye contact and touch, 91t  
  dietary considerations for, 92t  
Histamine H2 receptor antagonist, 109  
Hot spot question, 45b  
Human-made disaster  
  definition of, 129  
  sample questions for, 130b  
  types of, 130b

**I**

Illustration/figure question, 30–31  
  example of, 36b  
  ingredients of, 45b  
  strategies for, 35–36, 35b  
Implementation question  
  examples of, 74b  
  focus of, 73–75  
Informing, 89t  
Insulin, RN versus NPH, 14b  
Intended effect, of medication  
  definition of, 103–104  
  questions about, 103–106, 103b  
Internal disaster, 129  
Internship, 79  
Intravenous calculation, 111b  
  questions about, 111–112  
Islam  
  dietary preferences of, 92t  
  end-of-life care practices by, 94t

**J**

Jehovah's Witness  
  dietary preferences of, 92t  
  end-of-life care practices by, 94t  
Judaism  
  dietary preferences of, 92t  
  end-of-life care practices by, 94t

**K**

Key points, in textbook, 6

**L**

Laboratory value  
 NCLEX exam and, 118–121  
 normal ranges of, 118*t*  
 sample questions for, 120*b*  
 Lacto/ovo-vegetarian diet, 129*t*  
 Lasix (furosemide), 106  
 Leadership question(s), 231–245  
 Licensed practical nurse  
 delegation to, 77  
 tasks/activities allowed, 81–82  
 Licensed vocational nurse  
 delegation to, 77  
 tasks/activities allowed, 81–82  
 Listening skill(s), 12  
 Low-purine diet, 125*t*  
 Low-residue, low-fiber diet, 125*t*

**M**

Macrobiotic diet, 129*t*  
 Magnesium, normal ranges of, 118*t*  
 Management question(s), 231–245  
 Maslow, Abraham, 67  
 Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs, 34  
 diagram of, 68*f*  
 prioritizing questions and, 67–70  
 sample questions for, 68*b*  
 Maternity question(s), 178–190  
 Mechanical diet, 125*t*  
 Medical intervention  
 eliminating options with  
 sample questions for, 115*b*  
 nursing interventions versus  
 eliminating options with, 115–116, 115*b*  
 Medical terminology, pharmacology questions  
 and, 107, 107*b*  
 Medication  
 administration guidelines for, 102  
 calculations for, 111*b*  
 sample questions for, 111  
 strategies for answering questions about,  
 111–112  
 classification of, 107–108  
 determination of, 108  
 effects of, 103–106  
 adverse, 105  
 intended, 103–104  
 side, 104–105  
 toxic, 105–106  
 therapeutic range for, 105*t*  
 Medication name  
 commonalities in, 108–111  
 sample questions for, 109*b*  
 generic versus trade, 106  
 Medication rights, 102*b*  
 Memorization, 3  
 Mental health question(s), 166–177

Monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI), 14*b*  
 Mormon  
 dietary preferences of, 92*t*  
 end-of-life care practices by, 94*t*  
 Morphine sulfate, effects of, 103  
 Multiple choice question  
 example of  
 for assignment making, 83*b*  
 ingredients of, 42–44, 43*b*  
 Multiple response question, 30–31  
 example of, 33*b*  
 for assignment making, 82*b*  
 ingredients of, 44*b*  
 strategies for, 32–33, 32*b*

**N**

National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN)  
 alternate item format questions and, 31  
 contact information for, 22  
 NCLEX test plan, 22  
 Native American  
 communication style, eye contact and touch, 91*t*  
 dietary considerations for, 92*t*  
 Natural disaster  
 definition of, 129  
 types of, 130*b*  
 NCLEX exam. *See also* Nursing examination  
 communication questions on, 87  
 pharmacology questions and, 100  
 guidelines for, 101–102, 101*b*  
 resources for, 100*b*  
 positive/negative event queries on, 52, 56*b*  
 preparation plan for, 26–27, 26*b*  
 preparing for, 2–3, 22, 26*b*  
 steps for, 23*b*  
 readiness for, 27–28  
 scheduling time for, 26  
 rescheduling, 26  
 standardized testing and, 7  
 strategies for, 113  
 closed-ended words, 113–114  
 comparable versus alike options, 116–117, 116*b*  
 laboratory values, 118–121, 118*t*  
 medical versus nursing interventions, 115–116, 115*b*  
 open-ended words, 113–114  
 option parts, ensuring correctness of, 117, 117*b*  
 umbrella option, 117–118, 118*b*  
 structured sequence for taking, 20*b*  
 study habits and, 12  
 remembering content, 13–14  
 time allotment for, 24–25  
 unfamiliar content question, 49*b*  
 NCLEX review book, 27  
 selection of, 27*b*  
 NCLEX Study Guide, 23  
 NCLEX test plan, 22–23  
 nursing process and, 70–71

- Negative attitude, 21
- Negative event query  
answering, 58  
definition of, 56–57  
examples of, 57  
sample questions for, 57  
words/phrases used in, 56–57, 56b
- Nitrate, 109
- Nontherapeutic communication technique  
as conversation barrier, 89  
questions about, 88  
types of, 90t
- Note taking, 12–13
- Nurse-client relationship, communication and, 87
- Nursing course  
standardized testing and, 7  
syllabus for, 4
- Nursing examination. *See also* NCLEX exam  
focus and concentration for, 25  
memorization and, 3  
other exams versus, 3–4  
preparing for, 1–7  
class notes, 6  
flash cards, 6  
study groups, 7  
study guides, 6–7  
textbook, 4–6  
purpose of, 2  
questions on, 4  
structured sequence for taking, 20b  
test-taking strategies for, 4
- Nursing internship, 79
- Nursing knowledge, importance of, 48
- Nursing process  
prioritizing questions and, 70–75  
purpose of, 71b  
steps of, 34–35  
assessment/data collection, 71–72, 71b  
for PN nursing student, 70f  
for RN nursing student, 70f
- Nursing school success, 3
- Nursing student  
definition of, 2  
delegation to, 80  
nursing process steps for  
for PN student, 70f  
for RN student, 70f
- Nutrition  
self-assessment of, 25  
study habits and, 11–12
- O**
- Offering self to help, 89t
- Open-ended question, 89t
- Open-ended word(s)  
sample questions for, 114b  
types of, 113–114
- Option  
comparable versus alike concepts in, 122  
sample questions for, 122b  
of question, 42–44  
visualizing information in, 121  
sample questions for, 121b
- Ordered response (prioritizing) question, 30–31  
ABCs as, 33  
example of, 34b  
ingredients of, 44b  
Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs and, 34  
nursing process steps as, 34–35  
strategies for, 33–35, 34b
- Organization, study skills and, 8
- Ovo-vegetarian diet, 129t
- P**
- Pampering. *See* Positive pampering
- Pancreatic enzyme replacement, 109
- Paraphrasing, 89t
- Parroting, 90t
- Pearson Vue  
contact information for, 22  
role of, 22
- Pentecostal (Assembly of God), dietary preferences of, 92t
- Perfectionist, 18
- Pescatarian diet, 129t
- Pharmacology. *See also* Medication  
assessment/data collection guidelines, 102  
NCLEX exam and, 100  
guidelines for, 101–102, 101b  
pharmacology question resources, 100b  
questions about, 103b, 202–215  
medical terminology skills, 107
- Phenothiazine, 109
- Phosphorus, normal ranges of, 118t
- Planning  
importance of, 3  
lifestyle, 3
- Planning question  
example of, 73b  
focus of, 72–73
- Positioning, client, 122–124  
guidelines for, 123–124, 123b  
sample questions for, 124b
- Positive attitude, 21  
negative attitude versus, 21  
self-assessment of, 25–26
- Positive event query  
definition of, 52–53  
examples of, 53  
sample questions for, 53  
words/phrases used in, 52, 52b
- Positive pampering, 19b  
definition and importance of, 19
- Posturing, decorticate versus decerebrate, 14b
- Potassium-modified diet, 125t

Practice exam question(s), 5–6  
 Preface, of textbook, 5  
 Prioritizing  
   definition of, 61  
   guidelines for, 61*b*  
   questions about, 216–230  
 Prioritizing (ordered response) question,  
   30–31  
   ABCs and, 33, 66–67  
   example of, 34*b*, 85*b*  
   ingredients of, 44*b*  
   Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs and, 34,  
     67–70  
   nursing process and, 70–75  
     steps of, 34–35  
   strategies for, 33–35, 34*b*  
   words/phrases indicating, 64–66, 64*b*  
     sample questions for, 64*b*  
 Priority classification system, 61–64  
 Procrastination  
   study habits and, 9  
   test anxiety and, 18–19  
 Protein-restricted diet, 125*t*  
 Protestant, end-of-life care practices by, 94*t*  
 Proton pump inhibitor, 109

## Q

Question query, 42  
   visualizing information in, 121  
     sample questions for, 121*b*  
 Question(s). *See also* Alternate item format question;  
   specific types of questions  
 about disasters, 129  
 on adult health, 147–165  
 on child health, 191–201  
 on client positioning, 122–124  
 comparable versus alike concepts in, 122  
   sample questions for, 122*b*  
 on delegation, 77, 216–230  
 on effects of medication, 103–106  
   adverse, 105  
   intended effects, 103–104  
   side effects, 104*b*  
   toxic, 105–106  
 elimination, process of  
   example of, 49*b*  
   use of, 48–49  
 fundamental skills, 131–146  
 ingredients of, 42–44  
 on leadership/management, 231–245  
 on maternity, 178–190  
 on medication and IV calculations, 111–112  
 on mental health, 166–177  
 on nursing examinations, 4  
 on pharmacology, 103*b*, 202–215  
   medical terminology skills, 107*b*

Question(s) (*Continued*)  
   on practice exams, 5–6  
   on prioritizing, 216–230  
   reading into, 42–51, 50*b*  
   for self-assessment, 24–26  
   subject of, 47–48  
     example of, 48*b*  
   on therapeutic diet, 124–129  
   with unfamiliar content, 49*b*  
   What if? syndrome, 50

## R

Raw vegan/raw food diet, 129*t*  
 Reading, required, 4–5  
 Reading skill(s), 13  
 Reflecting, 89*t*  
 Registered nurse, tasks/activities for, 82–85  
 Regular insulin, NPH insulin versus, 14*b*  
 Relaxation technique, 18  
 Religion  
   dietary preferences and, 92, 92*t*  
   end-of-life care practices by, 94*t*  
 Renal diet, 125*t*  
 Renal function study, normal ranges of, 118*t*  
 Restating, 89*t*  
 Roman Catholicism  
   dietary preferences of, 92*t*  
   end-of-life care practices by, 94*t*

## S

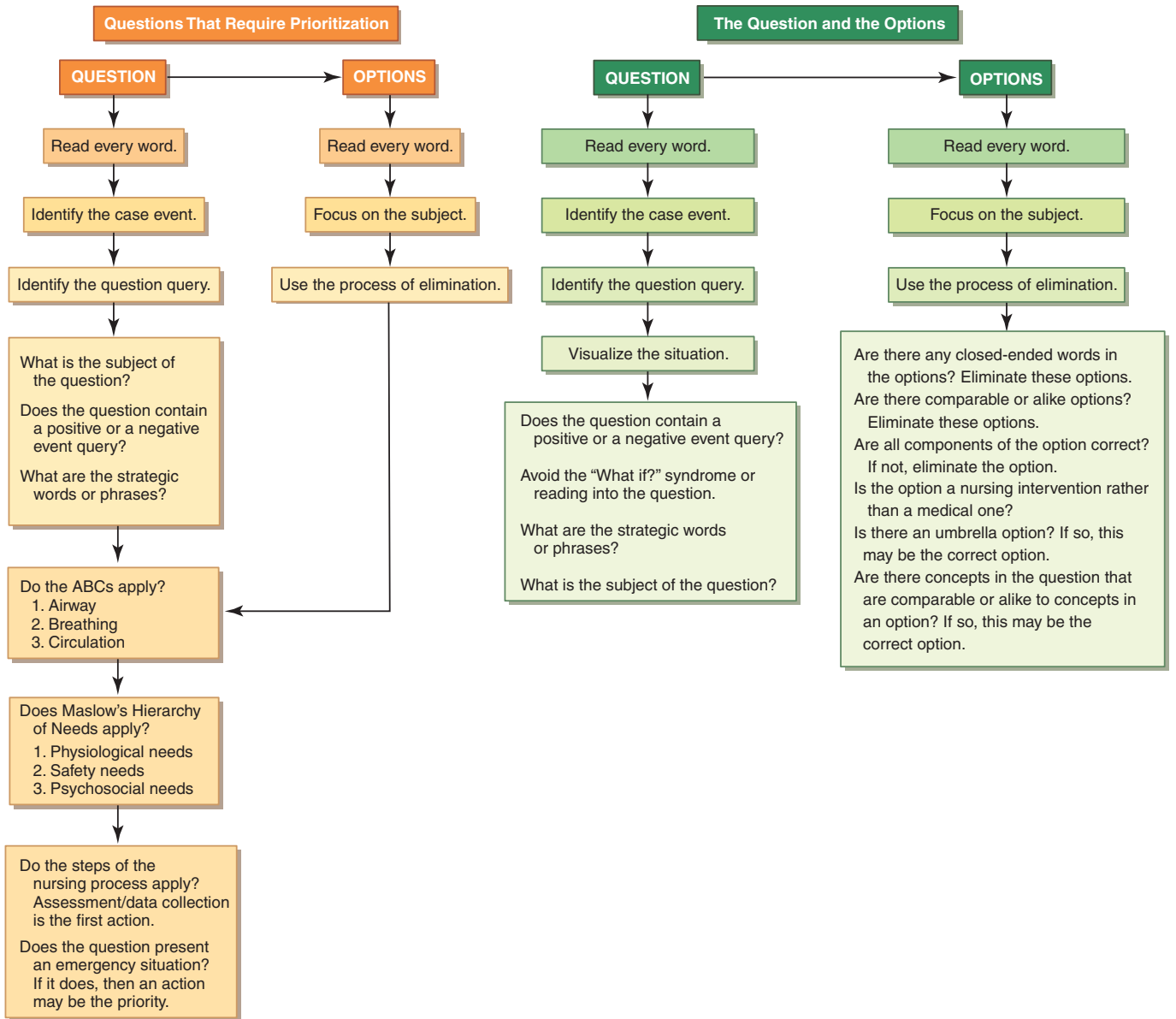
Self-assessment, 23–24  
   questions and pyramid points for, 24–26  
 Self-discipline, 25  
 Semi-Fowler position, 123  
 Semi-vegetarian diet, types and considerations  
   for, 129*t*  
 Seventh-Day Adventist, dietary preferences of,  
   92*t*  
 Side effect, of medication  
   definition of, 104  
   questions about, 103–106, 104*b*  
 Silence, 89*t*  
 Sims' position, 123  
 Sleep  
   measures to promote, 12*b*  
   study habits and, 11–12  
 Sodium-restricted diet, 125*t*  
 Soft diet, 125*t*  
 Stamina, study habits and, 10–11  
 Standardized testing, importance of, 7  
 Strategic word/phrase, in question  
   examples of, 46–47  
   use of, 45–47  
 Study group, 7  
   advantages/disadvantages of, 15–16  
 Study guide, 6–7



- Study habit, 9
    - alertness and, 10
    - asking for help, 10
    - health and, 10–11
    - NCLEX exam and, 12
    - overdoing it, 9
    - procrastination and, 9
    - quiet place for, 10
    - scheduling time for, 9
    - setting goals and, 9
    - sleep and, 11–12
    - taking breaks and, 10
  - Study skill(s)
    - development of, 8, 12
      - critical thinking skills, 14–15
      - listening skills, 12
      - note taking, 12–13
      - reading skills, 13
      - remembering content, 13–14
    - importance of, 12–15
    - organization and, 8
    - planning and scheduling, 8, 15
    - time management and, 8
  - Subject, of question, 47–48
    - example of, 48*b*
  - Sulfonamide, 109
  - Sulfonylurea, 109
  - Summarizing, 89*t*
  - Syllabus, for nursing course, 4
- T**
- Test anxiety
    - causes of, 17–18
    - controlling, 25
      - before exam, 20
      - during exam, 20–21
    - definition of, 17
    - prevention of, 18
    - relief from
      - night before test techniques, 19–20
      - positive pampering, 19
      - relaxation techniques, 18
    - signs and symptoms of, 17
  - Test-taking strategy. *See also* NCLEX exam for nursing examinations, 4
  - Textbook
    - key points in, 6
    - practice exam questions in, 5–6
    - preface in, 5
    - required reading in, 4–6
  - Therapeutic communication technique
    - purpose of, 89
    - questions about, 88
    - types of, 89*t*
  - Therapeutic diet
    - questions about, 125*t*
    - strategies for answering, 124–129
    - types and considerations for, 125*t*
  - Therapeutic medication, range of, 105*t*
  - Thiazide diuretic, 109
  - Thinking skill(s), critical, 14–15
  - Thrombolytic medication, 109
  - Thyroid hormone, 109
  - Time management
    - clinicals and, 8
    - definition and importance of, 85
    - principles and guidelines of, 85
    - sample questions for, 85*b*
    - study habits/skills and, 8
  - Toxic effect, of medication
    - definition of, 105
    - questions about, 103–106, 106*b*
- U**
- Umbrella option
    - sample questions for, 118*b*
    - selection of, 117–118
  - Unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP)
    - delegation to, 77
    - tasks/activities allowed, 81
- V**
- Validating, 89*t*
  - Value judgment, 90*t*
  - Vegan diet, 129*t*
  - Vegetarian diet, types and considerations for, 129*t*
  - Video/audio question, 30–31
    - example of, 41*b*
    - strategies for, 39–40, 39*b*
- W**
- What if? syndrome, 50
  - White American
    - communication style, eye contact and touch, 91*t*
    - dietary considerations for, 92*t*
  - White blood cell/differential count, normal ranges of, 118*t*
  - “Why” question(s), 90*t*
- X**
- Xanthine bronchodilator, 109

**The Subject of the Question**

<b>Communication</b>	<p>Are there any cultural considerations? Focus on feelings, concerns, anxieties and fears. Use therapeutic communication techniques to identify the correct option.</p>	<b>Medication and IV Calculations</b>	<p>Follow the formula. Is it necessary to convert a unit of measure? Use a calculator. Place decimals in correct places. Recheck for accuracy.</p>
<b>Pharmacology</b>	<p>Is the question asking about an intended effect, side effect, adverse effect, or toxic effect? Focus on the diagnosis. Use general guidelines and assessment guidelines. Use medical terminology to determine the medication classification.</p>	<b>Diets</b>	<p>Is the question asking about a specific diet or food item? What is the diagnosis? What organ system is affected? Relate the client's disorder to the correct diet.</p>
<b>Lab Values</b>	<p>Are the lab values normal or abnormal? What is the diagnosis? What organ system is affected? Relate the client's disorder to the lab test that monitors the affected organ.</p>	<b>Disasters</b>	<p>What type of disaster occurred? Is the disaster external or internal to the health care agency? What resources are available? Which victim sustained a life-threatening injury? Survivability—who can you save?</p>
<b>Positioning</b>	<p>Review the health care provider's prescription. What is the diagnosis? What organ system is affected? What complications do you want to prevent?</p>	<b>Delegating/Assignment-Making</b>	<p>Think about the client's needs—safety is a priority. To whom is the task being assigned? Noninvasive and basic care activities can be assigned to Unlicensed Assistive Personnel.</p>



**Questions That Require Prioritization**

**QUESTION**

**OPTIONS**

Read every word.

Read every word.

Identify the case event.

Focus on the subject.

Identify the question query.

Use the process of elimination.

What is the subject of the question?  
 Does the question contain a positive or a negative event query?  
 What are the strategic words or phrases?

Do the ABCs apply?  
 1. Airway  
 2. Breathing  
 3. Circulation

Does Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs apply?  
 1. Physiological needs  
 2. Safety needs  
 3. Psychosocial needs

Do the steps of the nursing process apply?  
 Assessment/data collection is the first action.  
 Does the question present an emergency situation?  
 If it does, then an action may be the priority.

**The Question and the Options**

**QUESTION**

**OPTIONS**

Read every word.

Read every word.

Identify the case event.

Focus on the subject.

Identify the question query.

Use the process of elimination.

Visualize the situation.

Does the question contain a positive or a negative event query?  
 Avoid the "What if?" syndrome or reading into the question.  
 What are the strategic words or phrases?  
 What is the subject of the question?

Are there any closed-ended words in the options? Eliminate these options.  
 Are there comparable or alike options? Eliminate these options.  
 Are all components of the option correct? If not, eliminate the option.  
 Is the option a nursing intervention rather than a medical one?  
 Is there an umbrella option? If so, this may be the correct option.  
 Are there concepts in the question that are comparable or alike to concepts in an option? If so, this may be the correct option.